Since the earlier report, however, the peak rate of growth in the world's population has apparently been passed. A dramatic decline in the birth rate in almost all the more developed countries has lowered their aggregate annual rate of increase to well below 1 percent, and the peak rate of increase has also apparently been passed in the less-developed parts of the world as a whole. A sharp decline in fertility in many low-income areas has more than offset the generally continued reduction in the death rate, although the rate of population increase remains high in almost all less-developed countries.

The causes of the reductions in fertility--whether they are the effect primarily of such general changes as lowered infant mortality, increasing education, urban rather than rural residence, and improving status of women, or of such particular changes as spreading knowledge of and access to efficient methods of contraception or abortion--are strongly debated. There are also divergent views of the appropriate national and international policies on population in the face of these changing trends. The differences in opinion extend to different beliefs and assertions about what the population trends really are in many of the less-developed countries. Because births and deaths are recorded very incompletely in much of Africa, Asia, and Latin America, levels and trends of fertility and mortality must be estimated, and disagreement has arisen in some instances about the most reliable estimates of those levels and trends.

It was to examine these questions that the Committee on Population and Demography was established within the Commission on Behavioral and Social Sciences and Education of the National Research Council. It was funded for a period of five and one-half years by AID under Contract No. AID/pha-C-1161 and Grant No. AID/DSPE-G-0061. Chaired by Ansley J. Coale, the committee has undertaken three major tasks:

1. To evaluate available evidence and prepare estimates of levels and trends of fertility and mortality in selected developing nations;
2. To improve the technologies for estimating fertility and mortality when only incomplete or inadequate data exist (including techniques of data collection);
3. To evaluate the factors determining the changes in birth rates in less-developed nations.

Given the magnitude of these tasks, the committee decided to concentrate its initial efforts on the first two tasks; it initiated work on the third task in October 1979 when the Panel on Fertility Determinants was established.

As of early 1982, 168 population specialists, including 94 from developing countries, have been involved in the work of the committee as members of panels or working groups. The committee, the commission, and the National Research Council are grateful for the unpaid time and effort these experts have been willing to give.

The committee approaches the first task through careful assessment, by internal and external comparison, and through analysis, by application of the most reliable methods known, of all the data sources available. Each of the country studies therefore consists of the application of a range of methods to a number of data sets. Estimates of levels and recent trends judged to be the best that are feasible with available resources are then developed on the grounds of their consistency and plausibility and the robustness of the individual methods from which they were derived.

The committee's second task, refinement of methodology, is seen as a by-product of achieving the first. The application of particular methods to many different data sets from different countries and referring to different time periods will inevitably provide valuable information about the practical functioning of the methods themselves. Particular data sets might also require the development of new methodology or the refinement of existing techniques.

The third task of the committee, evaluation of factors determining birth rates, is the most difficult. Research on the determinants of fertility change has been carried out by scholars from several disciplines, and there is no comprehensive accepted theory of fertility change to guide the evaluation. Because of this state of knowledge of the causes of reductions in fertility and the difficulty of the task, the committee and the Commission on Behavioral and Social Sciences and Education established the separately funded Panel on Fertility Determinants, which includes scholars from anthropology, demography, economics, epidemiology, psychology, sociology, and statistics. Three committee members serve on the panel.

This report is one of the panel's country studies. It has been prepared by John Knodel, professor of sociology, University of Michigan; Apichat Chamratrithirong, associate professor, Institute of Population and Social Research, Mahidol University, Bangkok; Nibhon Debavalya, director, Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok; and Napaporn Chayovan, staff member of the Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University and doctoral student at the University of Michigan during the time of this study. The panel is grateful to these scholars for their extensive efforts in analyzing data from many sources and preparing this report.

As indicated in the title, this report stresses analysis of the proximate determinants of fertility. The task of analyzing these determinants and the more fundamental social, cultural, and economic factors associated with levels and changes in fertility behavior is complicated and time-consuming, especially in a country like Thailand that has available many and varied data sets. Given the time and budget constraints within which the work on the current report took place, it was not possible to fully analyze fertility determinants in Thailand, and thus the primary focus is on the proximate determinants. Indeed the authors of this report are collaborating on a project in Thailand during late 1982 and 1983 that uses this report as a starting point for an assessment of social, cultural, and economic fertility determinants, under the International Research Awards Program on the Determinants of Fertility in Developing Countries, a Population Council program funded by AID.

The authors and panel would like to gratefully acknowledge the kind cooperation of the following persons who provided information or data included in this study: Tony Bennett, Pornchai Boodsayaskul, Peerasit Kamnuansilpa, Debhanom Muangman, Chintana Pejaranonda, Yawarat Porapakkham, Peter Smith, and Thavisak Svetsreni. We also acknowledge with thanks the research assistance of the following persons: Ratana Ariyavisitakul, Rapeepan Hoonpanich, Uraiwan Kanungsukkasem, Siriwan Siriboon, and Anchalee Wisuttimak. Helpful comments were received from reviewers, including members and staff of the panel and committee.

Several members of the panel and committee staff assisted in the preparation of this report. Appreciation is expressed to Solveig Padilla and Carole Turley, who helped type the text and tables, and to Rona Briere, who edited the report. Elaine McGarraugh applied her talents and sharp eyes to production editing details.

W. PARKER MAULDIN, Chair
Panel on Fertility Determinants

# CHAPTER 1

# INTRODUCTION

In the course of a remarkably short time, Thailand's population has experienced a major transformation in its reproductive behavior. The result has been a steady and substantial decline in fertility since the mid or late 1960s, with all indications pointing to its continuation for at least some time to come. Just a decade ago, few observers were aware that a reproductive revolution was under way in Thailand and probably even fewer would have predicted the magnitude of change that actually occurred during the 1970s.

The rapidity and pervasiveness that has characterized the decline in fertility makes Thailand an unusually interesting candidate for a case study of the determinants of reproductive behavior in a developing country. As the result of research presented at a workshop held in Thailand in 1978, a thorough summary documenting recent trends in Thai fertility up through 1975 has been prepared and published (National Research Council, 1980). Newly available data indicate that the decline in Thai fertility clearly evident prior to 1975 has continued since then (Knodel et al., 1980). The objective of the present study is to examine in some detail the intermediate variables or proximate determinants (Davis and Blake, 1956; Bongaarts, 1978) underlying the levels, differentials, and changes in fertility in Thailand during the recent past, as well as to update the trends in fertility since 1975 using more recent data than was available at the time of the 1978 workshop.

## THE COUNTRY SETTING

Thailand is a tropical country in the Indo-Chinese peninsula of Southeast Asia with a total population expected to reach 50,000,000 by the early 1980s. It is bordered by Kampuchea and Laos on the east and northeast, by Burma on the west and northwest, and by Malaysia on the south. The landscape within this area includes tropical rain forest, agriculturally rich plains, and forest-clad hills and mountains. Thailand's population is predominantly rural and agrarian. Even in comparison with other developing countries, the proportion living in urban areas is unusually low and the percentage of the labor force engaged in agriculture is unusually high (see Table 1). It also compares poorly in terms of several "quality of life" indexes, including access to electricity and safe water, and physicians per population. Nevertheless, Thailand falls in the middle range for developing countries with respect to average income as measured by GNP per capita and is above average in terms of adult literacy, female participation in the labor force, and life expectancy. It should be noted, however, that although literacy is almost universal, the proportion of adults that have gone beyond four years of schooling (until recently the basic elementary educational level) is quite small; as of 1976, only 14 percent of the population aged 15 and over completed five or more years of schooling (Thailand, National Statistical Office, 1978).

During the twentieth century, Thailand experienced a relatively rapid rate of population growth. From a population estimated to be approximately 8 million at the time of the first census in 1911, Thailand grew to approximately 47 million by 1980. Much of this growth can be attributed to a rapid decline in mortality that preceded and then accompanied decline in fertility. One recent set of estimates indicates a fairly steady decline in the crude death rate since 1920, with the exception of the turbulent years during the Second World War (Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific, 1976). Expectation of life at birth probably increased by some two or three years between the mid-1960s and the mid-1970s, reaching about 58 years for males and 64 years for females by the end of the period. An important component of the improved mortality, since 1960 at least, has been a reduction in infant and child mortality (National Research Council, 1980). Recent trends in the former are summarized in Table 2 for the national as well

TABLE 1 Selected Social and Economic Indicators of Development: Thailand, East Asia and Pacific, and Developing Countries

| Indicator | Thailand | East Asia and Pacific | All Developing Countries |
|---|---|---|---|
| GNP per capita (U.S. $), 1978 | 490 | 654 | 623 |
| Percent annual growth in GDP per capita, 1970-77 | 4.0 | 5.7 | 3.2 |
| Energy consumption per capita (kilograms of coal equivalent), 1977 | 327 | 466 | 507 |
| Percent urban | 14 | 30 | 29 |
| Percent of labor force engaged in agriculture | 77 | 51 | 49 |
| Percent of total labor force that are women | 47 | 35 | 25 |
| Percent of dwellings with access to electricity | 25 | -- | 48 |
| Radios per 1,000 population | 131 | 92 | 64 |
| Food consumption per capita (calories per day), 1977 | 1,929 | 2,231 | 2,290 |
| Percent of population with access to safe water | 22 | 22 | 42 |
| Population per physician | 8,370 | 3,509 | 4,638 |
| Infant mortality rate (per 1,000 live births) | 68 | 41 | 48 |
| Life expectancy at birth | 61.0 | 60.8 | 54.0 |
| Percent of primary school enrollment rate | 83 | 98 | 78 |
| Percent of secondary school enrollment rate | 26 | 39 | 23 |
| Percent of adult literacy rate | 82 | 84 | 52 |

Notes: Indicators not dated represent the most recent estimate as of 1980. Developing countries are defined in this table according to the World Bank definitions as used in the source and thus exclude centrally planned economies (including China) and capital-surplus oil-exporting countries.

Sources: World Bank (1980b, 1980c).

as the rural and urban populations. Direct estimates based on the dual-record system methodology of the two Surveys of Population Change agree reasonably well with indirect estimates based on the proportions dead among children ever born as reported in various sources. Both indicate moderate declines in infant mortality at the national level between the mid-1960s and mid-1970s. At the same time, they point to substantial and persistent differences in infant mortality between the rural and urban populations. The chance of a rural infant dying before reaching age 1 remains two to three times greater than for an infant of urban parents.

TABLE 2 Direct and Indirect Estimates of Infant Mortality by Place of Residence: Thailand

| Type of Estimate and Source | Approximate Years to Which Estimate Applies | Infant Mortality per 1,000 Births | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | National | Rural | Urban |
| Direct Estimates | | | | |
| First SPC | 1964-65 | 84[a] | 86 | 68[a] |
| Second SPC | 1974-76 | 52 | 59 | 20 |
| Indirect Estimates | | | | |
| 1970 Census | 1966 | 70 | 74 | 31 |
| Second SPC (Round 1) | 1970 | 61 | 65 | 27 |
| CPS1/NS (average) | 1975 | 55[b] | 59 | 26[b] |
| CPS2 | 1977 | 52 | 55 | 31 |

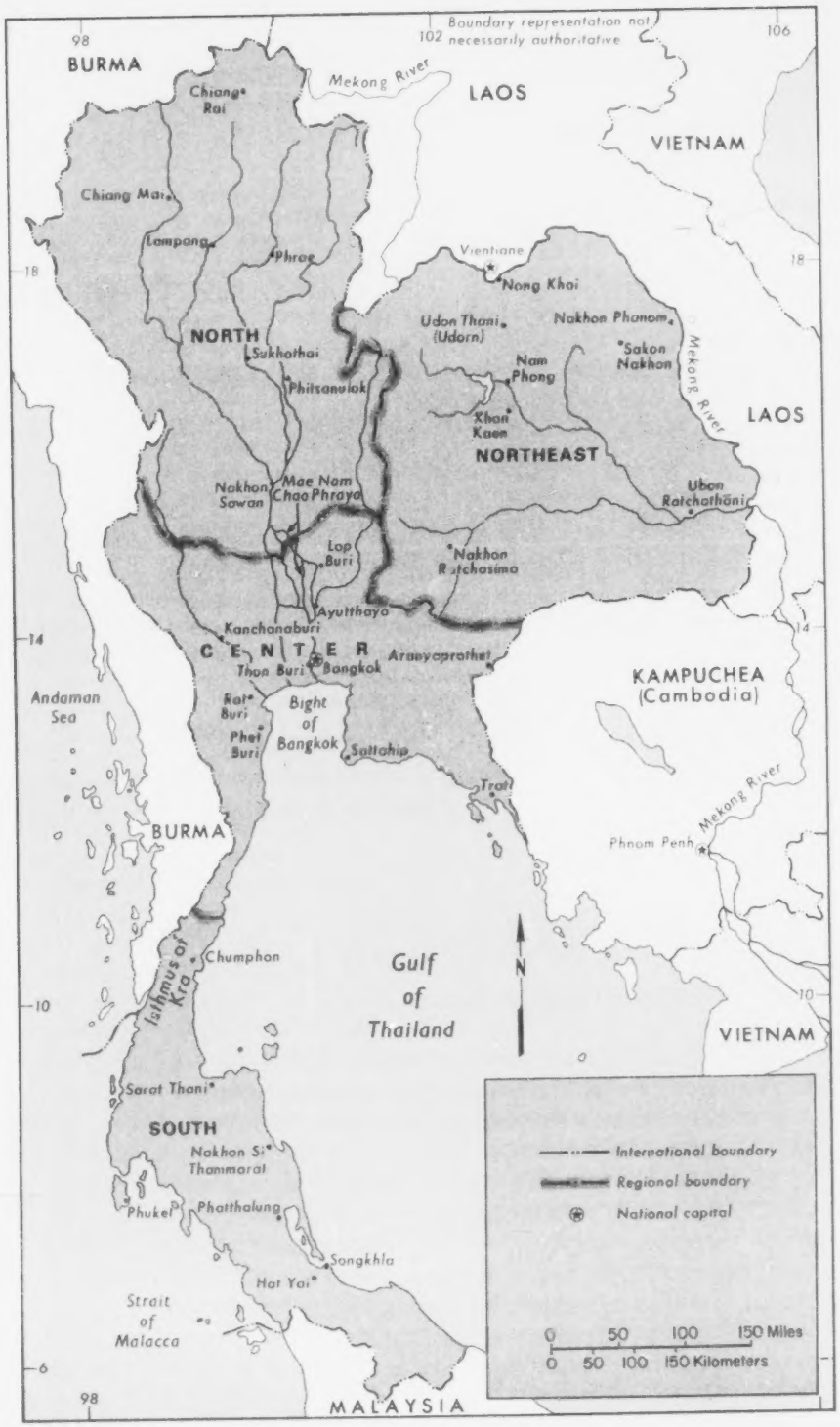
Notes: For full names of surveys, see Table 4. The indirect estimates of infant mortality were obtained from the North family of model life tables corresponding to indirect estimates of $_2q_0$, $_3q_0$, and $_5q_0$. For a description of the method of calculating the indirect estimates, see Knodel and Chamratrithirong (1978). Direct estimates are based on a dual-record methodology.

[a]Excluding Bangkok-Thonburi.
[b]Excluding provincial urban for CPS1.

Sources: Thailand, National Statistical Office (1978); Knodel and Chamratrithirong (1978); Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong (1982); and additional calculations for the CPS1/NS results.

The patterns of rivers and mountains divide Thailand into four more or less natural regions: the mountainous north; the northeast, consisting primarily of the Korat Plateau; the central region, consisting primarily of the Chao Phya Basin; and the south, consisting of the long peninsular extension of Thailand south from the Chao Phya Basin to the Malaysian frontier (see Map). To varying extents, cultural and socioeconomic differences characterize these four regions. In the north, the Thai Yuan dialect is common; in the northeast, Thai Lao is prevalent; while in the south, the southern Thai dialect and Malay (especially among Moslems) are common. At the same time central Thai, the official language, is widely known throughout the country.

On most socioeconomic measures, the central region ranks highest, in part because of the inclusion of the




Source: Bunge (1981).

Bangkok metropolis within this region (see Table 3). The central plain is the heartland of rice cash cropping in a country where rice is the mainstay of the economy. Substantial parts of the Chao Phya Basin have benefited recently from a major irrigation project that has opened up wide expanses of land to the possibility of rice double-cropping.

The poorest region is the northeast, which, like the central region, contains about one third of the total Thai population. It is the driest region and suffers from periodic droughts combined with a lack of well-developed irrigation systems. Although lower primary education is close to universal in all regions, discrepancies still exist with respect to the percentage of children who continue their education beyond this level. Past discrepancies are evident in the regional differences in the percentage of the adult population that continued beyond the basic four years of education; the northeast ranks lowest in this respect.

The north is the second poorest region. Because of its mountainous terrain, rice farming in many areas is concentrated in narrow valleys and involves particularly intensive agricultural practices. Communally run small-scale water control systems are common and perhaps are part of the reason why social commitment to the structural organization of the valley community is generally judged to be greater in the north than elsewhere.

The smallest region in terms of both land area and population is the south, which tends to rank higher on most socioeconomic indexes than either the north or the northeast. It is the region of heaviest rainfall and is least dependent on rice as either a subsistence or export crop. Tin mining, rubber planting, and coastal fishing are important contributors to the local economy.

Despite these regional differences, the Thai population is relatively homogeneous in a number of important respects. Approximately 95 percent of the population are Buddhist, the large majority are ethnic Thais, and, although regional dialects are spoken, the official central Thai language is understood virtually everywhere. There is generally a sense of national identity reinforced by a widespread allegiance to the monarchy, which serves as an effective symbol of national unity.

Most non-Buddhists in Thailand adhere to Islam, which is practiced by about 4 percent of the population. The majority of Thai Moslems live in the south and are the majority or near majority in 4 of the 14 southern

TABLE 3 Distribution of Land Area and Population, and Selected Socioeconomic Indexes by Region: Thailand

| Index | Source | Total | North | North-east | South | Central | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | All Central | Excluding Bangkok Metropolis | Bangkok Metropolis |
| Percent of land area | A | 100 | 33 | 33 | 14 | 20 | -- | -- |
| Percent of population, 1979[a] | B | 100 | 21 | 33 | 13 | 33 | 22 | 11 |
| Percent urban, 1979[a] | B | 18 | 7 | 4 | 12 | 40 | 10 | 100 |
| GDP per capita in 1978 (in U.S. $)[b] | C | 377 | 272 | 156 | 360 | 707 | 566 | 997 |
| Percent annual growth (in constant prices) in GDP, 1970-76 | C | 6.3 | 4.6 | 5.0 | 5.5 | 7.4 | 7.8 | 619 |
| Percent of population above official poverty line, 1975-76 | C | 75 | 73 | 64 | 75 | 88 | 87 | 91 |
| Percent literate among population, aged 10+, 1970 | D | 82 | 74 | 86 | 75 | 86 | 84 | 90 |
| Percent of population aged 15+ with 5+ years of schooling, 1970 | D | 11 | 7 | 6 | 11 | 20 | 12 | 39 |
| Age-standardized death rate, 1974-76 | E | 8.6 | 9.7 | 10.3 | 9.6 | 6.0[c] | 6.4 | 4.8 |
| Percent of households with radio, 1976 | F | 74 | 76 | 65 | 64 | 86 | -- | -- |
| Percent of households with TV, 1976 | F | 11 | 4 | 3 | 5 | 28 | -- | -- |

[a]Based on registration data from the Ministry of Interior and thus not strictly comparable with data from the census or projections based on the census.
[b]20.1 baht = U.S. $1.00
[c]Weighted average calculated from Source E.

Sources: A Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (ESCAP) (1976).
B Institute of Population Studies (1979).
C World Bank (1980b).
D 1970 Thai census.
E Thailand, National Statistical Office (1978).
F Thailand, National Economic and Social Development Board (1977).

provinces. Of the rural population in the southern region, 25 percent are Moslems according to the 1970 census.

The largest and economically most important ethnic minority in Thailand are the Chinese. While it is difficult to estimate with any precision the proportion represented by ethnic Chinese since there is no agreed-upon definition of Chinese ethnicity and considerable assimilation has taken place, various estimates suggest that they represent 5 to 10 percent of the total population. They are disproportionately concentrated in the urban areas and are predominantly involved in commercial activities. The second largest minority group are the ethnic Malays, who are concentrated in the south and represent perhaps as much as 4 percent of the national population. Other numerically smaller minorities include Indians and Pakistanis who are engaged largely in trade, Cambodians concentrated largely along the border areas near Kampuchea, Vietnamese living largely in the northeast, and a variety of hill tribes located mainly in the mountainous regions, especially in the northwest. In addition, a substantial number of temporary refugees--mainly from Laos and Kampuchea, although also from Vietnam--live in a number of specially established refugee camps.

During most of the present century, Thailand's official stance on population was predominantly pronatalist. As recently as 1956, the government offered bonuses for large families. As a result of a report by a World Bank economic mission in 1959 recommending that the government seriously consider the adverse effects of high population growth on economic development, the official position started to change. Pressures for a change were reinforced by the return of a number of Thai scholars who had studied demography and population matters abroad. A series of events during the 1960s led to the adoption by the Thai Cabinet in 1970 of a formal population policy aimed at slowing down population growth. An important part of this policy was to support voluntary family planning through an official government program. Despite several changes of government during the 1970s, the antinatalist policy remains intact. When a new constitution was drafted in 1974, it explicitly recognized the importance of population development for the nation's welfare. This recognition was reinstated in the present constitution drafted in 1978. The development of population policies since 1960 has been thoroughly reviewed in a recent study

published by the United Nations (1979). A detailed description of the history and current status of governmental and privately organized family planning activities has recently been completed by Bennett et al. (1982).

Administratively, the country is currently divided into 72 provinces (changwat) and the Bangkok metropolis. The provinces are further subdivided into districts (amphur), subdistricts (tambol), and villages (muban). Moreover, certain areas are designated as municipalities, which together with the Bangkok metropolis make up what is usually considered the urban population. Prior to its formation in 1971, the Bangkok metropolis consisted of two separate provinces, each of which contained certain areas classified as rural. For this reason, the definition of urban employed in a number of sample surveys utilized in the present study corresponds to the population living inside municipalities or the formerly urban sections of the Bangkok metropolis while the remaining population is defined as rural. In other surveys, the entire population of the Bangkok metropolis is treated as urban.

The usual practice of limiting the definition of the urban population outside the Bangkok metropolis to residents of politically defined municipalities has been criticized recently as being unrealistically narrow (Robinson and Wongbuddha, 1980). Indeed, a case can be made for making a finer distinction between rural and urban than is implied by a simple dichotomy, and several studies based on a 1-percent sample from the 1970 census have done so (Goldstein and Goldstein, 1978; Sermsri, 1980). In the present study, however, it is not possible to employ a scheme for distinguishing rural and urban different from that incorporated in the data sources used.

## SOURCES OF DATA

The situation of Thailand is unusually favorable in comparison to most developing countries with respect to the availability of data for the study of fertility levels, trends, and determinants. These data are generally of reasonable quality, come from a variety of sources, and cover most of the period during which the fertility decline has taken place. Population censuses of varying demographic content have been held since 1911 with decennial censuses taking place in 1960, 1970, and 1980. A registration system for births and deaths has

been in existence since early in the century, although the data yielded by this system have been and continue to be incomplete. Most important for the study of determinants of fertility, however, have been a series of sample surveys conducted during the last decade and a half, which were designed specifically to study fertility or some closely related aspect of behavior. While in the present study we attempt to draw on information from any relevant source, our analysis is based largely on data from these sample surveys.

A list of the surveys, the abbreviation used to refer to them, the dates on which the field work took place, and a brief comment on the sample coverage are provided in Table 4. Some of these surveys are national in scope while others are regional or directed at specific subgroups of the population. A more detailed summary of the surveys upon which we draw most heavily is provided in the appendix. As we point out there, the samples vary in the extent to which they are comparable, even for those that roughly attempt to attain national coverage. Nevertheless, we believe the results of at least a number of these surveys are sufficiently comparable to enable us to both trace the trends in various determinants of fertility over time and to compare interrelationships at different stages of the fertility decline.

The surveys that will be used most intensively for these purposes are LS1, LS2, SOFT, CPS1, NS, AFPH, and CPS2. With the exception of AFPH, these surveys are more or less national in scope and in the case of AFPH, as discussed in the appendix, the 20 provinces from which the sample was drawn are sufficiently similar in a number of important respects to the total country that we feel justified in treating it essentially as a national sample as well.

The reader should be aware, however, of several of the more problematic aspects of making comparisons across these series of surveys. The most serious problem is making comparisons among the urban sections of the samples. This is true for two reasons. First, the number of urban respondents is quite small in the cases of SOFT, CPS1, NS, and, to a lesser extent, CPS2, since these surveys were intended to be self-weighting with respect to the rural and urban sectors of the population. Second, the universes from which the urban samples were drawn were not uniform with respect to the inclusion of provincial urban areas and the Bangkok metropolis and, in case of the latter, the surveys differ with respect to

whether all or only part of the area is treated as urban. In particular, the urban sample for CPSI was drawn exclusively from the Bangkok metropolis including the areas of the metropolis that are defined as rural in LS1, LS2, SOFT, and NS, while the AFPH urban sample excludes the Bangkok metropolis (since it is based on a universe of only 20 provinces). In cases where the rural and urban sectors of the sample were based on differing sample fractions, results for the total sample are appropriately weighted. Note should be made, however, that in the case of LS1 and LS2, there was a year's lag between the rural and urban phases. National estimates for LS2 are thus based on a combination of the 1969 rural sample with the 1970 urban sample, and LS2 on a combination of the 1972 rural sample with the 1973 urban sample.

Several conventions were followed in preparing the tables included in this study. When referring to the dates of surveys, hyphenated years will be reserved for those strictly representing coverage of a span of years, such as SPC2 for 1974-76. Years separated by a slash indicate either a survey that is primarily cross-sectional but whose field work spanned two calendar years such as CPS1 (1978/79) or combined results from two component cross-sectional surveys taking place in successive years such as LS1 (1969/70) and LS2 (1972/73). Many of the tables were derived from original tabulations not published elsewhere. In such cases, the source is simply indicated as the survey itself. Only when tables or parts of tables were derived from previous publications or manuscripts in process are references made to a bibliographical source.

## PLAN OF ANALYSIS

In their seminal article on intermediate fertility variables, Davis and Blake (1956) made a major contribution to the conceptualization of fertility determinants by specifying variables through which and only through which all other fertility determinants--be they socioeconomic, cultural, or environmental--must operate. These intermediate variables are the only ones that directly affect fertility and thus can be considered the proximate determinants. Recent work by Bongaarts (1978) provides a simple analytic accounting framework in which a change in fertility can be related to changes in

TABLE 4 Selected Surveys Providing Information on Fertility or Fertility Determinants: Thailand

| Abbreviation | Full Name | Date of Major Fieldwork | Sample Coverage |
|---|---|---|---|
| SPC1 | Survey of Population Change, 1964-67 | Mid-1964 to mid-1967 (usually only results for first years cited) | National except for exclusion of Bangkok-Thonburi |
| LS1 | Longitudinal Study of Social, Economic, and Demographic Change - Round 1 | Rural - April/May 1969<br>Urban - April/May 1973 | National except for exclusion of sensitive areas and predominantly Muslim provinces in south |
| LS2 | Longitudinal Study of Social, Economic, and Demographic Change - Round 2 | Rural - April/May 1972<br>Urban - April/May 1973 | National except for exclusion of sensitive areas and predominantly Muslim provinces in south |
| SPC2 | Survey of Population Change, 1974-76 | Mid-1974 to mid-1976 | National |
| SOFT | Survey of Fertility in Thailand (part of WFS) | April/May 1975 | National |
| WRPS | Westinghouse Rural Population Survey | 1975 | National rural sample with various exclusions |
| VOC | Value of Children Study | April/May 1976 | National |
| FPHH | Family Planning Health and Hygiene Baseline Study | July/August 1977 | Northeast region |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| NTFS | Northern Thai Fertility Survey | November 1976/January 1977 | Rural sample of Chaing Mai and Chiang Rai provinces |
| CPS1[a] | Contraceptive Prevalence Survey - Round 1 | December 1978/January 1979 | National except for exclusion of provincial urban places |
| AMS | Asian Marriage Survey (Thailand) | December 1978/May 1979 | Bangkok general, Bangkok slum, (Klong Toey) and a semi-rural area in Central region (Ang Thong) |
| NS | National Study of Family Planning Practices, Fertility, and Mortality | April/May 1979 | National except for exclusion of sensitive areas and predominantly Muslim provinces in south |
| AFPH | Accelerated Family Planning and Health Project Baseline Survey | October/November 1979 | The 20 provinces selected for inclusion in the Accelerated Family Planning and Health Project |
| NES | Northeast Survey | April/June 1980 | Rural northeast region |
| CPS2 | Contraceptive Prevalence Survey - Round 2 | April/June 1981 | National |

Note: The analysis depends most heavily on LS1, LS2, SOFT, CPS2, NS, AFPH, and CPS1; more detailed information on each is provided in the Appendix.

[a]In this report, CPS1 is occasionally referred to as CPS.

the proximate determinants. Empirically, Bongaarts (1980b) has found that four proximate determinants--marriage pattern, contraceptive use and effectiveness, prevalence of induced abortion, and duration of lactational infecundability--account for nearly all the variations in fertility levels among populations. The main focus of the present study is on the proximate determinants, including, but not limited to, the four Bongaarts found to be of such importance. We also apply his accounting scheme to our results for Thailand. Although there are considerable differences in both the amount and quality of information available for Thailand on the different proximate determinants, at least some information is available for most. Before turning to the proximate determinants, however, we review in Chapter 2 recent trends in current fertility, including trends in the open birth interval and percent of women reporting themselves as currently pregnant. In addition, we discuss the relative contribution of age and marital structure to changes in the crude birth rate, the changing age structure of marital fertility, and trends in completed and expected family size.

Bongaarts (1978) has grouped proximate fertility determinants into three broad categories, namely, factors relating to exposure, to natural marital fertility, and to deliberate marital fertility control. We divide our discussion of proximate determinants along these lines. In Chapter 3 we explore family formation and dissolution or, in Bongaarts's terminology, exposure factors. In Chapter 4, we cover a variety of natural marital fertility factors: specifically the limits of the childbearing span as determined by age at menarche, menopause, and last birth; primary sterility; coital frequency; and lactational infecundability. Deliberate marital fertility control is treated in Chapter 5, which deals specifically with contraception and abortion as well as examining the extent to which adoption practices serve to limit family size. Based on the accounting scheme proposed by Bongaarts, an attempt is made in Chapter 6 to assess the contribution of several key proximate determinants to the recent levels and changes in Thai fertility.

In Chapter 7 we turn to a limited discussion of attitudes related to reproduction that we believe are particularly important for understanding recent and future fertility trends. Our focus is on trends in desired family size, preferences for the sex composition

of children, and attitudes toward deliberate birth control, the major proximate variable responsible for the fertility decline. Chapter 8 consists of a largely descriptive presentation of differentials in several aspects of reproductive behavior and attitudes by education, income, and religion. To a limited extent, fertility differentials are related to differentials in several key proximate determinants. Finally, Chapter 9 provides a summary and some concluding comments.

## CHAPTER 2

## RECENT TRENDS IN FERTILITY AND FAMILY SIZE

Deficiencies in the vital registration system and the absence of fertility surveys prior to the mid-1960s make it difficult to pinpoint with any certainty the precise year in which fertility rates turned downward in Thailand. While an occasional analysis suggests that the crude birth rate may have started a protracted decline in the mid-1950s (Vallin, 1976), the bulk of the evidence suggests that there was little or no momentum in the fertility decline at the national level prior to the 1960s. According to the extensive study of recent fertility trends by the National Research Council (1980), the level of fertility as measured by the total fertility rate was in the range of 6.3 to 6.6 births per woman in the early 1960s and began to decline fairly sharply in the mid-1960s reaching a level of 5.4 to 5.8 in 1970, and 4.5 to 4.9 by 1975. Several sources of estimates indicate an acceleration of fertility decline in the early 1970s, although the evidence on this is not conclusive. The Panel concluded that urban fertility was probably already declining by 1960 and continued to decline thereafter, while rural fertility probably remained relatively constant until the second half of the 1960s and then began a rapid decline.

Based on the estimates of total fertility and child and adult mortality, the Panel estimated the crude birth and death rates and thereby derived a rate of natural increase for the Thai population. The ranges of total fertility cited above correspond to crude birth rates of 43 to 46 births per 1,000 population for the early 1960s, 36 to 38 by 1970, and 32 to 36 by 1975. More recent evidence indicates a continuation of the fertility decline since 1975. Thus, by 1980 the rate of natural increase was probably around 2 percent, down from over 3

percent in the early 1960s and the 2.3 to 2.6 percent in 1975 estimated by the Panel.

## NATIONAL, RURAL-URBAN, AND REGIONAL FERTILITY TRENDS

First in the mid-1960s and then again in the mid-1970s, the National Statistical Office attempted to estimate fertility and mortality parameters and the completeness of vital registration through a dual-record system approach. These efforts, called the Surveys of Population Change (SPC1 and SPC2), provide estimates of total fertility. In addition, total fertility can be estimated from a series of single, cross-sectional national sample surveys based on retrospectively reported births to married women. In addition to the differences in the methodologies involved, these estimates are based on far smaller samples than either Survey of Population Change. In addition, they are sensitive to the marital structure used to convert the age-specific marital fertility rates into age-specific rates. Nevertheless, the estimates from these two different types of sources fit together reasonably well, at least for the period between the mid-1960s and mid-1970s (see Table 5 and Figure 1).[1] A comparison of SPC1 and SPC2 suggests a 22-percent decline in total fertility between the mid-1960s and the mid-1970s, while the series of single surveys suggests a decline in total fertility in the neighborhood of 40 percent during the decade or so following the end of the 1960s. The most recent survey (CPS2) indicates a somewhat higher total fertility rate than the two immediately previous surveys (NS and CPS2) taken about two years earlier. While a genuine increase in fertility cannot be ruled out conclusively, sampling error and differences in the questions and approaches used to derive these rates may well account for the apparent rise (for example, Kamnuansilpa et al., 1982). Evidence on the percent pregnant points to a decrease rather than an increase in fertility in the intervening period (see below). In addition, the prevalence of contraceptive use increased (see Chapter 5).

Since the collection of fertility data was restricted to married women in the single surveys (with the exception of CPS1), they serve as a more appropriate basis for estimating marital fertility than total fertility. A convenient summary measure of marital fertility is provided by an age-standardized index

TABLE 5 Total Fertility Rates and Age-Standardized Marital Fertility ($I_g'$): Thailand

| | | Total Fertility Rate, National | | Marital Fertility ($I_g'$) from Single Surveys | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Year of Survey | Survey | Dual-Record System | Single Survey | National | Rural | Urban |
| 1964-65 | SPC1 | 6.30[a] | | | | |
| 1969/70 | LS1 | | 6.12 | .72 | .77 | .53 |
| 1972/73 | LS2 | | 5.30 | .64 | .67 | .51 |
| 1975 | SOFT | | 4.52[b] | .57 | .58 | .50 |
| 1974-76 | SPC2 | 4.90 | | | | |
| 1978/79 | CPS1 | | 3.77[c] | .44[c] | .44 | .45[d] |
| 1979 | NS | | 3.38 | .44 | .44 | .40 |
| 1981 | CPS2 | | 3.91 | .46 | .46 | .46 |

Notes: Fertility rates for the single surveys refer to births during the 12 months prior to the survey. The total fertility rate for LS1 was derived by multiplying age-specific marital fertility by proportions currently married as interpolated between the 1960 and 1970 censuses after adjusting the 1960 census for one-half year age misstatement; total fertility rates for LS2, SOFT, and NS were derived by multiplying age-specific marital fertility by the proportions currently married estimated by interpolation between the 1970 census and the preliminary 1-percent sample of the 1980 census.

[a]Excludes Bangkok-Thonburi.
[b]This estimate differs from published estimates reported in Knodel and Piampiti (1978) because it is based on births 12 months prior to the survey, (rather than births during the calendar year 1974) and because it incorporates marital structure as interpolated between the 1970 and 1980 censuses.
[c]Excludes provincial urban.
[d]Bangkok metropolitan area.

Sources: Thailand, National Statistical Office (1978); Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong (1982) (plus personal communications from Anne Cross); Kamnuansilpa et al. (1982); Knodel et al. (1980).

labeled Ig'. This measure expresses the level of observed fertility as a ratio to the highest marital fertility on reliable record (that of the Hutterite population of North America) after directly standardizing for age.[2] The results from this series of surveys clearly indicate a sharp fall in marital fertility during the period under observation. See the last three columns of Table 5 and Figure 2. The CPS2 data seem to suggest a halt to the decline and even a slight increase in marital fertility when compared to the immediately prior surveys; however, as discussed above, this may be more an artifact of the data and sampling error than a genuine change in

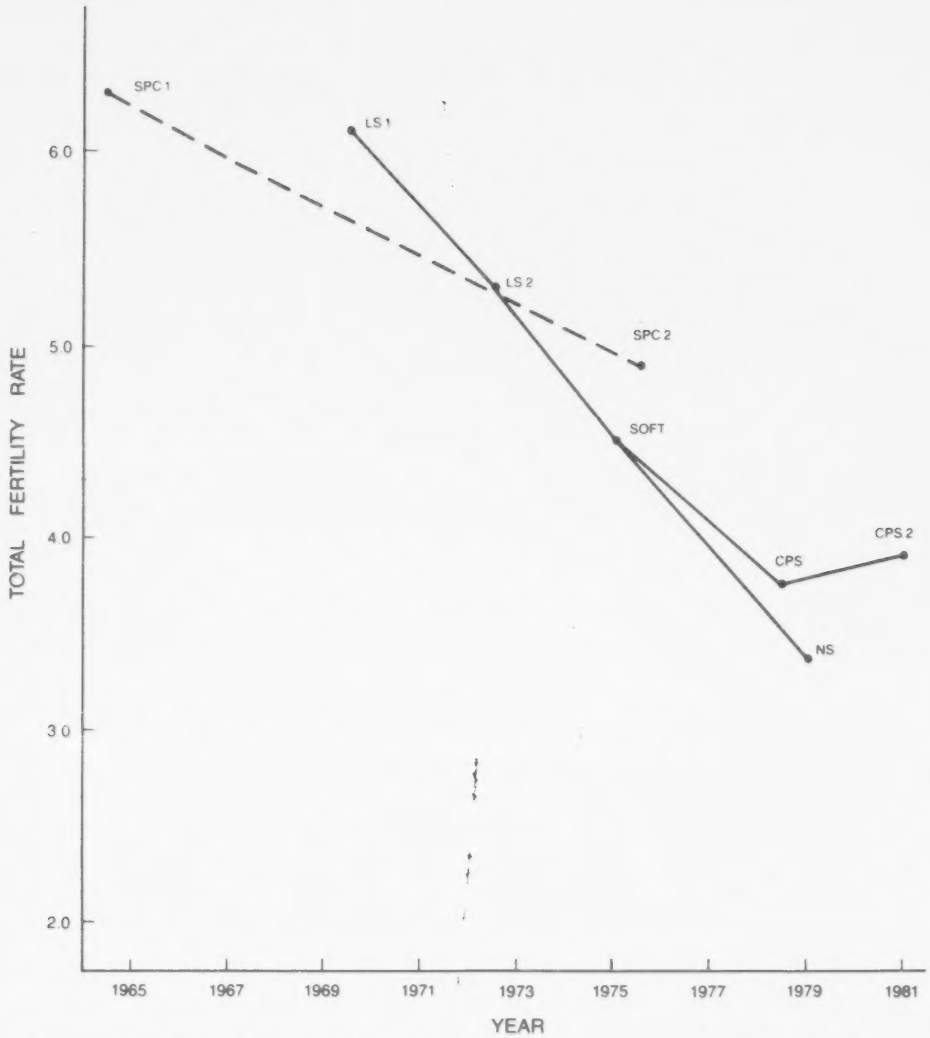



FIGURE 1 Total Fertility Rate from Surveys, 1964-65 to 1981: Thailand

Note: See notes to Table 5.

trend. Even if the higher estimates of CPS2 are accepted, Ig' at the national level has declined by almost 40 percent since the late 1960s, thus representing one of the most rapid fertility reductions in the developing world. The decline in rural marital fertility is even larger than for the country as a whole with the result that the pronounced urban-rural differential evident at the end of the 1960s had been eliminated by the early 1980s.

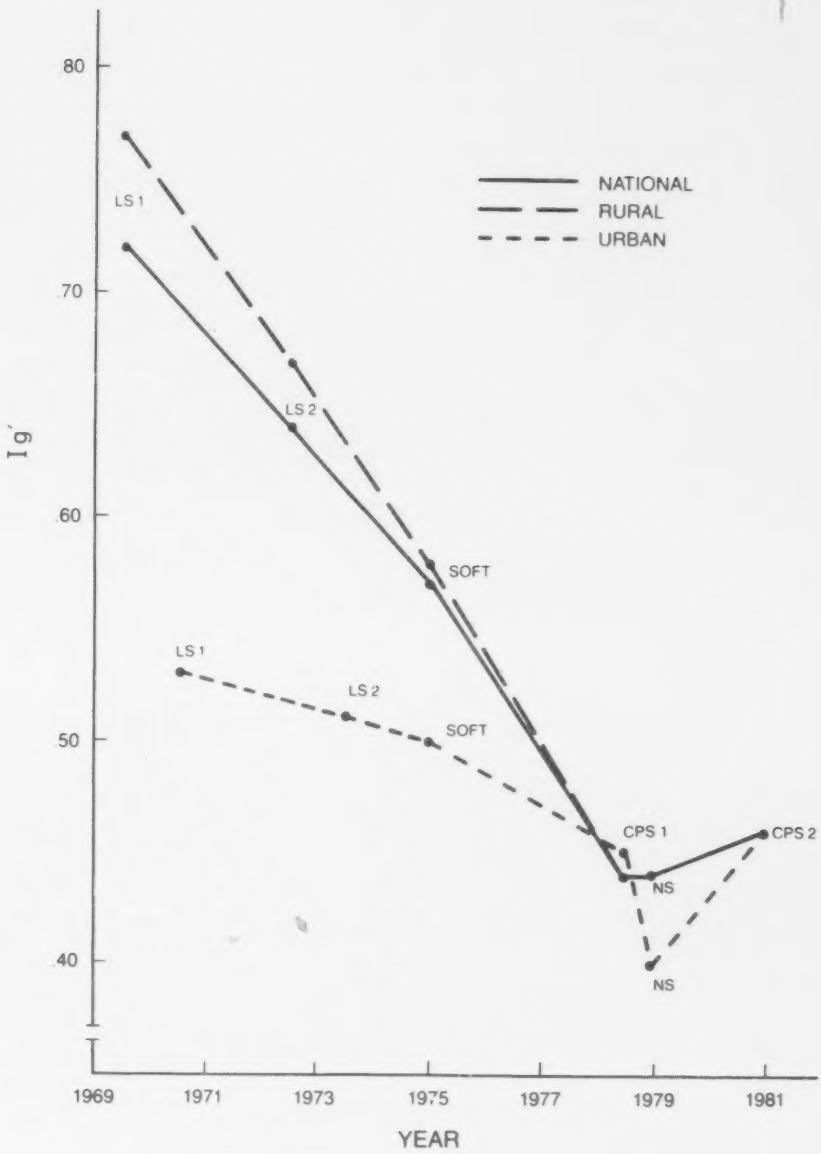



FIGURE 2 Age-Standardized Marital Fertility ($I_g$') from Selected Surveys, 1969-70 to 1981: Thailand

Note: See notes to Table 5.

According to the National Research Council (1980) report, the national fertility decline up to 1975 was largely a result of rapid reductions in the central and northern regions of Thailand with much less change evident in the northeastern and southern regions. A comparison of the first and second Surveys of Population Change clearly indicates such a regional difference in fertility decline between the mid-1960s and mid-1970s (see Table 6). More recent evidence, however, indicates that the situation has changed since 1975 and that a fertility decline is now clearly under way in the northeast. The evidence for the south is mixed with respect to recent fertility change, undoubtedly due to the small proportion of any self-weighting national sample that comes from this region. Evidence for the south from CPS1 and NS, but not CPS2, suggests that fertility decline there lags behind the rest of the country. The regional results from the national single surveys must be considered only suggestive, since in most cases the samples were not designed to yield regional

TABLE 6 Total Fertility and Age-Standardized Marital Fertility ($I_g'$) by Region: Thailand

| | Central, Excluding Bangkok | North | North-east | South |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| I. Total fertility rates from Survey of Population Change | | | | |
| 1964-65 | 5.90 | 6.47 | 6.61 | 6.02 |
| 1974-76 | 4.11 | 3.74 | 6.25 | 6.12 |
| | Rural Only | | | |
| II. Marital fertility one year prior to surveys from single surveys ($I_g'$) | | | | |
| 1975 (SOFT) | .54 | .43 | .68 | .66 |
| 1977 (FPHH)[b] | -- | -- | .62[a] | -- |
| 1978/79 (CPS1) | .46 | .33 | .45 | .58 |
| 1979 (NS) | .45 | .32 | .44 | .72 |
| 1980[c] (NES)[b] | -- | -- | .48 | -- |
| 1981 (CPS2) | .47 | .37 | .49 | .49 |

[a]Includes provincial urban.
[b]Surveys conducted in northeast only.
[c]Refers to births from January to December 1979.

Sources: Thailand, National Statistical Office (1978); Knodel et al. (1980); and unpublished tabulations.

estimates. In the case of the northeast, however, the recent decline in fertility is further confirmed by two large regional surveys (FPHH and NES). The rapid process and advanced stage of fertility reduction in the central and north regions have been documented in several other sources as well (see National Research Council, 1980; Shevasunt and Hogan, 1979; Pardthaisong, 1978). Calculations based on the Northern Thai Fertility Study, which refers to the rural population of two provinces in the north, indicates that Ig' declined from 0.51 in 1968-72 to 0.40 in 1973-76. This latter figure falls between the results indicated for the north from SOFT and CPS or NS.[3]

## THE IMPACT OF AGE AND MARITAL STRUCTURE ON THE BIRTH RATE

In some countries, changes in the age structure have had a measurable effect on facilitating or hindering fertility decline when measured in terms of the crude birth rate or other indexes sensitive to age distribution. Moreover, in countries where most fertility is legitimate, changes in the marital status composition of the population can have a considerable impact on overall fertility, above and beyond the impact of changes occurring in marital fertility. Thus, in trying to account for changes in the overall level of fertility, marital status is an important factor to take into account. In the case of Thailand, changes in the age and marital status distributions do not appear to be of great importance during the period of fertility decline, although inconsistencies in the evidence regarding changes in nuptiality patterns make it difficult to estimate the contribution of the latter with much precision. The proportion of the population that comprises women in the reproductive ages remained relatively unchanged between 1960 and 1970 but shows evidence of increasing over the following decade, especially since 1976, as would be expected as a result of the earlier sharp decline in fertility (see Table 7). The age distribution of women <u>within</u> the reproductive span has remained relatively stable during the entire two decades between 1960 and 1980 and is not expected to be influenced by recent fertility trends for another ten years. Thus it seems safe to conclude that changes in fertility measures that are sensitive to age distribution have been largely unaffected by shifts in age structure

TABLE 7 Age Distribution of Women in the Reproductive Ages Expressed as Percent of Total Population and as Percent of All Women Aged 15-49: Thailand

| Age Group | Percent of Total Population | | | | | Percent of Women 15-49 | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Census 1960 | SPC1 1965 | Census 1970 | SPC2 1976 | Census 1980[a] | Census 1960 | SPC1 1965 | Census 1970 | SPC2 1976 | Census 1980[b] |
| 15-19 | 4.7 | 5.0 | 5.5 | 5.8 | 6.0 | 20.3 | 22.2 | 24.2 | 24.1 | 23.4 |
| 20-24 | 4.6 | 4.0 | 4.0 | 4.5 | 5.1 | 19.8 | 18.0 | 17.5 | 19.0 | 19.8 |
| 25-29 | 4.0 | 3.7 | 3.3 | 3.5 | 4.1 | 17.2 | 16.3 | 14.7 | 14.8 | 15.9 |
| 30-34 | 3.3 | 3.2 | 3.1 | 2.8 | 3.1 | 14.3 | 14.2 | 13.8 | 11.9 | 12.2 |
| 35-39 | 2.6 | 2.7 | 2.8 | 2.8 | 2.7 | 11.2 | 12.0 | 12.3 | 11.7 | 10.4 |
| 40-44 | 2.2 | 2.1 | 2.2 | 2.4 | 2.5 | 9.3 | 9.3 | 9.8 | 10.1 | 9.8 |
| 45-49 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 1.7 | 2.0 | 2.2 | 7.9 | 7.9 | 7.7 | 8.3 | 8.4 |
| 15-49 | 23.2 | 22.4 | 22.7 | 23.9 | 25.7 | 100.0 | 100.0 | 100.0 | 100.0 | 100.0 |

Note: Persons of unknown age have been proportionately distributed.

[a]Based on 1-percent sample assuming sex ratio of total population is the same as reported in SPC2.
[b]Based on 1-percent sample.

Sources: 1980 census from unpublished preliminary tabulations of the 1-percent sample; all others calculated from official published reports.

during the period between 1960 and the mid-1970s, but that the influence of such changes is beginning to and will continue to be of some importance in the near future.

Data on the proportions single as recorded from 1947 on in the censuses and in several surveys are summarized in Table 8 and Figure 3 presents the trend 1960-80 for two age groups, 20-24 and 45-49. Age was determined in a somewhat different manner in the 1947 and 1960 censuses compared to the later censuses and surveys. Thus, the 1947 census is directly comparable with the 1960 census as reported, but neither is directly comparable with the later sources. For this reason, results from the 1960

TABLE 8 Proportions Single and Singulate Mean Age at Marriage (SMAM) by Sex and Age Group from Selected Sources: Thailand

| Sex and Age Group | Census 1947 | Census 1960 Reported Ages | Census 1960 Adjusted Ages | Census 1970 | SOFT 1975 | SPC2 1975 | Census 1980[a] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Females | | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | .806 | .862 | .830 | .810 | .846 | .786 | .835 |
| 20-24 | .300 | .387 | .352 | .379 | .415 | .359 | .428 |
| 25-29 | .109 | .141 | .126 | .156 | .192 | .156 | .206 |
| 30-34 | .057 | .067 | .062 | .081 | .101 | .081 | .114 |
| 35-39 | .040 | .042 | .040 | .053 | .064 | .048 | .079 |
| 40-44 | .032 | .031 | .030 | .039 | .039 | .032 | .054 |
| 45-49 | .029 | .026 | .026 | .030 | .033 | .015 | .044 |
| SMAM | 21.06 | 22.10 | 21.64 | 21.97 | 22.46 | 21.96 | 22.68 |
| Males | | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | .967 | .976 | .959 | .963 | .969 | .957 | .960 |
| 20-24 | .606 | .699 | .663 | .651 | .639 | .623 | .646 |
| 25-29 | .242 | .270 | .242 | .249 | .259 | .257 | .266 |
| 30-34 | .104 | .098 | .088 | .106 | .081 | .097 | .115 |
| 35-39 | .069 | .053 | .050 | .058 | .059 | .062 | .060 |
| 40-44 | .050 | .037 | .036 | .038 | .028 | .040 | .042 |
| 45-49 | .044 | .032 | .032 | .032 | .024 | .033 | .035 |
| SMAM | 24.32 | 25.02 | 24.52 | 24.67 | 24.77 | 24.42 | 24.83 |

Note: Persons of unknown marital status have been proportionately distributed except for male priests who are treated as single.

[a]Based on 1-percent sample.

Sources: National Research Council (1980); United Nations (1956); and unpublished preliminary tabulations of the 1-percent 1980 census sample.

census are presented both as reported and in an adjusted form which increases their comparability to later sources.[4] A comparison of the 1947 and unadjusted 1960 census results indicates that a moderate increase took place in the proportion single among women and men in the younger reproductive ages. This may have contributed to some reduction in the crude birth rate in the 1950s, although, as indicated above, estimates of fertility prior to 1960 are tenuous. Since 1960, most, but not all, evidence points to a continuation of the trend toward increasing proportions single, especially among women. A moderate continuation of the increase in proportion single among women at most ages, but particularly in the twenties, is indicated by a comparison of the 1960 (adjusted), 1970, and preliminary 1980 census results. In contrast, evidence from SPC2 suggests a relative lack of change. Results from SOFT for 1975, however, generally show proportions single among women that are consistently higher than the 1970 census and only slightly below those in the 1980 census. Proportions single among males show less variation across different sources than for women and appear to have remained relatively constant between 1960 and 1980; there is only a slight tendency toward increase evident at ages 25 and above.

The singulate mean age at marriage, an estimate of the age at first marriage derived from the proportions single by age, registers a 0.8 year increase for women and a 0.3 year increase for men between the adjusted 1960 census results and the preliminary 1980 results (see Table 8 and Figure 3). Results from SPC2, however, do not fit into this trend and suggest rather that the mean age at marriage may not have risen so much or perhaps not at all. In contrast, the results for women from SOFT indicate an age at marriage almost as high as that implied by the 1980 census preliminary results. If more weight is given the census results, the evidence points to a modest trend toward increasing proportions single and rising age at first marriage since 1960, especially for women. The contradictory evidence provided by SPC2, indicating little trend in proportions single, cannot be dismissed conclusively, however, given the large sample size on which it is based and the apparent problems associated with the 1980 census.[5] Moreover, analyses presented in the next chapter based on retrospective reports of age at first marriage from several surveys also point to little change.

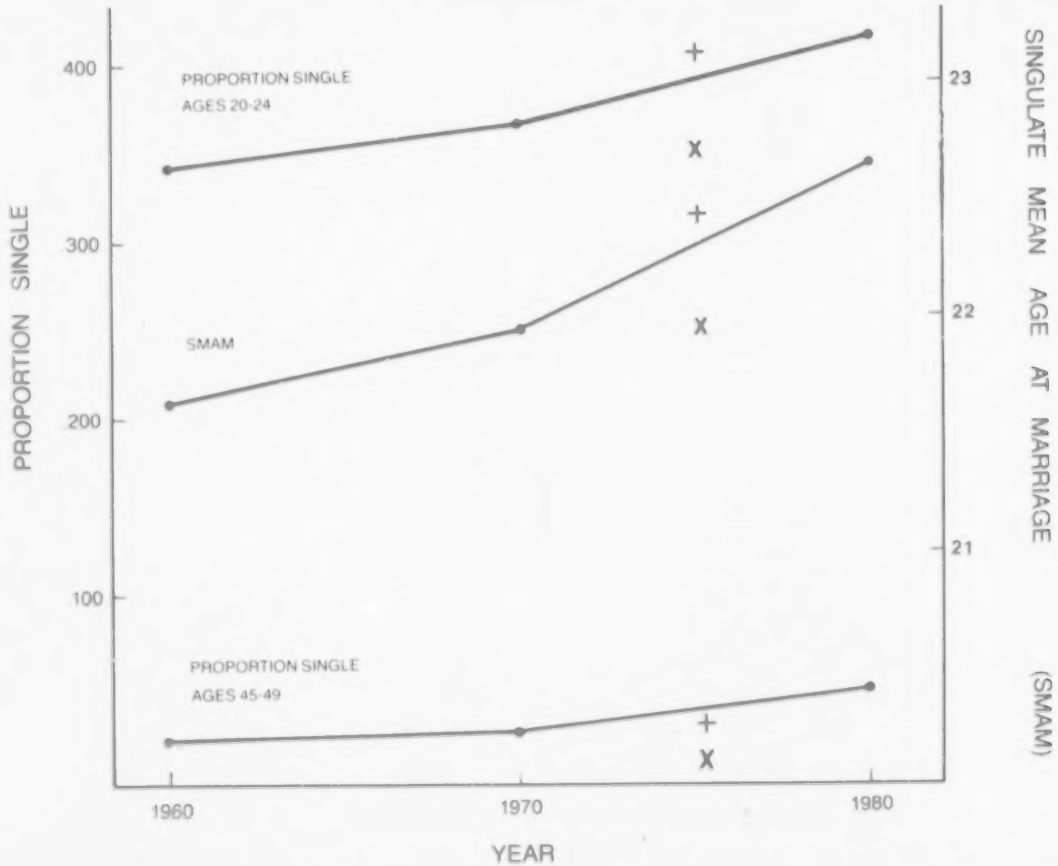



FIGURE 3 Proportions Single in Age Groups 20-24 and 45-49 and Singulate Mean Age at Marriage from Censuses and Two Surveys, 1960-80: Thailand

Sources: • 1960, 1970, 1980 censuses; + 1975 SOFT; X 1975 SPC 2.

In Thailand, there is little difference between men and women in their age at first marriage. Judging from the singulate mean age at marriage, men are only about two and one-half years older than women when they marry for the first time. This is a small difference compared to many other developing countries, where the mean age difference between spouses can be as large as eight years, as in the case of Bangladesh (Durch, 1980; Smith, 1980). In natural fertility populations, age differences between spouses can exert a significant influence on marital fertility levels, with the marital fertility of women at any given age generally being inversely related to the age of their husbands (Knodel, 1982). In the case of Thailand, however, where birth control within marriage has become extensive, the age difference between spouses is unlikely to be an important factor in explaining fertility levels.

So far, our discussion of fertility trends has been in terms of the total fertility rate or the age-standardized index of marital fertility. The two Surveys of Population Change have also yielded estimates of the crude birth rate. According to these estimates, the crude birth rate declined from 42.2 in 1964-65 to 35.6 in 1974-76, a decline of about 16 percent during the intervening decade. Using a statistical technique reported by Cho and Retherford (1973), it is possible to decompose his change in the crude birth rate into the amount due to changes in (1) age-sex structure; (2) marital structure (i.e., percent married in each age group); and (3) age-specific marital fertility rates. Since not all the data required for this decomposition were available directly from the reports of the Surveys of Population Change, data from several sources were combined for this purpose.[6] As already pointed out, however, SPC2 indicates lower proportions single for women than found by SOFT or implicit in the trend between the 1970 and 1980 censuses. If the SPC2 proportions single (and thus proportions married) are unrepresentative, results of the decomposition exercise will be misleading and will not reflect the contribution of increased delay of marriage to the decline in the birth rate. We have therefore made a second set of calculations assuming that the proportions currently married in 1975 (the midpoint of SPC2) were not as recorded in SPC2 itself but rather equal to the average value of those indicated by the 1970 and 1980 censuses (since SPC2 took place midway between the censuses).[7] Combining the

alternative proportions currently married with the observed age structure and fertility rates would imply that the crude birth rate for 1974-76 had fallen somewhat more than actually observed, to 33.1 per 1,000 population.[8]

The specific results are as follows:

Percent Contribution with 1975 Marital Structure

| Contribution from Changes | As Observed in SPC1 | As Implied by 1970 and 1980 Censuses |
|---|---|---|
| Age-sex structure | +19 | +15 |
| Marital structure | +15 | -14 |
| Age-specific marital fertility | -134 | -101 |
| Total | -100 | -100 |

The results indicate that changes in both the age-sex structure and the marital structure of the population are relatively small compared to changes in marital fertility. If marital structure in 1975 is taken to be as recorded in SPC2, then both age structure and marital structure changed in a manner that would have led to an increase in the crude birth rate between 1965 and 1975 had marital fertility remained constant. Thus the decline in marital fertility not only is responsible for the entire decline in crude birth rate, but it also compensated for changes in the other two factors. Since the contribution of these three factors must add up to 100 percent according to the technique employed and since the changes in the age-sex structure and marital structure would have led to an increase in the crude birth rate, the change in marital fertility, given the marital structure recorded in SPC2, is thus accountable for over 100 percent of the observed decline in crude birth rate. If, in contrast, the 1975 marital status is assumed to have changed as implied by the trend toward increased proportions single, indicated by the 1970 and preliminary 1980 census results, changes in marital structure would have contributed to rather than detracted from the decline in the crude birth rate. The contribution of age-sex structure, however, is still in the opposite direction and of about equal magnitude. According to these calculations, had age,

sex, and marital status distributions remained unchanged between 1965 and 1975, the change in the crude birth rate would have been about the same as actually observed. As a result, the contribution of marital fertility decline is estimated as accounting for almost exactly 100 percent of the change. The main point made by both sets of calculations is that the contribution of changes in marital and age-sex structure to changes in the crude birth rate were relatively minor compared to the reduction in marital fertility.

## THE AGE STRUCTURE OF MARITAL FERTILITY

Populations in a state of natural fertility--i.e., where no deliberate attempts are made to limit family size within marriage--can vary substantially in their level of marital fertility. However, despite such variations, it is now well established that they share a relatively similar age pattern of marital fertility, which is determined primarily by the decline of fecundity with age (Henry, 1961; Knodel, 1982). In natural fertility populations, fecundity and thus fertility remain high during much of the woman's reproductive span and it is only with the rapid decline in the ability to bear children during the later reproductive ages that fertility also declines precipitously with increasing age. In contrast, in populations where family size limitation is common, age-specific marital fertility rates tend to show a more rapid decline at earlier ages and to be particularly low at older ages. The reason for this is that most married couples who wish to limit the number of children they have typically concentrate their childbearing in the earlier part of the wife's potentially fertile period. Since the proportion of couples reaching their desired family size increases with age, so do efforts to prevent further births. The result is to lower fertility disproportionately at the later reproductive ages compared to a natural fertility population. One implication of this contrast is that as a population moves away from a state of natural fertility to one in which family limitation is widely and intensively practiced, marital fertility typically declines disproportionately more among older women (Knodel, 1977).

Since a series of national sample surveys in Thailand collected partial or complete birth history data from married female respondents, it is possible to derive

TABLE 9 Age-Specific Marital Fertility During Year Prior to Survey, Coale-Trussell Indexes of Fertility Control (m) and Level (M), and Mean Square Error (MSE) of Estimates of m and M, by Place of Residence: Thailand

| Place of Residence and Survey | Year of Survey | Age of Women 15-19 | 20-24 | 25-29 | 30-34 | 35-39 | 40-44 | 45-49 | m | M | MSE |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rural | | | | | | | | | | | |
| LS1 | 1969 | 419 | 457 | 374 | 292 | 252 | 198 | 39 | -.08 | .85 | .028 |
| LS2 | 1972 | 417 | 402 | 376 | 211 | 209 | 160 | 19 | .03 | .77 | .048 |
| SOFT | 1975 | 475 | 371 | 268 | 213 | 181 | 101 | 20 | .18 | .70 | .011 |
| CPS1 | 1978/79 | 318 | 327 | 218 | 134 | 124 | 53 | 33 | .52 | .61 | .019 |
| NS | 1979 | 350 | 332 | 206 | 161 | 118 | 51 | 8 | .55 | .63 | .008 |
| CPS2 | 1981 | 321 | 350 | 255 | 156 | 96 | 59 | 8 | .61 | .69 | .022 |
| Urban | | | | | | | | | | | |
| LS1 | 1970 | 360 | 380 | 306 | 174 | 114 | 82 | 22 | .48 | .75 | .037 |
| LS2 | 1973 | 483 | 366 | 293 | 174 | 96 | 28 | 13 | 1.10 | .88 | .006 |
| SOFT | 1975 | (549) | 396 | 302 | 110 | 51 | 40 | 18 | 1.13 | .78 | .094 |
| CPS1[a] | 1978/79 | (362) | 293 | 302 | 211 | 80 | 0 | (0) | .90 | .77 | .040 |
| NS | 1979 | (286) | 259 | 239 | 162 | 98 | 15 | 0 | 1.20 | .73 | .085 |
| CPS2 | 1981 | (389) | 357 | 256 | 174 | 74 | 32 | 0 | 1.05 | .79 | .008 |
| Total | | | | | | | | | | | |
| LS1 | 1969/70 | 412 | 442 | 361 | 267 | 228 | 180 | 36 | -.02 | .88 | .031 |
| LS2 | 1972/73 | 422 | 397 | 362 | 205 | 190 | 144 | 18 | .10 | .77 | .045 |
| SOFT | 1975 | 481 | 375 | 273 | 199 | 164 | 93 | 20 | .27 | .71 | .014 |
| CPS1[b] | 1978/79 | 309 | 320 | 234 | 148 | 116 | 45 | 27 | .64 | .66 | .005 |
| NS | 1979 | 343 | 320 | 212 | 161 | 114 | 44 | 7 | .63 | .64 | .004 |
| CPS2 | 1981 | 330 | 351 | 255 | 159 | 92 | 55 | 7 | .67 | .70 | .019 |

Notes: Marital fertility rates are expressed per 1,000 currently married women. Rates in parentheses are based on denominators of fewer than 50 woman years per five-year age group. The Coale-Trussell indexes are based on the age groups 20-24 through 40-44.

[a]Bangkok metropolitan area.
[b]Excluding provincial urban.

Source: CPS2 from Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong (1982).

age-specific marital fertility rates based on the number of births that are reported to have occurred in the year prior to each survey.[9] The resulting series permits an examination of the age pattern of fertility and how it evolved during the course of the recent fertility decline (see Table 9). The expected change in the age pattern of fertility is evident from this series of marital fertility rates. For example, a comparison for the total population of marital fertility rates derived from CPS2, the most recent survey, with those from LS1, which refer to a period approximately a decade earlier, indicate that the marital fertility rate among women aged 20-24 declined by only 21 percent compared to a decline of 69 percent among women aged 40-44.

Coale and Trussell (1974) have developed two indexes that can be used to characterize any given marital fertility schedule. One index, designated m, indicates the extent to which the given schedule departs from the age pattern of a standard natural marital fertility schedule. This index can be referred to as the Coale-Trussell index of fertility control, since the age pattern of marital fertility, as discussed above, reflects the extent of family limitation practiced in the population. The m index is constructed so it will equal zero if the shape of the observed fertility schedule is identical to that of the standard natural fertility schedule. The faster marital fertility falls with age the higher the value of m, which can reach values above 2 in populations where family limitation is extensive. Negative values of m will result if marital fertility falls more slowly with age than in the standard. Another index, designated M, represents a scale factor intended to indicate the underlying level of natural fertility in the observed population relative to the standard marital fertililty schedule and can be referred to as the Coale-Trussell index of fertility level. The M index is designed to equal 1 in situations where the underlying level of natural fertility is the same as that incorporated in the standard schedule. For various reasons, the M index tends to underestimate the underlying level of natural fertility once control becomes common, but it can be a useful measure for comparing the underlying level of natural marital fertility for populations with modest levels of family limitation.

Coale and Trussell (1978) have proposed a procedure for estimating the m and M indexes through ordinary least squares methods. One advantage of this procedure is that

it yields a value for the mean square error of the regression, which can serve as an indication of how well the observed age pattern of marital fertility fits the fertility model on which the Coale-Trussell indexes are based.

In the case of Thailand, based on the age-specific marital fertility rates calculated from the series of surveys included in Table 9, the m index for the country as a whole rises from slightly below zero to close to 0.7 during the period from the end of the 1960s to the start of the 1980s. Thus, marital fertility was transformed from an age pattern consistent with natural fertility to one indicative of moderate fertility control. In addition, the value of the m index is substantially higher for the urban population at every survey than for the rural population. The urban value of the m index for LS1, the earliest survey, already reflects an age pattern of marital fertility consistent with some family limitation.

For the country as a whole, the M index declined steadily during the decade under observation, with the exception of the most recent observation. This should not be taken as an indication that the underlying level of natural marital fertility was actually declining in Thailand. Although the M index is intended to "discount" changes in the extent of family size limitation, it is nevertheless sensitive to changes in the pattern of birth spacing, which, as indicated below, was apparently changing during the decade in question.

The fact that the m and M indexes need to be interpreted with caution for the case of Thailand is underscored by the relatively high values of the mean square error of the estimates. According to Coale and Trussell (1974), values of the mean square error above 0.01 indicate a rather poor fit between the observed marital fertility values and their model schedules; only values below 0.005 suggest a relatively good fit. The high value of the mean square error undoubtedly reflects, at least in part, sample fluctuations that result from basing age-specific marital fertility rates on relatively small numbers of cases. For example, the worst fits are indicated for the urban marital fertility rates from the particularly small urban samples of SOFT and NS. Although the Surveys of Population Change, which are based on far larger samples, do not directly yield age-specific marital fertility rates, they can be approximated by dividing the reported age-specific fertility rates by the proportions

married (which are provided directly for SPC2, but need to be estimated in the case of SPC1; see footnote 6). The resulting age-specific marital fertility rates from these two surveys fit reasonably well to the Coale-Trussell model, yielding the following values:

| | m | M | MSE |
|---|---|---|---|
| SPC1 | .12 | .92 | .001 |
| SPC2 | .40 | .80 | .005 |

Moreover, it also seems likely that rapid declines in marital fertility will result in dislocations of the age pattern such that they will not conform particularly well to the Coale-Trussell model.

## PERCENT PREGNANT AND OPEN INTERVAL

Additional information on recent fertility trends is provided by data on the percent currently pregnant and the mean interval since last birth (see Table 10). In each case, the information on pregnancy status was derived from an independent question separate from the questions on birth histories that served as the basis for calculating the age-specific marital fertility rate. The reported percent pregnant is undoubtedly underestimated, since some women will not recognize an early pregnancy and there might be some hesitancy to admit pregnancy to an interviewer, especially if an abortion is contemplated. Since the extent to which pregnancy status reports are biased may vary from population to population, this measure is not suitable for comparing fertility among different populations (Goldman and Westoff, 1981). Nevertheless, if the bias is relatively constant within the <u>same</u> population, the percent pregnant can be used as an indication of trends in fertility, although it is more problematic as an indicator of fertility differentials. In the case of Thailand, the reported percent pregnant from the series of sample surveys for which this measure is available declines substantially in both rural and urban areas. These results are thus consistent with and help confirm the decline in marital fertility evident in the marital fertility rates calculated from these surveys. Moreover, the results for the CPS1, NS, and AFPH, all of which occurred within the span of a year's time, are quite consistent with each other with the exception of the

TABLE 10 Percent Pregnant at Time of Survey and Mean Number of Months Since Last Birth, Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, Standardized for Age, by Place of Residence: Thailand

| | LS1 1969/70 | LS2 1972/73 | SOFT 1975 | CPS1 1978/79 | NS 1979 | AFPH 1979 | CPS2 1981 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rural | | | | | | | |
| Percent pregnant | 16.2 | 14.9 | 12.2 | 10.0 | 10.3 | 9.9[a] | 8.5 |
| Open interval | 28 | 34 | 41 | 49 | 51 | -- | 52 |
| Urban | | | | | | | |
| Percent pregnant | 12.2 | 10.7 | 9.7 | 10.2[b] | 11.9 | 8.8[a] | 11.9 |
| Open interval | 49 | 50 | 53 | 51[b] | 52 | -- | 50 |
| Total | | | | | | | |
| Percent pregnant | 15.3 | 14.3 | 11.8 | 10.1[c] | 10.4 | 9.8[a] | 9.1 |
| Open interval | 31 | 36 | 43 | 49[c] | 51 | -- | 51 |

Note: The age distribution of currently married women in the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis of the age standardization.

-- indicates information not available.

[a]Results refer to a universe of 20 provinces; the urban sample refers to provincial urban only.
[b]Bangkok metropolitan area.
[c]Excluding provincial urban.

Sources: Knodel et al. (1980); Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong (1982); and unpublished tabulations.

urban values, which, as indicated above, are based on small numbers of women and refer to differently defined populations. Particularly noteworthy is the fact that the percent of respondents at the national level reporting themselves as pregnant in CPS2, the more recent survey, is lowest of all, suggesting a continuation of the fertility decline in contrast to the slight increase in marital fertility rates reported above.

This measure is less satisfactory for measuring rural-urban differences because urban women, who in general are better educated, may more readily recognize pregnancy at an early stage. The higher percent of urban as compared to rural women reporting themselves as pregnant in CPS2 may reflect such a difference rather than a genuine fertility differential. Nevertheless, it is noteworthy that if the CPS2 results are ignored, the pronounced urban-rural differential in percent pregnant

evident at the time of the earlier surveys contracts considerably over time, probably reflecting the more rapid fertility decline among rural women.

The mean interval since last birth among women aged 15-44 increased substantially in rural areas but changed little in urban areas. As a result, the urban-rural differential has disappeared. Since this measure is derived from the birth histories, it is not independent of the marital fertility rate measures. Nevertheless, these results together with those on the percent pregnant help support the finding that marital fertility has declined substantially in Thailand, and that this decline has been particularly pronounced among rural women.

## COMPLETED AND EXPECTED FAMILY SIZE

The high fertility of Thailand's recent past is evident in the cumulative fertility of women currently at the end of their reproductive ages. According to CPS2, the most recent survey, ever-married rural women aged 45-49 reported an average of almost six and one-half children ever born, down only slightly from the seven births per woman reported in the earliest surveys (Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong, 1982; Institute of Population Studies, 1981). Urban women experienced somewhat lower cumulative fertililty by the end of the reproductive span, amounting to about one child fewer than for rural women. Of course, mortality claims some of these births early in life. According to most surveys, the number of living children reported by women in their forties averaged about one less than the number of children ever born. We can expect this difference to decrease in the near future as a result of the recent declines in fertility and in infant and child mortality.

According to the 1960 and 1970 censuses, nearly 60 percent of every married woman aged 45-49 experienced six or more births (see Table 11). The increase in the mean and median children ever born between 1960 and 1970 may reflect in part a decrease in mortality rates, resulting in decreased widowhood among ever-married women. However, differences in the accuracy of the censuses cannot be ruled out as a reason for this increase. Preliminary data from the 1980 census, based on a 1-percent sample, show a considerable change in both the distribution and the mean and median number of children ever born compared to the 1960 and 1970 censuses for women at the end of the

TABLE 11 Percentage Distribution of Ever-Married Women Aged 45-49, by Children Ever Born and Living Children: Thailand

| Number of Children | Children Ever Born: Census 1960 | Children Ever Born: Census 1970 | Children Ever Born: Census 1980[a] | Living Children: Census 1980[a] |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | 3.2 | 1.7 | 3.0 | 3.4 |
| 1 | 5.8 | 5.5 | 5.3 | 6.0 |
| 2 | 6.4 | 6.1 | 7.1 | 8.8 |
| 3 | 7.3 | 7.0 | 10.4 | 12.5 |
| 4 | 8.7 | 8.6 | 12.5 | 15.1 |
| 5 | 9.9 | 9.9 | 14.3 | 16.4 |
| 6 | 10.6 | 10.8 | 13.1 | 13.7 |
| 7 | 10.9 | 11.0 | 10.8 | 10.1 |
| 8 | 10.3 | 10.6 | 8.5 | 6.5 |
| 9 | 9.0 | 9.2 | 5.9 | 3.8 |
| 10+ | 17.8 | 19.7 | 9.1 | 3.7 |
| Total Percent | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Mean | 6.29 | 6.55 | 5.61[b] | 4.91[c] |
| Median | 5.82 | 6.04 | 4.82 | 4.26 |

Note: Excludes women with unknown numbers of children ever born or living children.

[a]Based on a 1-percent sample tabulation.
[b]Based on assumption that the average number of children ever born to women with 10+ births was 12.0.
[c]Based on assumption that the average number of living children to women with 10+ living children was 11.

Sources: 1980 census from unpublished preliminary tabulations of the 1-percent sample; 1960 and 1970 censuses from official published reports.

reproductive ages. The proportion of women with large numbers of children ever born has decreased substantially while the proportion with three to six children ever born has increased noticeably. There has been little change in the proportion with fewer than three children ever born. This shift in the distribution results in a substantial decline in the mean number of children ever born--by about one birth, compared to the 1970 census results. According to the 1980 results, half of Thai women aged 45-49 had between three and six births over their reproductive life. This downward shift in the distribution of children ever born to women at the end of the reproductive age span indicated by the 1980 census compared to earlier censuses is consistent with the evidence of fertility decline in the intervening period.

We would expect that the impact of reduced fertility at the early stage of a fertility transition would be greatest at the higher parities. However, some caution is called for in interpreting the 1980 census data on the extent of reduced cumulative fertility among women at the end of the childbearing years, because results from several recent surveys (CPS1, NS, and CPS2) do not register the same sharp reduction.

The 1979 NS results (not shown) indicate that about 14 percent of ever-married women aged 45-49 reported ten or more children ever born. This helps confirm the finding that the proportion of women with particularly large numbers of children ever born is declining, although the extent of the decline indicated by the NS is not as dramatic as that suggested by the 1980 census. Part of the reason for this may stem from the more intensive interviewing involved in the NS as well as the fact that detailed pregnancy histories were collected for each respondent, thereby increasing the chance that past births would be reported fully. Likewise, this difference in technique affects all comparisons between census and survey reports on mean number of children ever born. Sampling fluctuations also play a part in such comparisons and, in the case of the NS, part of the contrast with the census may be a result of a biased sample (Institute of Population Studies, 1981).

The preliminary results from the 1980 census also provide information on the distribution of the number of living children among women at the end of their reproductive span. As is the case with results from the sample surveys, the mean number of living children is approximately one less than the mean number of children ever born. Thus, over half of Thai women aged 45-49 report having two to five living children and less than 40 percent report six or more.

During a period of fertility decline, the completed family size of women at the end of their reproductive ages can no longer serve as an approximation of the completed fertility that younger women will eventually achieve by the time they reach the end of their childbearing years. We have attempted to estimate the future completed family size of currently married women still in the midst of their childbearing span by adding the number of additional children each respondent indicated she wanted to the number of living children she already had as of the date of the survey. For convenience, we label this measure the "expected number of children," although

in a strict sense it is based on future fertility desires rather than expectations. Moreover, it is based on living children rather than all live births, since we assume this is a more meaningful measure of family size and that respondents are undoubtedly expressing their future fertility desires in terms of living children rather than simply live births.

In contrast to the minimal change from 1970 to 1980 in the completed family size of women reaching the end of their reproductive ages, the expected number of children shows a substantial decline (see Table 12). Among both the rural and urban sample, the expected number of children calculated for the first round of the Longitudinal Study in 1969/70 is considerably higher at every age than the number indicated by CPS2 in 1981. Generally a consistent trend toward lower expected family size is evident during the intervening period. For Thailand as a whole, the number of children expected by women aged 15-44, after standardization for age, declined by about one child during the period spanned by the surveys. Moreover, it is far below the 5 to 6 living children currrently reported by women who have already reached the end of their childbearing ages.

A clear positive relationship with age is evident for all surveys with respect to the expected number of children. From these figures alone, it is not possible to distinguish the role of differing family size preferences by age cohort from the role of increasing risk of exceeding preferred family size with age, as a result of longer exposure to childbearing; the measure as defined would be sensitive to both. The trend toward lower expected numbers of children among women in the younger age groups, who are less likely to have exceeded their desired fertility, suggests that family size preferences were declining during the period under observation. The decline in expected number of children among women in the older age groups undoubtedly reflects the ongoing decline in marital fertility. The reduction in expected number of children among younger women combined with the increased prevalence of contraception and abortion (see Chapter 5) reflects not only the continuing fertility decline during recent years but also implies a total fertility rate in the future well below current levels unless the expectations are grossly exceeded. Moreover, the rural-urban differences in the expected number of children are rather modest among younger women and are far below the approximately one child difference in the

TABLE 12 Expected Number of Children by Age and Residence for Currently Married Women Aged 15-44: Thailand

| Residence and Age Group | LS1 1969/70 | LS2 1972/73 | SOFT 1975 | CPS1 1978/79 | NS 1979 | AFPH 1979 | CPS2 1981 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rural[a] | | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | 3.27 | 3.15 | 2.71 | 2.34 | 2.69 | 2.50 | 2.39 |
| 20-24 | 3.17 | 3.16 | 2.96 | 2.55 | 2.90 | 2.55 | 2.50 |
| 25-29 | 3.88 | 3.79 | 3.34 | 3.03 | 3.22 | 3.08 | 2.76 |
| 30-34 | 4.34 | 4.15 | 4.20 | 3.70 | 3.84 | 3.79 | 3.40 |
| 35-39 | 5.57 | 5.58 | 4.88 | 4.55 | 4.59 | 4.85 | 4.22 |
| 40-44 | 5.95 | 4.61 | 5.46 | 5.26 | 5.33 | 5.27 | 4.93 |
| 15-44 | | | | | | | |
| Unstandardized | 4.61 | 4.06 | 4.02 | 3.72 | 3.96 | 3.64 | 3.43 |
| Standardized for age | 4.42 | 3.97 | 4.00 | 3.64 | 3.82 | 3.74 | 3.41 |
| Urban[b,c] | | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | 2.77 | 2.64 | (2.59) | (2.21) | (2.38) | 2.00 | (1.75) |
| 20-24 | 2.94 | 2.88 | 2.73 | 2.22 | 2.59 | 2.52 | 2.23 |
| 25-29 | 3.43 | 3.21 | 3.21 | 3.00 | 2.62 | 2.88 | 2.31 |
| 30-34 | 4.14 | 3.75 | 3.25 | 2.98 | 3.58 | 3.43 | 2.77 |
| 35-39 | 4.68 | 4.47 | 4.03 | 3.80 | 3.81 | 3.92 | 3.29 |
| 40-44 | 5.44 | 5.36 | 4.66 | 4.37 | 4.69 | 4.78 | 3.74 |
| 15-44 | | | | | | | |
| Unstandardized | 4.09 | 3.87 | 3.50 | 3.19 | 3.52 | 3.33 | 2.77 |
| Standardized for age | 3.97 | 3.77 | 3.45 | 3.15 | 3.32 | 3.34 | 2.74 |
| Total[a,c] | | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | 3.21 | 3.09 | 2.70 | 2.32 | 2.66 | 2.46 | 2.31 |
| 20-24 | 3.13 | 3.12 | 2.93 | 2.49 | 2.85 | 2.56 | 2.46 |
| 25-29 | 3.80 | 3.69 | 3.32 | 3.02 | 3.11 | 3.06 | 2.67 |
| 30-34 | 4.30 | 4.08 | 4.08 | 3.57 | 3.79 | 3.76 | 3.28 |
| 35-39 | 5.43 | 4.56 | 4.77 | 4.41 | 4.44 | 4.79 | 4.05 |
| 40-44 | 5.87 | 4.70 | 5.36 | 5.12 | 5.21 | 5.22 | 4.74 |
| 15-44 | | | | | | | |
| Unstandardized | 4.51 | 4.03 | 3.95 | 3.63 | 3.[illegible] | 3.61 | 3.31 |
| Standardized for age | 4.35 | 3.94 | 3.93 | 3.56 | 3.73 | 3.71 | 3.29 |

Notes: Expected number of children equals the number of living children plus additional children desired. Results in parentheses are based on fewer than 50 cases. The age distribution of currently married women in the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis of the age standardization.

[a]AFPH results refer to a universe of 20 provinces.
[b]Bangkok metropolis for CPS1 and provincial urban from a universe of 20 provinces for AFPH.
[c]Excluding provincial urban for CPS1.

Source: CPS2 from Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong (1982).

TABLE 13 Number of Living Children at Time of Study, Additional Number of Children Desired, and Total Expected Number of Children by Age and Residence, for Currently Married Women Aged 15-49: Thailand

| Residence and Age Group | LS1 1969/70 | | | NS 1979 | | | Difference (NS-LS1) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Living Children to Date | Additional Number Wanted | Total Number Expected[a] | Living Children to Date | Additional Number Wanted | Total Number Expected[a] | Living Children to Date | Additional Number Wanted | Total Number Expected[a] |
| Rural | | | | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | .61 | 2.65 | 3.27 | .46 | 2.24 | 2.69 | -.15 | -.41 | -.58 |
| 20-24 | 1.44 | 1.73 | 3.17 | 1.17 | 1.73 | 2.90 | -.27 | 0 | -.27 |
| 25-29 | 2.69 | 1.20 | 3.88 | 2.26 | .96 | 3.22 | -.43 | -.24 | -.66 |
| 30-34 | 3.66 | .68 | 4.34 | 3.40 | .44 | 3.84 | -.26 | -.24 | -.50 |
| 35-39 | 5.24 | .33 | 5.57 | 4.26 | .33 | 4.59 | -.98 | 0 | -.98 |
| 40-44 | 5.69 | .26 | 5.95 | 5.22 | .12 | 5.33 | -.47 | -.14 | -.62 |
| 45-49 | b | b | b | 6.05 | .09 | 6.15 | b | b | b |
| Urban | | | | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | .64 | 2.13 | 2.77 | -- | -- | -- | -- | -- | -- |
| 20-24 | 1.33 | 1.61 | 2.94 | (1.27) | (1.32) | (2.59) | (-.06) | (-.29) | (-.35) |
| 25-29 | 2.33 | 1.10 | 3.43 | 1.83 | .78 | 2.62 | -.50 | -.32 | -.81 |
| 30-34 | 3.47 | .66 | 4.14 | 2.90 | .68 | 3.58 | -.57 | +.02 | -.56 |
| 35-39 | 4.28 | .40 | 4.68 | 3.49 | .32 | 3.81 | -.79 | -.08 | -.87 |
| 40-44 | 5.24 | .20 | 5.44 | 4.49 | .20 | 4.69 | -.75 | 0 | -.75 |
| 45-49 | 4.96 | .23 | 5.19 | (4.89) | (.18) | (5.08) | -.07 | -.05 | -.11 |

Note: Results refer only to women for whom an expected number of children could be calculated. Results based on at least 10 but fewer than 50 cases are shown in parentheses; results based on 10 or fewer cases not shown.

[a]Expected number of children equals the number of living children plus additional children desired prior to rounding to two decimal points.

[b]In the rural round of LS1, women over 45 were not asked about the number of additional children desired.

average number of living children that currently characterizes rural and urban women in their late forties (Institute of Population Studies, 1981; Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong, 1982).

An examination of the separate components of the total number of children expected (living children to date and additional number wanted) for LS1 and NS, two surveys taken a decade apart and based in part on the same respondents, provides some insight into the nature of the changes in expected family size and the validity of this measure as a predictor of future family building (see Table 13). For both rural and urban samples, the achieved number of living children at the time of interview declined for every age group between the two surveys. If measured by children ever born rather than living children, the decline in fertility would be even greater, since decreasing mortality rates in the interim increased the proportion of births that were still living at the time of the NS survey. For all ages except the youngest, most or all of the decline in the total expected number of children is attributable to the decline in achieved family size rather than in reduced numbers of additional children wanted. Nevertheless, it is noteworthy that despite the lower number of living children for women in each age group in 1979, the additional number of children wanted either remained about the same or declined compared to the situation a decade earlier. Thus the reductions in achieved fertility are clearly not the result of postponed births intended to be made up later but reflect instead a demand for fewer children.

Given the ten-year interval between the two surveys (nine years for the urban samples), some indication of how well responses concerning the additional number of children wanted predict subsequent fertility behavior can be found by comparing the total number of children expected for each age group of women in the first survey with the achieved number of living children reported by women ten years older a decade later. One problem in interpreting such a comparison is created by the fact that the information in Table 13 refers only to currently married women. Since the average age at first marriage in Thailand is in the early twenties, married women in the youngest age group, especially in the 15-19 age group who were interviewed for LS1, may not be typical of married women ten years older interviewed in the NS. The latter group would include cohort members who married

during the intervening ten years as well as those who were already married when the cohort was aged 15-19. This problem is less serious for cohorts that were somewhat older at the time of LS1, since most women marry prior to age 25. Despite this problem, a cohort-by-cohort comparison of achieved number of living children in 1979 with the expected number ten years earlier (at the time of LS1) clearly indicates that fertility desires as originally stated were exceeded. For the rural sample this is true for every cohort for which this comparison can be made, with the exception of the women who were 15-19 at the time of LS1. For the urban sample, the achieved number of living children in 1979 was lower than the total number expected in 1970, approximately the same for the cohort aged 20-24 in 1979, and larger for the cohorts that were in older age groups.

Except for the cohort aged 45-49 in 1979 (and thus aged 35-39 ten years earlier), the final family size will undoubtedly be larger than the number of living children reported at the time of the interview in 1979. Thus a closer estimation of the extent to which final family size will exceed the expected family size as indicated in LS1 can be obtained by comparing for each cohort the total number of children expected in 1979 with the expected number indicated a decade earlier. In this comparison, only women who were aged 15-19 at the time of LS1 in both rural and urban samples have lower expected numbers of children in 1979. This is probably a result of the selectivity problem referred to above. The subset of women who marry at particularly young ages among a given cohort are prone to higher completed fertility. Thus the expected number of children to the subset of women aged 25-29 in 1979 whose first marriage occurred at least ten years earlier is higher than both the expected number for all married women aged 25-29 in 1979 and the expected number as calculated for married women aged 15-19 from LS1.[10]

The extent to which the future fertility of any given cohort will exceed the additional number of children wanted is undoubtedly heavily dependent on the prevalence of fertility control practices. Thus we would expect that as contraceptive prevalence and abortion increase, final family size will be closer to the expected number as defined by the present measure. In this connection, it is worth noting that the correspondence on a cohort basis between the total number of children expected as of LS1 for the urban sample agrees more closely with both

the achieved number of living children in 1979 and the total number expected in 1979 than is true for the rural sample, where contraceptive prevalence during most of the period was substantially below that of the urban areas.

In sum, Thailand is currently in the midst of a major decline in fertility. Although it is difficult to date the onset of the fall in fertility with precision, most evidence indicates that the decline started to gain momentum during the 1960s and, for the rural population, probably dates largely from the latter part of the decade. A decomposition of changes in the crude birth rate between the mid-1960s and mid-1970s suggests that neither changes in the age structure nor in the proportion married among women in the reproductive ages contributed in a major way to the declining birth rates. Rather the reduction is largely a matter of a fall in marital fertility. Between the end of the 1960s and the early 1980s, survey evidence indicates that marital fertility fell by almost 40 percent, representing one of the most rapid fertility reductions in the developing world. This reduction in marital fertility is supported by data showing decreases in the percentage of women who are currently pregnant and increases in the average length of the open birth interval.

During the last decade, the decline in fertility appears to have been more pronounced in rural than in urban areas, thus narrowing the formerly substantial rural-urban differential in fertility levels. Regional differences in both the timing and extent of decline are also apparent, although by the early 1980s all areas of Thailand are apparently participating in the ongoing fertility transition. Reductions in the expected number of children during the last decade both reflect the continuing fertility decline and, especially among younger married women, imply a continuation of the recent fertility trends, at least for the near future.

NOTES

[1]The normal expectation would be for the estimates based on the dual-record system approach to be higher than those based on retrospectively reported births from single, cross-sectional surveys. The apparent agreement in the Thai case may be the fortuitous result of compensating errors in the estimates based on the single surveys. It is possible that births are incompletely

reported in the surveys, as would be expected, but that errors in dating the births, either by the respondent or in the process of coding, result in more births being reported as occurring during the year prior to the survey than would be the case if the dating of all reported births were correct. This could then inflate the fertility rates based on births retrospectively reported as occurring in the year prior to the survey so they would agree with levels implied by dual-record system estimates.

One hint that this may be the case is provided by the fact that estimates of fertility from most Thai surveys based on births reported as occurring during the second year prior to the survey are regularly lower than estimates based on births reported as occurring during the first prior 12 months (National Research Council, 1980). This finding is the opposite of what we would expect to be the true case under circumstances of declining fertility. An examination of the procedures used by coders and interviewers to convert reported animal-year dates into Buddhist Era calendar dates suggest that a shift of some births from the second year prior to the survey into the first prior year might have occurred in the process. However, this explanation is at present only an hypothesis and must be examined further before a sound judgment on its validity can be made. A variety of other potential explanations could also account for the agreement, including ones involving errors in the dual-record system estimates.

[2]The measure is similar to the index of marital fertility $I_g'$, proposed by Coale (1969) except that it directly standardizes for age, in the present case using the age distribution of currently married women as reported for the whole country in the 1970 Thai census. For a detailed discussion of $I_g'$, see Knodel (1979).

[3]These rates were calculated from Shevasunt and Hogan (1979:Table 3.1). In that table, rates are given only up through age 44 and thus the 45-49 group is ignored in the calculation of $I_g'$. The rates for Chiang Mai province and Chieng Rai province were combined using weights of 779 and 1,142, respectively, which refer to the total number of currently married women aged 15-44 that were interviewed. The number of women on which each five-year age group rate is based is not provided in the report.

[4]While age reporting is relatively good in Thailand and most people know their age and year or date of birth, there is substantial evidence of a tendency to state age at next birthday in preference to age at last birthday in response to a direct question about age. Although the precise extent to which this practice occurs has not yet been determined, it seems clear that at any given age, a substantial proportion of respondents state their age at next birthday as opposed to age at last birthday; there is some evidence that the tendency is to round age to that at the nearest birthday (Chamratrithirong et al., 1978). In the 1960 census, age was tabulated on the basis of a direct question on age, while in the 1970 census and other sources age was calculated from the reported date of birth. Thus, age as reported in 1960 tends to be half a year lower on average than would be the case if age at last birthday had actually been reported.

[5]Chamratrithirong (1980:12) has speculated that the SPC2 data underestimates the true proportions single and that the results from SOFT are more accurate because of the way temporarily absent members of the household and temporary visitors were treated.

[6]The necessary data on the age-sex distribution are provided in the reports of SPC1 and SPC2. Data on the proportion of women currently married by age group are also provided directly for SPC2. The proportions currently married at the time of SPC1, however, were not available directly and were estimated by linear interpolation between the 1960 census (after adjustment for a half-year age misstatement) and the 1970 census. Both SPC1 and SPC2 provide age-specific fertility but not age-specific marital fertility; the latter was estimated by dividing the age-specific fertility rates by the proportions married.

[7]Since we had access only to the proportions single by age for 1980, we calculated the proportions <u>currently</u> married by multiplying the proportions <u>ever</u> married in 1980 (the complement of proportions single) by the ratio of currently married to ever-married women as observed in the 1970 census.

[8]The crude birth rate, given the alternative proportions currently married, was calculated by multiplying

the observed age-specific birth rates by the ratio of the alternative proportions currently married to the proportions currently married recorded in SPC2 at each age and then multiplying through by the observed age structure.

[9]Only the date of the most recent birth was asked in CPS1 and CPS2, but this suffices for calculating marital fertility in the year prior to the survey provided we ignore the very small number of next-to-last births that occurred 10 to 12 months prior to interview.

[10]More precisely, the expected number of children born to women who were aged 25-29 at the time of the NS and who indicated their age at first marriage was ten or more years younger than their current age was 3.59 for the rural sample (N = 75) and 2.80 for the urban sample (N = 10).

# CHAPTER 3

## PROXIMATE DETERMINANTS 1: FAMILY FORMATION AND DISSOLUTION

A clear prerequisite of fertility is "exposure" to sexual intercourse. In most societies, including Thailand, most such exposure occurs within marital unions, although it may also occur to varying extents outside of marriage. In this chapter we focus on the category of proximate fertility determinants that Bongaarts refers to as exposure factors. We start with a discussion of sexual relations and fertility outside of marriage, a topic that has received little previous attention in the demographic literature at least, and then turn to the more familiar topics of marriage, marital dissolution, and remarriage. Finally, we examine evidence on temporary separation of spouses, another topic that has received limited attention but which also plays a part in determining the extent of exposure to sexual relations.

### PREMARITAL SEX, PREMARITAL PREGNANCY, AND ILLEGITIMACY

There is relatively little solid data on the extent of premarital sex, premarital pregnancies, and illegitimacy in Thailand. Quite probably the extent and nature of premarital sexual relations and their outcomes differ regionally and between rural and urban areas. Moreover, there is little reason to expect that these matters have remained constant over time.

There are a variety of judgments offered in the anthropological literature with respect to the extent of premarital sexual activity. The conclusions are usually limited to the villages under study, ranging from very little to more common (Kaufman, 1976:149; Potter, 1977:ii; Yoddumnern, 1981; Mougne, 1974, Part III:1; Riley, 1972:115). These differing opinions may reflect

genuine regional and temporal differences or they may stem from different personal biases or abilities at inquiry among the observers. Judging the extent of premarital sexual activity is made more difficult by the lack of a sharp distinction in at least some areas of Thailand between de facto cohabitation and marriage. While some form of ceremony associated with the start of cohabitation is usual, it is not universal (Riley, 1972:117; Yoddumnern, 1981). Since the anthropologists do not provide us with quantitative estimates, perhaps the most that can be said is that there is some premarital sexual activity in rural Thailand but that it is uncertain to what extent it is simply a prelude to more permanent cohabitation by the same couple and thus in a sense part of what might be considered a courtship process leading to marriage.

Prostitution in a variety of forms is an additional source of premarital sexual activity in most urban areas and especially in Bangkok. Patronization of prostitutes is undoubtedly quite common among unmarried (and married) urban Thai males. For example, about one fourth of a sample of Bangkok schoolboys, mostly aged 15-17, and almost two thirds of a sample of unmarried Bangkok male factory workers, mostly aged 18-20, indicated in a survey that they had visited a brothel at least once (Muangnan, 1979:44). The number of unmarried (including separated and divorced) urban women involved in some form of prostitution is also not insignificant (Muangman and Nanta, 1980; Thitsa, 1980) with some unknown and possibly substantial number of illegitimate births resulting. Since the legitimacy status of a birth is not officially recorded at the time of registration, no statistics are available on the proportion of registered births that occur outside of marriage.

Attempts have been made to estimate the extent of premarital births and conceptions by comparing retrospectively reported dates of first marriage and first birth provided in several surveys. For example, according to such calculations based on SOFT, 5 percent of women whose marriage occurred at least five years before the survey were classified as having experienced a first birth prior to their first marriage, and an additional 7 percent were classified as having experienced their first birth within the first seven months of marriage (Institute of Population Studies and National Statistical Bureau, 1977:55). Based on a survey of two northern Thai provinces, Hirschman and Rindfuss (1981)

calculate that 17 percent of ever-married women in the reproductive ages experienced an illegitimate or premaritally conceived first birth. About half of these were born before marriage and the other half conceived before but born after marriage. Data from the Asian Marriage Survey (AMS) indicate that among post-marital first births, approximately 12 percent in the general Bangkok sample, 9 percent in the Bangkok slum sample, and 13 percent in the semi-rural area occurred within eight months of marriage.

Unfortunately, there are sufficiently serious problems with this method of estimating the extent of premaritally born or conceived births that little confidence can be placed in the results. The most serious problem stems from the fact that the validity of such calculations depends on the accuracy with which the dates of first marriage and first birth are reported. In a substantial proportion of cases, respondents cannot recall precisely the month and year of first marriage or, less frequently, of first birth. In such cases, dates are typically imputed prior to actual tabulation. For example, in over 40 percent of the first birth intervals that indicated either a birth prior to first marriage or a birth within the first eight months of marriage from SOFT, imputation of first marriage and/or first birth was required. Of course, some first births treated as post-maritally conceived also involved imputation of dates and might in fact have been premaritally born or conceived. The point, however, is that with such a high proportion of imputation among cases classified as premarital births or conceptions, the validity of the resulting figures is open to serious question.

There may also be deliberate misreporting of dates of first marriage and first birth. Some respondents may attempt to cover up an illegitimate or premaritally conceived birth by adjusting the reported dates accordingly. Others may fail to mention a previous marriage, a sensitive issue for some couples in Thailand, but correctly indicate the date of their first birth when reporting a full pregnancy history. We suspect that many of the negative intervals between marriage and first birth result from such a reporting pattern. Moreover, given the dependency of this approach on a high level of accuracy in dating the event of first marriage and first birth, it is particularly sensitive to errors associated with converting dates reported in terms of animal years and lunar months into more conventional dates, estimates

made by interviewers when the respondent is unable to give precise information, and coding errors. Finally, the fact that typically only married women are included in the surveys on which these calculations are based means that single women who have a birth but do not marry are systematically excluded. Given all these problems, we believe little weight can be placed on calculations of this sort.

Several behavioral and attitudinal indicators of premarital sexual activity in Thailand are available from information collected in the AMS (see Table 14). In response to a question as to how soon after marriage the union was consummated sexually, a small number of respondents explicitly mentioned that they had had sexual relations with their husband prior to marriage. This varied from 5 percent in the semi-rural sample to 15 percent among the Bangkok slum example. We suspect that these figures understate, possibly substantially, the true extent of premarital intercourse among couples who eventually marry, both because the wording of the question implicitly assumed consummation subsequent to marriage and because we expect some respondents would be hesitant to admit having started sexual relations prior to marriage. The significance of the results lies rather in showing that some respondents admit to premarital sexual relations with their husbands when not explicitly questioned about it, thus indicating at least some premarital sexual activity of this sort.

Information about opinions and attitudes concerning premarital sexual experience is also available from AMS. In all three subsamples, the vast majority of respondents believed that men have sexual experience prior to marriage. This is not surprising given the fact that respondents are probably including experience with prostitutes in their assessment. More surprising is the substantial proportion who think that women also have sexual experience prior to marriage, again suggesting the premarital sexual activity other than involvement with prostitution may be relatively common. Approval of sex before marriage, as expressed by female respondents, suggests that a very strong double standard is the norm in Thailand. In all three subsamples, respondents were much more likely to indicate approval of sex before marriage for men than for women. In both cases, the proportion approving is substantially lower than the proportion who think that premarital sexual activity actually occurs.

TABLE 14 Selected Behavioral and Attitudinal Indicators of Premarital Sex as Reported by Ever-Married Women Aged 15-44: Thailand

| Indicator | Bangkok General | Bangkok Slum | Semi-Rural |
|---|---|---|---|
| Percent reporting consummation prior to marriage | 6.0 | 14.7 | 5.1 |
| Percent who think men have sexual experience prior to marriage | 95.3 | 93.9 | 89.5 |
| Percent who think women have sexual experience prior to marriage | 43.1 | 52.2 | 47.5 |
| Percent who approve sex before marriage for men | 71.5 | 63.9 | 52.8 |
| Percent who approve sex before marriage for women | 10.1 | 17.8 | 10.7 |
| N[a] | 514-515 | 504-507 | 653-657 |

[a]Varies slightly from question to question depending on the number of nonrespondents.

Source: Chamratrithirong (1982).

Additional information on attitudes toward premarital intercourse is provided in a study by Muangman (1979) based on a nonrandom sample of adolescent school and factory workers in Bangkok and in a northeastern province. When asked if premarital intercourse was permissible among couples who had no plans for engagement, approval among female respondents was quite low, varying from 3 percent among northeastern factory workers to 14 percent among Bangkok schoolgirls. Approval among male respondents was higher, ranging from 23 percent among northeastern factory workers to 38 percent among Bangkok schoolboys. Approval of premarital intercourse, however, was considerably higher when the situation referred to in the question pertained to couples who planned to get engaged or married or were already engaged. Again, substantial male-female differences persisted. Approval by female respondents of premarital intercourse between engaged couples varied from 18 percent for northeastern factory workers to 37 percent among Bangkok factory workers; for male respondents approval varied from 43 percent of Bangkok factory workers to 63 percent of Bangkok schoolboys.

The results from the study of adolescents and the AMS as well as comments from various anthropologists strongly suggest that premarital sexual activity in Thailand is not unconditionally disapproved, at least by and for substantial proportions of the population. The extent to which this limited tolerance of premarital intercourse

reflects or leads to actual premarital activity is not possible to gauge from available data nor can we estimate the impact on fertility levels. It is a factor that clearly requires more careful and detailed research than currently exists before any final assessment can be reached.

## NUPTIALITY

Although there is evidence of some premarital sexual activity and even illegitimacy in Thailand, fertility is predominantly confined to marital unions. Since the onset of marriage (defined as socially recognized cohabitation) marks either the onset of or an increase in exposure to the risk of pregnancy, the age at first marriage, the proportion who ever marry, and patterns of marital dissolution and remarriage all have an important influence on the overall level of fertility.

In Chapter 2, we examined the proportions single at different ages and the singulate mean age at marriage over the last two decades. While not completely consistent, the data appear to point to some increase in the age at marriage but still nearly universal marriage among both men and women. In Thailand the singulate mean age at marriage for women is between 22 and 23 and approximately 40 percent of women aged 20-24 are still single. On a worldwide basis, Thai age at marriage is intermediate between a much earlier pattern characterizing much of the Third World and a later age at marriage characteristic of much of Europe (Chamratrithirong, 1980), although it should be noted that marriage patterns are in a state of flux in many countries.

The relatively low proportion still single by ages 45-49 among women is more typical of less-developed countries than of many Western nations. This has led Chamratrithirong (1980) to speculate that Thailand may be in a state of transition in which not only is the age at marriage slowly rising but the eventual proportion who ever marry is decreasing. He argues that this latter phenomenon is not yet apparent in the statistics because the cohorts currently at the end of the reproductive years are characterized by the former pattern of earlier and more universal marriage. If his interpretation is correct, over the next several decades as the younger cohorts reach the end of the reproductive years, an increase in proportion never marrying should become

evident. In this connection, it is worth noting that in contrast to the 2 or 3 percent of women who were classified as still single at ages 45-49 in all other sources, the preliminary results of the 1-percent sample of the 1980 census show 4.4 percent of that age group as single, higher than any previous figures.

Given the lack of consistency in the evidence examined so far on changing patterns of nuptiality in Thailand, it is useful to examine direct reports on age at first marriage which have been collected in the various sample surveys. One way to do this is to compare the reported age at first marriage of different age groups and hence different cohorts included in each survey. The main problem with these data is that the nuptiality experience of only the oldest cohorts can be considered to be close to complete as not everyone at the younger ages who will eventually marry has done so by the time of the survey. Thus a direct comparison of the mean age at marriage for different cohorts would be biased, since ceteris paribus the mean would be higher the older the age of the cohort at the time of the survey. One way to avoid this bias is to compare the mean age of those who marry before a given age across cohorts who have already reached that age at the time of the survey.[1]

In order to examine whether there has been a trend toward later or earlier marriage, the age at marriage for women marrying before age 25 has been calculated for women aged 25 and above (see Table 15). Had the age at marriage been increasing, the results should show a rise with decreasing age. Several of the surveys point to an increase in the age at first marriage over the recent past among urban women. The results for most of the surveys do not show a clear-cut tendency in this direction for the rural or the total population for which the rural population carries a heavy weight. A similar analysis based on ever-married women in the rural northeast interviewed in NES also revealed little change, with age at marriage under 25 fluctuating only between 19.2 and 19.3 for different five-year age cohorts of women within the reproductive ages.

As Trussell (1980) has pointed out, one drawback of this approach is that the experience of the youngest cohorts, those under age 25, is omitted from the analysis and thus the most recent trends are not revealed. This may explain in part why the increase in age at marriage indicated between the 1970 and 1980 censuses is not confirmed. Of some interest in this connection are the

TABLE 15 Age at First Marriage Among Women Marrying Before Age 25, by Current Age and Residence: Thailand

| Residence and Current Age Group | LS1 1969/70 | LS2 1972/73 | SOFT 1975 | NS 1979 | AFPH[a] 1979 | CPS2 1981 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rural | | | | | | |
| 25-29 | 19.4 | 19.3 | 19.1 | 19.5 | 19.5 | 19.4 |
| 30-34 | 19.3 | 19.0 | 19.1 | 19.1 | 19.2 | 18.9 |
| 35-39 | 19.6 | 19.3 | 19.2 | 19.4 | 19.3 | 19.0 |
| 40-44 | 19.1 | 19.6 | 18.9 | 19.2 | 19.2 | 19.1 |
| 45-49 | 19.1 | 19.2 | 19.2 | 19.6 | -- | 19.1 |
| 50+ | 19.3 | 19.2 | -- | 19.1 | -- | -- |
| Urban | | | | | | |
| 25-29 | 20.0 | 20.1 | 20.4 | 20.0 | 19.9 | 20.2 |
| 30-34 | 20.0 | 19.9 | 20.4 | (20.5) | 20.0 | 20.3 |
| 35-39 | 19.6 | 19.8 | 20.7 | (20.5) | 19.5 | 20.3 |
| 40-44 | 19.4 | 19.5 | 19.6 | 20.0 | 20.2 | 19.8 |
| 45-49 | 19.5 | 19.8 | 19.9 | (19.2) | -- | 20.2 |
| 50+ | 19.2 | 19.3 | -- | 19.7 | -- | -- |
| Total | | | | | | |
| 25-29 | 19.5 | 19.4 | 19.3 | 19.6 | 19.5 | 19.5 |
| 30-34 | 19.4 | 19.2 | 19.2 | 19.3 | 19.3 | 19.1 |
| 35-39 | 19.6 | 19.4 | 19.3 | 19.6 | 19.3 | 19.2 |
| 40-44 | 19.1 | 19.6 | 19.0 | 19.4 | 19.3 | 19.1 |
| 45-49 | 19.1 | 19.3 | 19.3 | 19.5 | -- | 19.2 |
| 50+ | 19.3 | 19.2 | -- | 19.2 | -- | -- |

Note: Results in parentheses are based on fewer than 50 cases.

-- indicates age groups not included in surveys.

results of the three most recent surveys (NS, AFPH, and CPS2) since they would provide the most recent indication of a trend. In each of these surveys, the age at marriage for the 25-29 age group is older than the age at marriage for the 30-34 age group, perhaps reflecting the shift toward later marriage revealed by the comparison of the 1970 and 1980 censuses. Given the apparent fluctuation in the series for each of these surveys, this evidence can only be considered suggestive.[2] It is also posible for the age at marriage to increase without the change being already reflected in the average age at marriage of persons marrying under 25. For example, if the distribution of ages at marriage under 25 for those who marry under 25 remained unchanged while larger proportions of a

cohort married over 25, the average age at marriage of the entire cohort would increase but the age at marriage under 25 would remain the same. Thus for a variety of reasons, the lack of a clear trend in the age at marriage under 25 cannot be taken as conclusive proof of little change in age at marriage in Thailand.

A somewhat different approach to estimating trends in age at marriage has been taken by Trussell (1980), based on the results of SOFT. By applying the model nuptiality schedules developed by Coale to the reported ages at first marriage of successive age groups of ever-married women as well as to the same data in combination with information on the proportions ever married (tabulated from the household record collected in the survey), he is able to estimate the mean age at first marriage and the proportion who will eventually marry for each cohort. His results are reproduced in Table 16. By applying a model schedule, he is able to extrapolate the full nuptiality experience of each cohort based on their experience up to the date of the survey and thus avoid the downward bias on the mean age at marriage that would result from direct calculations based only on experience to date.

Two slightly different series of mean ages at first marriage were calculated depending on whether the model was applied only to the reported ages at first marriage or to the combination of these data with the proportions

TABLE 16 Estimates of the Mean Age at Marriage and Proportions Eventually Marrying for Women, Based on Fitting the Coale Model Marriage Schedule to Individual Data on Age at Marriage Alone, and Combined with Data on Proportions Ever Married from the Household Schedule of SOFT: Thailand

| Cohort | Estimated Mean Age at First Marriage | | Estimated Proportions Eventually Marrying (from combined data) |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Individual Data | Combined Data | |
| 20-24 | 21.2 | 21.4 | .900 |
| 25-29 | 21.1 | 21.2 | .921 |
| 30-34 | 20.8 | 20.8 | .929 |
| 35-39 | 20.7 | 20.7 | .945 |
| 40-44 | 20.2 | 20.2 | .963 |
| 45-49 | 20.3 | 20.3 | .967 |

Source: Adapted from Trussell (1980).

ever married derived from the household schedule. Both series suggest that a modest increase in the age at first marriage has been underway over recent decades. In addition, Trussell's estimates of the proportion that will eventually marry suggest that a movement away from virtually universal marriage is also taking place. These results, of course, are only estimates and depend both on how well the model nuptiality schedule fits actual Thai experience and on the accuracy of the data used in the calculations. A decrease in the proportion eventually marrying to only 90 percent, as indicated by Trussell's estimates, implies a rather radical change in this aspect of the Thai nuptiality pattern and probably should be taken only as suggestive of the direction in which the change is occurring rather than an indication of the actual magnitude to be expected.

It is worth noting that Trussell's estimates of the mean age at first marriage even for the more recent cohorts are lower than any of the singulate mean ages at first marriage calculated from the proportions single as reported in the various censuses and surveys included in Table 8. Part of the reason for this discrepancy derives from the fact that when calculations of the singulate mean age at first marriage are based on a single cross-section from a census or survey, they incorporate an assumption of unchanging marriage patterns over the recent past. Since the evidence seems to point to increases in the age at marriage and in proportions single, particularly at younger ages, over the last two decades, this assumption is not met. As a result, estimates of the singulate mean age at marriage that are based on single cross-sections tend to be biased upward. Agarwala (1962) has proposed a method of calculating the singulate mean age at marriage that avoids the assumption of unchanging nuptiality, provided data are available for two points in time.[3] The resulting calculations reflects the age at marriage implied by the nuptiality experience during the period intervening between the two sets of observations and is no longer biased by changes that may have occurred prior to the first observation. Calculations based on the proportions single in the last three censuses (using a half-year adjustment for the 1960 census) yield a singulate mean age at marriage of 21.60 for the 1960-70 intercensal period and 21.99 for the 1970-80 intercensal period. As expected, these estimates of the singulate mean age at marriage are lower than would be obtained if we simply averaged the estimates derived from each census

separately. Nevertheless, the estimates are still somewhat higher than those provided by Trussell even for the most recent cohort, suggesting some deviation between the marital experience as recorded in the actual data and that reflected in the model nuptiality schedules.

Substantial differences in nuptiality patterns exist between rural and urban residents in Thailand. As indicated in Table 17, the percentage single as recorded in the 1970 census is higher at every age among urban residents than among their rural counterparts. This holds equally for men and women. The singulate mean age at marriage is approximately three years higher for both men and women living in urban areas than for rural residents of the same sex. The largest absolute rural-urban differences are in the age group in the twenties and thus for the ages at which fertility is potentially highest. Some difference still persists even at the end of the reproductive ages, although the percentage remaining single is low enough to suggest nearly universal marriage even in urban areas. Analysis based on the first round of the Longitudinal Study as well as the 1970

TABLE 17 Percentage Single by Age, Sex, and Residence, and Singulate Mean Age at Marriage (SMAM) by Sex and Residence, 1970: Thailand

| | Percentage Single | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Urban Areas | | Rural Areas | |
| Age Group | Male | Female | Male | Female |
| 10-14 | 100.0 | 99.7 | 100.0 | 99.5 |
| 15-19 | 98.1 | 89.2 | 95.8 | 79.5 |
| 20-24 | 80.8 | 59.2 | 60.4 | 33.7 |
| 25-29 | 43.8 | 30.8 | 20.4 | 12.8 |
| 30-34 | 20.2 | 16.3 | 8.1 | 6.7 |
| 35-39 | 10.3 | 10.1 | 4.4 | 4.5 |
| 40-44 | 6.1 | 7.1 | 2.7 | 3.4 |
| 45-49 | 4.8 | 5.5 | 2.0 | 2.7 |
| 50-54 | 3.9 | 4.2 | 1.6 | 2.3 |
| Total standard-ized by age | 58.0 | 51.9 | 50.2 | 42.8 |
| SMAM | 27.2 | 24.7 | 24.2 | 21.4 |

Source: Adapted from Chamratrithirong (1980).

census suggests that among urban residents differences exist between those living in Bangkok and those living in provincial urban areas, with the proportion single at any given age and the age at marriage being higher among Bangkok residents (Prachuabmoh et al., 1972; Chamratrithirong, 1980). Similar differences in the marriage patterns of the rural, provincial urban, and Bangkok populations are also evident from the special 1-percent tabulations of the 1960 census (Goldstein et al. 1973).

Regardless of which set of estimates are accepted as the most representative for Thailand, the age at marriage, especially for women is somewhat older than in many other less-developed countries. The probable recent rise in the age at marriage most likely reflects the same modernizing forces that apparently are changing nuptiality in other Asian countries (Smith, 1980). A cross-sectional analysis of 1970 census data by Chamratrithirong (1980) supports the sugggestion that socioeconomic change affected nuptiality in Thailand during the previous decade. In a cross-provincial analysis, both age at marriage and percentage single were positively related to socioeconomic characteristics, especially for men.

Even before the recent changes in nuptiality patterns, female age at marriage in Thailand appeared traditionally to have been moderately late by Third World standards. Lauro (1979) suggests that the prevalence of bride-price payments and the custom of male entrance into monkhood prior to marriage have acted as important factors contributing to delayed marriage. These factors would appear to be more relevant for explaining the male rather than the female age at marriage. If there is also a norm in favor of a narrow age gap between spouses, however, women's age at marriage would also be affected. Lauro also notes that residents of the village he studied frequently expressed a feeling that couples should not marry until they were old enough to shoulder the responsibilities of raising a family. Although temporary residence with the bride's parents is fairly common following marriage and may ease the financial burden faced by a newly married couple (Yoddumnern, 1981), this typically lasts only for a short period after which neo-local residence is established (Henderson, 1971; Limanonda, 1979). Support of the newlywed couple's children generally falls on the couple themselves rather than being absorbed by a composite household economy, as may be common in countries where age at marriage is quite

early (Davis, 1955). This relative economic and even social independence of newly formed families may well be a crucial factor in accounting for the relatively later age at marriage, as it is hypothesized to have been historically in Western Europe, although to an even more extreme extent.

The strong association between age at first marriage and completed fertility is evident in Table 18, which compares the mean number of children ever born by age at first marriage for ever-married women close to or past the end of the reproductive span as recorded by LS1 and NS, the two surveys spanning the decade of the 1970s. Almost without exception, the mean number of children ever born declined with increased age at first marriage. A useful summary measure of the bivariate association between age at first marriage and children ever born is provided by the slope of the least squares regression line.

Under conditions of natural fertility, the influence of age at first marriage on completed fertility presumably operates primarily through increasing the amount of time during the reproductive span that a woman is exposed to the risk of pregnancy. Under conditions of widespread fertility control within marriage, this link might be expected to be weakened as increased exposure time could be counteracted by earlier practice of contraception. However, as others have pointed out, even under conditions of widspread fertility control, there are a variety of mechanisms that can link these two variables (van de Walle, 1973; Bumpass and Mburugu, 1977). For example, as long as there is some contraceptive failure, the link between longer exposure and higher cumulative fertility should persist even if to a lesser extent. Younger marriages may also be associated with high fecundity, higher fertility desires, or socioeconomic characteristics associated with less efficient contraceptive practice. Thus while increased birth control within marriage could potentially lead to a weakening of the inverse association between age at marriage and completed family size, other outcomes are possible.

The results in Table 18 are mixed in this respect. At the time of LS1, only a small proportion of ever-married women aged 40-49 and almost none of those 50 and over indicated they had ever practiced contraception. During the decade of the 1970s, as documented in Chapter 5, contraceptive prevalence increased dramatically, and by 1979, the year NS was fielded, a substantial proportion

TABLE 18 Mean Number of Children Ever Born to Ever-Married Women Aged 40 and Over by Current Age and Age at First Marriage: Thailand

| | Rural Women | | | | Urban Women | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 40-49 | | 50 and Over | | 40-49 | | 50 and Over | |
| Age at First Marriage | LS1 1969 | NS 1979 | LS1 1969 | NS 1979 | LS1 1970 | NS 1979 | LS1 1970 | NS 1979 |
| Under 19 | 7.50 | 7.42 | 7.37 | 7.16 | 6.53 | (5.96) | 5.86 | (6.73) |
| 19-21 | 6.87 | 6.60 | 6.95 | 6.53 | 6.16 | (4.77) | 6.20 | (6.00) |
| 22-24 | 6.26 | 5.83 | (6.91) | 6.51 | 5.09 | (4.85) | (4.61) | (5.46) |
| 25-29 | (4.97) | 4.05 | (5.04) | (6.11) | 3.89 | (4.20) | (4.02) | (5.08) |
| 30-39 | (3.50) | (2.14) | (3.92) | -- | (2.74) | -- | (2.17) | -- |
| Regression Slope (b)[a] | -.24 | -.35 | -.21 | -.14 | -.27 | -.17 | -.23 | -.24 |

Notes: A small number of women reporting an age at first marriage of 40 or over are excluded. Results based on 10 or more cases but fewer than 50 are shown in parentheses; results based on fewer than 10 cases not shown.

[a]Based on data for age at first marriage expressed in single years of age. All slopes are statistically significant at the .001 level.

of women at the end of their reproductive span, especially those aged 40-49, had practiced contraception at some time. Nevertheless, the relationship between age at first marriage and children ever born actually strengthened among rural women 40-49, according to a comparison of the regression slopes indicated for these women in LS1 and NS. Although the regression slope decreased for women aged 50 and above, for these women the change in contraceptive practice was probably less dramatic than for their younger counterparts. It is also interesting to note that for both LS1 and NS, the regression slopes indicate a stronger correlation for women aged 40-49 than for women 50 and over, despite the fact that undoubtedly higher proportions of women 40-49 practiced contraception than the older women at the time of each of the surveys. Results for the urban women are also mixed in this regard. Among women 40-49, the correlation indicated by the regression slope is weaker in 1979 than in 1970 and is virtually unchanged for women 50 and over. Since Thailand is still in a state of transition with regard to the spread of birth control, the relationship between age at first marriage and cumulative fertility may indeed weaken in the future, but so far the evidence does not point clearly in this direction.

## MARITAL DISSOLUTION AND REMARRIAGE

Anthropologists typically have noted that divorce and remarriage are common in Thailand (Henderson, 1971:70). Divorces are even less frequently officially registered than are marriages. Instead, marital dissolution is typically the product of an informal process whereby one of the partners simply moves out. Information on marital histories has been collected in a number of demographic sample surveys. Apparently, this is a sensitive area of inquiry for at least some respondents, and interviewers have often reported that they have encountered respondents who seem reluctant to discuss their marital histories in detail. Thus there is probably a tendency to underestimate the extent of marital dissolution and remarriage based on such information. Nevertheless, as shown in Table 19, a substantial proportion of ever-married women report being married more than once when questioned about their marital histories. In each of the four surveys for which such data are available, the percentage married more than once is higher among rural women than among

TABLE 19 Percent Married More than Once by Age and Residence, Ever-Married Women: Thailand

| | Rural | | | | Urban | | | | Total | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Current Age | LS1 1969 | LS2 1972 | SOFT 1975 | NS 1979 | LS1 1970 | LS2 1973 | SOFT 1975 | NS 1979 | LS1 1969/70 | LS2 1972/73 | SOFT 1975 | NS 1979 |
| 15-24 | 4.8 | 3.1 | 5.4 | 2.9 | 2.1 | 1.7 | 5.6 | 0 | 4.4 | 2.9 | 5.5 | 3.2 |
| 25-34 | 10.1 | 9.0 | 10.2 | 5.1 | 4.8 | 4.3 | 4.6 | 2.4 | 7.6 | 8.2 | 9.4 | 4.6 |
| 35-44 | 12.3 | 11.8 | 19.2 | 10.9 | 7.6 | 5.6 | 5.5 | 3.6 | 11.5 | 10.8 | 17.3 | 9.5 |
| 45+[a] | 20.0 | 22.3 | 17.4 | 13.4 | 9.2 | 6.8 | 8.2 | 6.8 | 18.2 | 20.2 | 16.0 | 12.3 |

[a]Limited almost entirely to women aged 45-49 for SOFT.

urban women. Indeed, perhaps as many as one in five among rural women remarry at least once by the end of the reproductive age span. Data from the first round of the Longitudinal Study indicate that among urban women, remarriage is indicated more commonly by those living in provincial urban centers than by those in the capital, although the extent of the difference is less marked than between rural and urban categories overall (Prachuabmoh et al., 1972).

David Smith (1981) applied life table techniques to data from SOFT in order to estimate probabilities of marriage dissolution and remarriage. Because he found a much higher probability of divorce and separation among women who marry at particularly young ages and because such a high proportion of married women under age 25 at the time of interview were concentrated among women who marry at early ages, much of his analysis is limited to women aged 25-49. Table 20, which summarizes his results on marriage dissolutions, indicates that almost one out of five Thai women can expect dissolution within the first 15 years of marriage and close to one out of four within the first 20 years. During the early years of marriage, divorce and separation are far more important sources of marital disruption than widowhood, and even by the end of 20 years they together account for over 60 percent of total dissolution.

While marital disruption is frequent in Thailand, so is remarriage, particularly for women who are at the younger reproductive ages at the time of dissolution. As

TABLE 20 Cumulative Proportions of First Marriages Dissolved as Estimated by Life Table Analysis, by Source of Dissolution and Duration of Union, Ever-Married Women Aged 25-49, 1975: Thailand

| | | Source of Dissolution | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Duration of Union | Total Proportion Dissolved | Widowhood | Separation or Divorce |
| 2.5 years | .035 | .002 | .033 |
| 5 years | .094 | .014 | .081 |
| 10 years | .145 | .037 | .113 |
| 15 years | .190 | .064 | .135 |
| 20 years | .233 | .090 | .143 |

Source: Adapted from Smith (1981:Tables 3 and 4 [based on SOFT]).

is evident in Table 21, which summarizes Smith's life table analysis of the probability of remarriage, almost two thirds of women in the reproductive ages remarry within five years of marital disruption. Among women under age 25 at the time their first marriage ends, almost one third remarry within a year, well over half have remarried by two and one-half years, and almost four fifths by five years. Even among women aged 25-34 at the time of dissolution, half have remarried within five years. Only older women are likely to remain unmarried in large proportions. Hence high remarriage rates appear to counteract much of the potential loss of exposure to pregnancy risk that could result from the substantial rates of marital dissolution.

When a marriage is dissolved prior to the end of a woman's childbearing age span, it reduces exposure to childbearing to the extent a woman remains celibate during the period she is unmarried. In cases where the woman remarries, this reduced exposure is a result of the time spent between unions, while for women who do not remarry reduced exposure will extend from the time of the marital dissolution to the end of her reproductive span. Thus while age at first marriage affects the extent of reduced exposure to childbearing at the beginning of the reproductive span, marital dissolution influences exposure during the middle and later segments of this

TABLE 21 Cumulative Proportions of Women Remarrying Following Dissolution of First Marriage as Estimated by Life Table Analysis, by Age at Dissolution and Duration Since Dissolution, Ever-Married Women Aged 25-49, 1975: Thailand

| Years Since Dissolution | Total | Age at Dissolution | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Under 25 | 25-34 | 35+ |
| 1 year | .247 | .327 | .191 | .085 |
| 2.5 years | .453 | .587 | .344 | .186 |
| 5 years | .647 | .796 | .511 | a |

[a]Not given in source because sample size was under 50 cases.

Source: Adapted from Smith (1981:Table 8 [based on SOFT]).

span. Davis and Blake (1956) specified "the amount of reproductive period spent after or between unions" as one of their intermediate variables. The relationship of marital stability to fertility is complex, especially under conditions where deliberate fertility control is widespread (Thornton, 1978). For example, in cases where marital dissolution occurs due to marital discord, exposure may also be influenced by reduced coital frequency or abstinence during some period prior to the marriage break-up. Likewise, selection processes may complicate the observed relationship. For example, subfecundity or childlessness may encourage divorce or inhibit remarriage. Following marital disruption or remarriage, a woman's family size preferences may change. Thus the impact on exposure to pregnancy risks is but one of the several mechanisms that can potentially link marital disruption and fertility.

Based on the data coded from the marriage histories in LS2 and SOFT, it is possible to estimate the time spent between or following unions among ever-married women in the reproductive ages (see Table 22). As would be expected, the older the age group of women, the longer the average amount of time spent between or following unions. Although there is some disagreement in the results between the two surveys, especially for women toward the end of the reproductive span, both sets of

TABLE 22 Estimated Time in Years Spent Between or Following Unions Among Ever-Married Women Aged 15-49, by Age and Residence: Thailand

| | Rural | | Urban | | Total | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Age Group | LS2 1972 | SOFT 1975 | LS2 1973 | SOFT 1975 | LS2 1972/73 | SOFT 1975 |
| 15-19 | .06 | .10 | .00 | (.07) | .06 | .10 |
| 20-24 | .22 | .18 | .07 | .16 | .17 | .18 |
| 25-29 | .39 | .31 | .13 | .15 | .34 | .28 |
| 30-34 | .51 | .55 | .24 | .26 | .46 | .51 |
| 35-39 | .56 | 1.07 | .51 | .40 | .55 | .98 |
| 40-44 | .60 | 1.10 | 1.14 | 1.43 | .67 | 1.15 |
| 45-49 | 1.39 | 1.99 | 1.30 | 2.34 | 1.37 | 2.05 |

Notes: Results for LS2 exclude women with incomplete information in their marital histories; results from SOFT are based on the World Fertility Survey standard recode tape and thus include imputed information for women with incomplete marriage histories. Results in parentheses are based on fewer than 50 cases.

estimates suggest that the amount of exposure time to childbearing lost as a result of marital dissolution is not very large during the prime reproductive years and hence is unlikely to have a significant impact on fertility. It is only by the end of the reproductive span that the average amount of exposure time lost exceeds a year. The largest increments are generally evident between the last two age groups, suggesting that much of the exposure time lost for the 45 to 49-year-old women probably occurred toward the end of the childbearing years when their fertility rates would be low in any event.

The results indicate that the amount of time spent between or following unions is higher for rural women than for urban women at ages below 40. The reversal in this differential for women in their forties (except for women 45-49 in LS2) does not necessarily contradict the findings in Table 19, which consistently showed higher proportions married more than once among rural than urban women at all ages, since the time spent between or following unions depends on the particular combination of the extent of marital dissolution, the extent of remarriage, and the interval between dissolution and remarriage. Thus it is possible that marital dissolution is lower in urban areas but if remarriage is also lower or delayed longer, reduced exposure time could be higher. A more detailed analysis would be required before conclusions could be reached about the source of rural-urban differences in marital dissolution and the resulting reduced exposure time.

Based on his analysis of data from SOFT, Smith (1981:25) estimates that separation and divorce (holding widowhood constant) are responsible for a loss of only four and one-half months of marriage per capita during the 15 years between the prime fertility ages of 20 and 35. This amounts to only 3 percent of the time currently spent in marriage and thus is unlikely to have more than a marginal influence on fertility. Such an estimate, based only on loss of presumed exposure time, ignores possible complexities as referred to above in the relationship of marital stability to fertility, but is a useful starting point for assessing the extent of relationship.

The marital status structure of women in the reproductive years at any given point in time reflects the net impact of entry into marital unions, marital dissolution, and remarriage on the amount of time spent within marital

unions. Given the strong association between age and fecundity within the childbearing span, the implications of different marital structure distributions for fertility depend not only on the overall proportion in a given marital status, but also the age profile of women in different marital status categories. Coale (1969) has proposed an index of the proportion currently married among the reproductive ages that is weighted according to the age profile of natural fertility as represented by the age-specific marital fertility of the Hutterites. This idea has been extended to indexes of other marital statuses (Smith, 1978). The main advantages of these indexes are that they reflect not only the marriage pattern of women, but also the potential effect of their marital status on fertility. Thus, for example, the same proportion of women divorced toward the end of the reproductive span carries less weight than at earlier ages, when fecundity is presumed to be higher.

Table 23 shows a complete set of these marital status indexes for Thai women based on the 1970 census. Since the sum of the indexes is one, it is possible to determine the extent of reproductive potential (i.e., under conditions of natural fertility as embodied in the Hutterite marital fertility schedule) that is realized through marriage or lost through women being in various unmarried states (under the assumption that illegitimacy is negligible). Thus the results suggest that approximately 6 percent ($I_m$ = 0.646) of the reproductive potential of Thai women in 1970 was realized through the existing marriage pattern. Of the 35 percent of potential unrealized, fully 30 percent ($I_s$ = 0.302) was unrealized because of delayed or foregone entry into first marriage

TABLE 23 Marital Status Indexes for Women, by Residence, 1970: Thailand

| Region and Area | Proportion Married $I_m$ | Proportion Single $I_s$ | Proportion Divorced $I_d$ | Proportion Separated $I_p$ | Proportion Widowed $I_w$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Whole Kingdom | .646 | .302 | .011 | .020 | .021 |
| Urban | .523 | .452 | .009 | .021 | .015 |
| Rural | .669 | .278 | .011 | .019 | .022 |

Source: Adapted from Chamratrithirong (1980).

and only 5 percent of potential fertility (the sum of $I_d + I_p + I_w$) was unrealized because of marital dissolution.

Thus, although marital dissolution is relatively common in Thailand, its impact on potential reproduction is not very large because much marital dissolution occurs at ages where fecundity is considerably past its peak. Among the three forms of marital dissolution, divorce and separation together have greater effect on fertility than widowhood. The impact of all three forms of marital dissolution on potential reproduction is greater in rural areas than in urban areas. Nevertheless, a substantially higher proportion of reproductive potential is realized through marriage among rural women than among urban women, as indicated by the substantially higher rural values on the $I_m$ index. Thus the greater marital dissolution in rural areas is far more than compensated for by their earlier and somewhat more universal marriage pattern.

Several studies have examined the influence of marital dissolution on actual fertility in Thailand by determining differences in cumulative fertility by marital status. Goldstein et al. (1973) based their study on a special 1-percent sample of the 1960 census; Knodel and Prachuabmoh (1974) utilized data from the first round of the Longitudinal Study; Chamratrithirong (1980) analyzed the 2-percent sample of the 1970 census; and Smith (1981) examined data from SOFT. All studies show that at virtually all ages currently married women report higher mean numbers of children ever born than women previously but not currently married. Each study (except Smith's, which does not examine the issue) also finds that the cumulative fertility of widows exceeds that of divorced and separated women. For example, the 1960 census results indicate that at the national level, the age-standardized mean number of children ever born to widows is 78 percent as high as for currently married women, while for divorced and separated women combined it is only 57 percent as high.[4] Similarly, the 1970 census results indicate that nationally the age-standardized mean number of children ever born to widows is 80 percent as high as for currently married women; for separated women it is 67 percent as high; and for divorced women, 53 percent as high. Moreover, Knodel and Prachuabmoh, based on LS1, and Smith, based on SOFT, find that after controlling for age at first marriage, currently married women in their first marriage experienced higher cumulative fertility than remarried women.

As Smith (1981:27) points out, the difference in mean number of children ever born to ever-married women versus women in first marriages at the end of the reproductive ages can be taken as a crude estimate of the overall fertility cost of marital dissolutions. In his study, this difference amounts to 0.3 children for women aged 40-49. However, this may underestimate the impact, as it does not allow for the older age at first marriage of those still in their first marriage by the end of the childbearing ages. Based on data from LS1 and presented by Knodel and Prachuabmoh (1974:Table 7), we compared the mean number of children ever born to all ever-married women aged 45 and older with the mean for currently married women still in their first marriage, standardizing for age at first marriage for all ever-married women. The result was a difference of about half a birth. About 40 percent of ever-married women 45 and above in the LS1 sample were not currently in their first marriage. Thus if all ever-married women 45 and over experienced the same completed fertility as those still in their first marriage, completed family size would have been about 0.2 children higher (0.4 x 0.5 = 0.2) or about 3 percent more than observed. Hence on the micro-level, marital dissolution and disruption do influence cumulative fertility, but the overall impact on marital fertility levels is not great.

## TEMPORARY SEPARATION OF SPOUSES

In addition to the permanent dissolution of a marriage, temporary separation of spouses acts as a source of involuntary abstinence, thus reducing exposure to intercourse and thereby influencing fertility levels. In particular, Davis and Blake (1956) cite the separation of couples due to migration as examples of such a situation. While available evidence for Thailand does not permit a definitive judgment on the extent to which temporary separation of spouses exists, there are several indications that temporary separations are not infrequent. In the officially published census reports, currently married persons with spouses present are not distinguished from those with spouses absent, although persons who are separated (presumably on a permanent basis) are distinguished from currently married persons.

However, special tabulations based on the 1-percent sample of the 1960 census and analyzed by Goldstein et

al. (1973) do subdivide the currently married population into those with spouse present and those with spouse absent. As Goldstein et al. point out, the category "married with spouse absent" undoubtedly includes a variety of situations. In some cases, permanent separation may have occurred but appropriate legal recognition is lacking or one of the spouses is reluctant to admit to the actual situation. Most of this category, however, may be attributable to more genuine situations of temporary separation created by the movement of one partner while the other has remained behind, either waiting for the absent spouse to return or to join the absent spouse at a later date. In addition, there may be other situations in which the spouses are living apart because their employment demands it, particularly in Bangkok, where the wife may be employed as a domestic servant. Finally, some women in this category may be minor wives who share their husband with other wives at different residences. Although not legally sanctioned, polygyny is known to exist in Thailand and is more or less socially acceptable (Riley, 1972:116; Henderson, 1971:70). In general, observers note that polygyny is rare in rural villages but may be more common in urban areas (Blanchard, 1958:435). Frequently, polygyny involves separate residences for the multiple wives. The fact that approximately 50 percent more women reported themselves as married with spouse absent compared to men might be attributable to the institution of minor wives, since otherwise these numbers should be equal (Goldstein et al., 1973).

Based on tabulations of the special 1-percent sample of the 1960 census, it is possible to calculate the percent of currently married women who report their husbands absent (see Table 24, Panel A). For the total sample, approximately 3 percent of currently married women under age 50 indicated their husband was absent, but this figure masks substantial rural-urban differences. As many as one in five women in Bangkok (after age-standardization) reported an absent husband, reflecting perhaps a greater prevalence of minor wives and higher urban rates of employment of married women as domestics, as suggested above.

To assess the extent to which reproductive potential is reduced through temporary separation of spouses, the same approach used to calculate the marital status indexes presented in Table 23 can be applied to the data on currently married women with absent husbands. The results

## TABLE 24 Indicators of Temporary Separation of Spouses: Thailand

Part A. Percent of currently married women, aged 13-49, reporting husband absent, by age and residence, 1960

| Age Group | Bangkok | Other Urban | Rural | Total |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 13-19 | 50.0 | 24.5 | 8.6 | 10.4 |
| 20-24 | 33.6 | 13.0 | 3.6 | 5.2 |
| 25-29 | 21.7 | 7.4 | 2.1 | 3.4 |
| 30-34 | 17.1 | 6.0 | 1.3 | 2.2 |
| 34-39 | 11.0 | 3.6 | 1.4 | 1.9 |
| 40-44 | 10.1 | 4.2 | 1.4 | 2.0 |
| 45-49 | 15.3 | 7.7 | 1.4 | 2.5 |
| Age standardized total[a] | 20.4 | 7.9 | 2.2 | 3.3 |

Part B. Percent of currently married usual residents of households listed as temporarily absent, by age, sex, and residence, April-May 1979

| | Rural | | Urban | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Age Group | Husbands | Wives | Husbands | Wives |
| Under 30 | 8.3 | 3.5 | 4.3 | 3.4 |
| 30-49 | 2.5 | 0.9 | 3.2 | 1.2 |
| 50+ | 1.4 | 1.2 | 0.7 | 1.0 |
| Total[b] | 3.3 | 1.7 | 2.6 | 1.7 |

Part C. Percent of married residents who were absent at least once during 1976-79, by age and sex, six villages in northeast Thailand

| | Husbands | | Wives | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Age Group | Percent Absent | N | Percent Absent | N |
| Under 30 | 44.1 | 102 | 21.4 | 140 |
| 30-49 | 27.7 | 213 | 2.9 | 208 |
| 50+ | 4.5 | 112 | 1.2 | 84 |
| Total | 25.5 | 427 | 8.6 | 432 |

Note: Results in Part A based on a 1-percent sample of the 1960 census but exclude the province of Thonburi.

[a]The age distribution of currently married women in the total sample was used as the basis for age standarization.
[b]Includes a small number coded as age unknown.

Sources: Part A: Calculated from Goldstein et al. (1973:Table 2).
Part B: NS.
Part C: Calculated from Lightfoot and Fuller (1981:Table 5).

indicate that for the total sample from the 1960 census, the reproductive potential of all Thai women was reduced by only 0.2 percent, although for the Bangkok sample this figure rises to 2.7 percent, reflecting the much higher prevalence of absent husbands in the capital. Goldstein et al. (1973) have shown that cumulative fertility at virtually all ages is substantially lower for women whose husbands were absent than for those with husbands present. For example, the age-standardized number of children ever born in 1960 was about one fourth lower if the husband was absent.

Another source of information about the extent of temporary separation between spouses is the data collected on individual members of households as part of sample surveys. In the NS, information was recorded on the household schedule for all usual residents of each sample household with an indication of whether they were present or temporarily absent, with definitions of "usual resident" and "temporarily absent" apparently left up to the respondent. One possible problem with this type of information is that absent spouses may not be reported as usual members of the household, especially if they have been gone for a relatively long time.

The percentages of currently married men and women who were reported as temporarily absent are compared in Table 24, Panel B. Absences were more common for currently married males than for females in almost all age groups and for both the rural and urban portions of the sample. Unfortunately, from the existing tabulations it is not possible to know how many of the absent married women were married to the married men listed as absent. Undoubtedly some of the husbands and wives listed as absent from the household were spouses. Thus the proportion of husbands who were absent should represent a maximum estimate of the proportion of women who were separated from their spouses while the <u>difference</u> between the proportions of husbands and wives absent would represent a minimum estimate (since not all the wives who were absent were necessarily spouses of the married men who were absent). Thus for the rural sample, somewhere between 1.6 and 3.3 percent of currently married women in the household were temporarily separated from their husbands, while for the urban sample, somewhere between 0.9 and 2.6 percent were in that situation. Of course, if many absent spouses were not included as usual residents in the household by the respondents, even the maximum estimate may actually underestimate the extent of temporary separation.

The figures provided in Panel B suggest that there might be greater separation of spouses in rural than in urban areas, contrary to the results presented in Panel A. The approaches, however, are quite different and are by no means directly comparable. The results in Panel B refer only to spouses who are considered permanent residents of the household interviewed. If either a married woman or her husband or both are not considered to be usual residents of the household, their temporary separation would not be reflected. For example, if a woman is employed as a domestic servant and is separated from her husband, she would not report her husband as a usual resident of the household in which she is working or may indeed not be reported herself as a usual resident of that household, and thus their separation would not be reflected in the results in Panel B. For this reason, the actual proportion of women who have absent husbands in the overall population, and particularly the urban population, may be considerably higher than indicated through this approach.

Probably the single most important source of absences among rural spouses is circular migration, typically associated with temporary employment in some other location, often in an urban area. One recent study of circular migration in six villages in northeast Thailand by Lightfoot and Fuller (1981) provides additional information relevant to assessing the extent of temporary separation of spouses. Their study indicates that there is an important although not overwhelming seasonal component to circular migration, with the highest rates of absence occurring after the rice harvest and prior to the following planting season, although they point out that the temporal pattern of the migration is quite complex and not strictly related to the farming calendar. In this connection, it is worth noting that both the 1960 census and NS, the sources on which Panels A and B of Table 24 are based, took place during that part of the year when temporary absences would be expected to be highest.

While much temporary migration is among single persons and thus not relevant to the separation of spouses, data presented by Lightfoot and Fuller permit calculation of the percentage of married residents who were absent at least once during the three-year period under study. By comparing the results for men and women, some idea of the extent to which spouses were separated can be gained. As indicated in Panel C of Table 24, a far higher percentage

of married men have been absent during the three-year period than married women, thus suggesting at least some period of temporary separation. Rates of absences are inversely related to age, with far fewer absences indicated for men and women at age 50 and over. The data presented in their paper do not permit direct linking of husbands and wives, so we do not know what proportion of women in reproductive ages were married to men aged 50 or above who show the lower rates of absences. Judging from the fact that the difference between ages of spouses is typically not large in Thailand, it seems safe to assume that the vast majority of wives under 50 were married to husbands who were also under 50 and thus that the proportion of reproductive-age married women whose husbands were away at least once during the three-year period is quite substantial. Note should be taken, however, that respondents were classified according to marital status at the time of the survey and thus for those persons who married within the three-year reference period, some of the absences may have occurred while they were still single. Also, absences were liberally defined as any overnight absence, thereby maximizing the proportion who were absent at least once. Data on duration of absence indicate that many absences involved considerably longer stays than a single night. For example, 57 percent of all absences were a result of trips to Bangkok, and almost 70 percent of these visits lasted at least a month, with approximately 40 percent lasting more than three months at any one stretch. Moreover, a number of persons experienced more than one absence during the three-year period. Finally, it should be noted that the six villages under study were in a province characterized by unusually high migration rates.

In brief, the assorted information about temporary separation of spouses was sufficient to suggest that this factor may play a nonnegligible role in influencing Thai fertility levels, although it is not likely to be a dominant factor except perhaps under some special local circumstances.

NOTES

[1]While such a comparison eliminates the bias mentioned, it does not eliminate problems that could arise from differential reporting accuracy by age. Older married women would be recalling their age at an event

further in the past than younger married women and thus may be more prone to recall error, including digit preference. Although an association between age and extent of recall error does not automatically bias results, it potentially could. Other problems with this approach are discussed in Trussell (1980:12).

[2]According to a difference of means test (based on a simple random sample assumption), the differences between these two cohorts in NS and AFPH are not significant at the .05 level, while results for CPS2 are significant at the .001 level.

[3]The technique for calculating the singulate mean age at marriage based on the two censuses is also described in Chamratrithirong (1976) and United Nations (1982).

[4]For the purpose of this comparison, we calculated the age-standardized number of children ever born for all currently married women from figures given for currently married women with spouse present and with spouse absent separately in Goldstein et al. (1973). We simply weighted the results for each of the two categories in proportion to their relative numbers.

# CHAPTER 4

## PROXIMATE DETERMINANTS 2: THE CHILDBEARING SPAN AND NATURAL MARITAL FERTILITY FACTORS

Even in the absence of deliberate attempts at birth control, marital fertility of different populations can vary substantially. Bongaarts (1978) has grouped together a number of intermediate variables that can affect the level of marital fertility other than the practice of contraception and abortion and has labeled them "natural marital fertility" factors. In this chapter, we review three of those factors for Thailand: primary sterility, coital frequency, and the postpartum nonsusceptible period. We start out, however, with a review of evidence about the length of the biological childbearing span. This is not strictly a determinant of marital fertility per se since marriage and hence marital fertility typically begin sometime after the onset of menarche. Nevertheless, the topic fits into the general theme of this chapter. Moreover, the end of the childbearing span directly influences marital fertility at older ages and even the age of marriage may be loosely linked to the age at which reproductive capacity begins.

### THE CHILDBEARING SPAN: AGES AT MENARCHE, MENOPAUSE, AND LAST BIRTH

The reproductive spans of men and women are ultimately limited by biology. Since the ages at which women are capable of reproducing generally fall within a narrower and more clearly defined range, most research in Thailand and elsewhere has focused on the limits of the female reproductive span. The onset of menarche and menopause clearly represent the outside limits of a woman's potential reproductive years. In actuality, the physiological ability to bear a live birth typically

begins sometime after menarche, as reflected in the well-known concept of "adolescent sterility" (or more accurately, adolescent subfecundity). Likewise, the ability to bear a live birth typically ends sometime before the onset of menopause (Gray, 1976, 1979a). As difficult as it is to accurately measure the average age of menarche and menopause in a population, it is all the more difficult to measure the average age at which the ability to reproduce actually begins and ends. The age of mother at last birth among women past the end of the childbearing span can give us an indication of the latter in predominantly natural fertility populations.

There are several studies that provide some indication of the age of menarche in Thailand. The results are summarized in Table 25. None of the studies are based on a representative national cross-section of the Thai population but rather on regional or specialized samples. Comparisons across studies are further limited by the necessity to impose different restrictions on the cases included in the calculations in order to ensure comparability <u>within</u> each study when internal comparisons are possible. A particular problem when evaluating results of studies on retrospectively reported ages at menarche is the possibility that the results suffer from "censorship" bias when some of the respondents are younger than the latest age at which menarche can occur. The problem is similar to that discussed in connection with respect to age at first marriage in Chapter 3. Only women who have already experienced menarche can report on an age at menarche, and thus responses for women who experience menarche at early ages are disproportionately represented among women who are below the latest age at which menarche occurs. The result of such censorship is to bias the estimated age at menarche downward.

Presumably the onset of menarche was left to be defined by the respondent, and responses were given directly in terms of age. Since Thais appear as likely to report ages in terms of age at next birthday as they are to report age at prior birthday, the average age at menarche of women reporting age x is probably exactly x rather than x plus one half year, as would be the case if they were reporting their age at prior birthday (see Chapter 2, footnote 4). Because of this tendency for Thais to round their age to the nearest birthday, no adjustment has been made for converting stated age to exact age when calculating the mean and median ages at menarche.

TABLE 25 Reported Age at Menarche from Selected Studies: Thailand

| Date of Study | Source | Reference Population | Age at Menarche: Mean | Age at Menarche: Median | Number of Cases |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1977 | A | Currently married women 15-49 in northeast | 15.8 | -- | 7,850 |
| 1977-78 | B | Once-married women 15-54 in Chiang Mai Valley, northern Thailand | 15.8 | -- | ca. 305 |
| 1952-54 | C | Reproductive-aged women in village near Bangkok | 15.3 | 14.7 | 94 |
| 1978-79 | D | Ever-married women 20-44 | | | |
| | | Bangkok general sample | 14.1 | 14.6 | 497[a] |
| | | with 0-4 years of school | 14.3 | 14.9 | 334 |
| | | with 5+ years of school | 13.4 | 13.9 | 160 |
| | | Bangkok slum sample | 14.2 | 14.7 | 461[a] |
| | | with 0-4 years of school | 14.2 | 14.7 | 427 |
| | | with 5+ years of school | 14.4 | 15.1 | 33 |
| | | Central Thai village, relatively developed | 14.2 | 14.6 | 612[a] |
| | | with 0-4 years of school | 14.1 | 14.6 | 527 |
| | | with 5+ years of school | 14.1 | 14.5 | 81 |
| 1979 | E | Bangkok massage girls | 14.4 | 15.0 | 992 |
| 1943-64 | F | Bangkok medical students | 13.1 | 13.6 | 331 |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1978 | G | Single women 15-20 who experienced menarche under age 15 | | | |
| | | Bangkok school girls | 12.5 | 12.9 | 169 |
| | | Bangkok factory workers | 13.2 | 13.5 | 84 |
| | | northeast school girls | 12.8 | 13.2 | 157 |
| | | northeast factory workers | 13.2 | 13.5 | 60 |
| ? | H | Bangkok hospital outpatients and others | | | |
| | | born 1923-27 | 15.1 | -- | -- |
| | | born 1953-57 | 13.6 | -- | -- |

Note: In some cases means or medians were calculated or recalculated based on data presented in source rather than being directly taken from source.

[a]Includes some women of unknown educational attainment.

Sources:
A Porapakkham and Bennet (1978:78).
B Cochrane and Nandwani (1981:Table 2).
C Hauck (1956:30).
D Chamratrithirong (1982).
E Muangman and Nanta (1980:47).
F Bhumipadhi (1965:521).
G Muangman (1979:55)
H Trisiripisarn et al. (1974:92).

The first study reported is based on the FPHH survey and involves by far the largest number of respondents. Moreover, it is representative of the widest population of all the studies shown, since the sample was intended to be more or less representative of the entire northeastern region. The mean reported age of menarche, close to 16, is relatively late compared to the 12 to 13 years typical of industrialized countries and of several developing countries with presumed high standards of health, such as Cuba (Gray, 1979b).

This late age at menarche is confirmed by the second set of results, which come from another recent study based on a much smaller sample of women from 22 villages in the Chiang Mai Valley in northern Thailand. In both the FPHH and the Chiang Mai samples the proportions of women who were under age 20 were quite small--5 percent and 3 percent, respectively--so the results suffer very little from the censorship bias referred to above. Moreover, since censorship biases the estimates toward a younger age, it cannot help explain the rather late mean ages of menarche indicated. The Chiang Mai Valley Study examines the relationship between age at menarche and age at marriage. Interestingly, the results show a significant positive association between the two in a multivariate regression analysis (Cochrane and Nandwani, 1981).

A slightly younger mean age of menarche is indicated in the third set of results, based on a small study conducted in the early 1950s in a village about 20 miles from Bangkok. Again, any censorship bias should be small since women within the entire reproductive span were interviewed, although insufficient detail is provided to judge what proportion were still in adolescent ages. The study also involved clinical examinations and the investigator noted that none of the girls between ages 12 and 14 examined had passed menarche (Hauck, 1956).

The fourth set of results (D in Table 25) is based on the Asian Marriage Survey (AMS) and refers to the three subsamples included: a representative sample of ever-married women in the reproductive ages in Bangkok generally, in a slum area of Bangkok, and in a relatively developed village in the central plains. Since virtually all women reported experiencing menarche prior to age 20, calculations were based on women aged 20 through age 44, the age of the oldest woman included in the sample. Both the median and mean age at menarche are very similar across all three subsamples, falling between 14 and 15 with the mean approximately a half year higher than the

median. These figures are younger than those for the northeastern and Chiang Mai samples but agree rather closely with the following set of results from a study of Bangkok massage girls. While no age restrictions were imposed on the sample of massage girls, only 15 percent were under age 20 and undoubtedly most of these were in their late teens (Muangman and Nanta, 1980).

There is considerable evidence suggesting an inverse association between nutritional status and the age at menarche (Gray, 1982). This might account for the somewhat later age at menarche indicated for Thailand in comparison to the more industrialized countries. Possibly the later ages at menarche reported for the northeastern region, the poorest in the country, and the Chiang Mai villages, compared to the AMS subsamples can also be interpreted in this way. Other evidence from Thailand indicates an inverse association between socioeconomic status and average age at menarche, which could be attributable to nutritional or health differences. Data from the AMS subsamples are shown subdivided by educational attainment of respondents. Presumably the better educated women are on average from better backgrounds and were probably better nourished in their youth. In the general Bangkok sample, women with five-plus years of schooling reported experiencing the onset of menarche approximately one year earlier than those with less schooling. The same difference does not show up for the other two subsamples, but this may partially reflect the smaller sample sizes of better educated women in the Bangkok slum and the semi-rural areas.[1]

The lower age at menarche found for female medical students, the next set of results shown, compared to the massage girls or the three subsamples in the AMS is also suggestive of the influence of nutrition and health, since the medical students surely come from relatively higher socioeconomic backgrounds. Some of the difference, however, could be due to differences in the way age is stated (there may be less rounding of age among the university-educated population) and possibly to censorship of the sample if not all of the students had yet experienced the onset of menarche. No information on this latter point was provided in the published results of the study.

The results based on nonrepresentative samples of schoolgirls and adolescent factory workers in Bangkok and a provincial town and peri-urban area in the northeast region (set G) also point to an inverse association with

socioeconomic background. Since the age distributions of the samples of schoolgirls and factory workers were quite different, it was necessary to restrict calculations to girls 15 or over who had experienced menarche prior to age 15 to avoid differential truncation biases. Because of these restrictions, the results show very early ages at menarche and cannot be compared directly with results from other studies. The internal comparisons, however, are of interest and indicate an earlier age at menarche for the schoolgirls than for factory workers. Since the schoolgirls came from higher socioeconomic backgrounds (Muangman, 1979), this finding is consistent with the suggestion that nutritional status is exerting an influence on the onset of menarche.

There is substantial evidence that the age at menarche in Western societies has declined by about three years since the end of the last century (Bongaarts, 1980a; Wyshak and Frisch, 1982; see, however, Bullough, 1981). It is generally agreed that this decline is associated with an improvement in diet and nutritional status. The final set of results in Table 26 come from a study of a nonrandom sample including a substantial number of outpatients from a Bangkok hospital, which also suggests a decline in the age at menarche. According to this study, the mean age at menarche fell from just over 15 for women born in 1923-27 to less than 14 for women born in 1953-57. These results, however, must be viewed with considerable caution. Only a preliminary report of the study with few details has ever been published. Since it seems likely, judging from the date of the study, that not all members of the younger cohort would have

TABLE 26 Mean Age at Menarche by Age and Residence, Currently Married Women Aged 20-44: Thailand

| Age Group | Total | | Bangkok General | | Bangkok Slums | | Semi-Rural Area | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Mean | N | Mean | N | Mean | N | Mean | N |
| 20-24 | 14.2 | 283 | 14.2 | 65 | 14.3 | 115 | 14.1 | 103 |
| 25-29 | 14.6 | 390 | 14.4 | 140 | 14.8 | 113 | 14.6 | 137 |
| 30-34 | 14.7 | 310 | 14.5 | 109 | 14.8 | 79 | 14.8 | 122 |
| 35-39 | 14.7 | 292 | 14.8 | 92 | 14.9 | 77 | 14.6 | 123 |
| 40-44 | 14.9 | 294 | 14.9 | 91 | 15.0 | 77 | 14.8 | 126 |

Source: Chamratrithirong (1982).

experienced menarche at the time the data were collected, the lower age at menarche for the 1953-57 cohort may result from basing the calculations on a censored sample. In addition, the extent and direction of recall error might differ among younger and older women as might also the composition of the different cohorts with respect to other characteristics associated with the onset of menarche.[2]

Data from the AMS can be examined for evidence of trends by comparing the mean age at menarche for different age cohorts. To avoid any bias due to censorship, the analysis was restricted to women aged 20 or over. The results, shown in Table 26, also suggest that the mean age at menarche has declined in Thailand in recent years. For the combined set of three subsamples, an almost uninterrupted fall from 14.9 to 14.2 years of age is indicated for successively younger age cohorts. The median age at menarche (not shown) also declines steadily from cohort to cohort, from 14.3 to 13.8. Indeed, similar trends are evident for each of the subsamples, with only minor irregularities apparent. In each subsample, as in the total sample, the mean age at menarche decreases by 0.7 years between the oldest and youngest age group. A similar tabulation of mean age at menarche by current age from the Chiang Mai Valley Study also indicates a rise with age and thus is consistent with a decline over the last generation. Women aged 45-54 reported a mean age at menarche just over 16, while women 20-24 reported menarche occurring about a year earlier (Cochrane and Nandwani, 1981).

The results from the AMS and the Chiang Mai Valley Study indicating a decline in age at menarche should be viewed with caution, since they are based on retrospective reports and are subject to recall error, which might well differ in extent and direction for different age groups. Moreover, they refer to specialized samples which cannot be generalized to the national population without serious reservations. Nevertheless, they are at least suggestive of a decreasing age at menarche in Thailand.

Information on the age at menopause in Thailand is scarcer than that on age at menarche. The study based in part on Bangkok hospital outpatients (referred to above and in Table 25) is the only one we have been able to locate purporting to have such data. The results indicate an increase in the mean age at menopause from 44.7 for women born in 1898-1903 to 48.1 for women born

in 1913-1917 (Trisiripisarn et al., 1974). This is a striking increase over such a short period of time, but due to lack of details in the preliminary report, it is difficult to assess the reliability or validity of these findings. According to the report, the results for both the age-at-menarche and the age-at-menopause data are based on a total of 1,000 cases. It is not clear, however, how many women served as the basis for the results for each cohort.

Gray (1979a, 1979b) has summarized results from a number of studies on the age at menopause in different countries. He finds considerable consistency in the mean age at menopause among recent studies of Caucasian women, with results falling in the narrow range of 48.7 to 49.8. However, studies for populations in developing countries indicate median ages at menopause as low as 44 in the Punjab in 1966 and 43.6 among malnourished women in New Guinea in 1973. Thus the figures provided by the Thai study fall within the ranges found in other studies, with the higher estimate for the more recent cohort approaching the mean age at menopause in Western countries.

Although the FPHH survey of northeastern women could not collect data on actual ages at menopause, since the sample was largely premenopausal, it did include a question about the age at which the respondent expected a normal woman to have menopause. The average age mentioned was 48.8, indicating that the women do not think menopause is particularly early in Thailand (Porapakkham and Bennett, 1978:74).

While menopause marks the termination of a woman's reproductive life, the onset of secondary sterility and thus the effective end of a woman's ability to reproduce occurs somewhat earlier. A variety of studies in populations thought to be characterized by natural fertility suggest that the mean age at last birth, a more meaningful measure of the end of a woman's fertile period, is close to 40 (Bongaarts, 1980a; van de Walle and Knodel, 1980). In populations where a significant amount of birth control is practiced, the average age at last birth can no longer be accepted as an indication of the age at which women lose the ability to bear children. Even in some populations where there is an absence of deliberate behavior to limit family size, social customs might dictate terminal abstinence associated with attainment of grandmaternal or mother-in-law status (Knodel, 1982). In such circumstances, the mean age at last birth would reflect the socially defined, if not physiologically defined, end of reproductive ability.

TABLE 27 Attitudes Regarding When Women Should Cease Sexual Relations as Reported by Ever-Married Women Aged 15-44: Thailand

| | | Bangkok General | Bangkok Slum | Semi-Rural |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Percent indicating women should cease sex by menopause | | 69.5 | 83.4 | 81.6 |
| | N | 514 | 507 | 657 |
| Percent indicating women should cease sex relations prior to age[a]: | | | | |
| | 40 | 3.8 | 2.7 | 3.6 |
| | 45 | 27.8 | 31.3 | 33.1 |
| | 50 | 44.8 | 50.2 | 43.0 |
| | N | 446 | 438 | 589 |

[a]Excluding respondents coded as don't know, no answer, or depends.

Source: Chamratrithirong (1982).

For Thailand, there is a notable absence of references to the practice of terminal abstinence associated with becoming a grandmother or mother-in-law, and thus we suspect no such social custom operates in Thailand. The AMS, however, included several questions on attitudes toward when women should cease sexual relations. Ever-married women in their reproductive ages were asked specifically whether a woman should cease having sex relations by the onset of menopause as well as the age at which they thought a woman should cease sex relations. Results are presented in Table 27. In all three subsamples, the large majority of respondents agreed that the woman should cease sex relations by menopause, although the proportion in the general Bangkok sample was considerably lower than in either the Bangkok slum or the semi-rural area. When asked at what age women should cease having sexual relations, over 40 percent replied age 50, and almost as many replied either age 40 or 45, most likely reflecting the age at which they assumed a woman reaches menopause. Given that very few women feel that sex relations should stop before age 40 or even before age 45, terminal abstinence would seem to exert little influence on reproductive behavior in Thailand. Such a conclusion must be stated cautiously, however, since these data are attitudinal and may not reflect actual practice of terminal abstinence. It would be

useful to attain behavioral data on the age at which women cease sex relations as well as the extent to which this is linked to menopause or to their own children starting families.

Since very little contraception was practiced among married women at the time of the first round of the Longitudinal Study and only two of the more than 300 women aged 45 or older indicated they had ever practiced contraception, it is possible to treat these women as if they came from a natural fertility population. The average age at which these women bore their last child should therefore reflect the effective end of the child-bearing span as determined by fecundity in combination with coital frequency (since some couples will undoubtedly be abstinent even in the absence of any normative proscription on intercourse associated with age or stage of family cycle). Due to the coding procedures followed, women whose last birth occurred after age 45 must be excluded from the analysis. This leads to a slight downward bias in the age of mother at last birth compared to what the results would be if all women were included. By comparing successive age groups above age 45, it is possible to determine whether there appears to be a trend over time in the average age at last birth. Results are presented in Table 28 for women aged 45 and above. Some widowed, divorced, or separated women experienced marital dissolutions prior to age 45, potentially biasing down-

TABLE 28 Age of Mother at Last Birth Prior to Age 45, Among Rural Currently Married and Ever-Married Women, Aged 45 and Above, Whose Last Birth Occurred Prior to Age 45: Thailand

| Age at Survey | Currently Married Women | | | Ever-Married Women | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Mean | Median | N | Mean | Median | N |
| 45-49 | 38.0 | 39.4 | 112 | 37.6 | 38.7 | 139 |
| 50-54 | 37.8 | 38.3 | 67 | 37.5 | 37.2 | 80 |
| 55-59 | 38.6 | 39.5 | 37 | 38.3 | 39.1 | 62 |
| 60-64 | 36.8 | 40.0 | 15 | 37.0 | 39.5 | 22 |
| 65+ | 37.9 | 40.5 | 14 | 38.3 | 40.5 | 20 |
| All women 45+ | 38.0 | 39.1 | 245 | 37.7 | 38.8 | 323 |

Source: LS1.

ward the age at last birth for ever-married women. Since this appears to be a minor problem, however, and the number of cases, particularly for women at older ages, is so small, results for ever-married women are shown along with those for currently married women. Given the downward bias due to the omission of women whose last birth occurred after age 45, the overall results indicate an age of mother at last birth reasonably close to that in other natural fertility populations. Of greater interest is the lack of any apparent trend over time in the age of mother at last birth, although the small number of cases, particularly at older ages, and the somewhat different pattern of fluctuations based on the mean and median preclude any definitive conclusions in this respect.

## PRIMARY STERILITY

In any population, at least a small proportion of couples are unable to bear any children because of physiological impairment of either or both of the spouses. If we assume that voluntary childlessness is negligible in Thailand, then the extent of primary sterility (the inability to bear any children) can be approximated by the proportion of ever-married women who remained childless to the end of the reproductive age span. The results presented in Table 29 indicate primary sterility in Thailand is quite low in any absolute sense. Among ever-married women aged 45 or above, less than 4 percent in the 1960 census and only about 2 percent in the 1970 census reported never having had a live birth. This indicator should be taken only as a rough estimate of primary sterility and could either overstate or understate the true level, since biases are operating in both directions. For example, to the extent some couples deliberately remain childless, we would be overestimating the extent of biological sterility. In addition, while the slight rise with age in the percent childless apparent in both the 1960 and 1970 censuses might reflect a decline over time in primary sterility, it could also reflect an increased tendency for older women to underreport births and, especially if all their children died, to report no children ever born, hence biasing the estimate of childlessness upward. Moreover, the percent childless only reflects primary sterility as existing at the time a woman first begins cohabiting, leaving open the question of whether the woman or her husband were previously fecund.

TABLE 29 Percent Childless and Percent with Unknown Number of Children Ever Born Among Ever-Married Women Over Age 45, by Age: Thailand

| | 1960 Census | | 1970 Census | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Age | Percent Childless[a] | Percent Unknown | Percent Childless[a] | Percent Unknown |
| 45-49 | 3.2 | 3.5 | 1.7 | 3.6 |
| 50-54 | 3.5 | 3.9 | 1.8 | 4.1 |
| 55-59 | 3.8 | 4.5 | 2.0 | 4.6 |
| 60-64 | 4.2 | 5.6 | 2.5 | |
| 65-69 | 4.2 | 6.8 | 2.5 | 7.2 |
| 70+ | 4.0 | 8.9 | 2.5 | |
| 45+ | 3.7 | 5.0 | 2.1 | 5.2 |

[a]Excluding from the denominator women with unknown number of children ever born.

Other influences could result in this measure understating the level of primary sterility. There is reason to suspect that a disproportionate number of women classified as having an unknown number of children ever born are in fact childless. This situation could arise if there were a tendency for enumerators to leave a blank space or enter only a dash on the census questionnaire instead of entering a zero for women who stated they had no children. In data processing, these responses are likely to be treated as indicating an unknown number of children. Such a pattern has been noted for a number of censuses (El-Badry, 1969) as well as for the 1960 Thai census (Goldstein, 1970:327-338). Thus some proportion of the percent of women listed as having an unknown number of children ever born should be included with the percentage childless. Since the increase in this percentage after age 45 probably reflects a genuine increase in the proportion of women who do not remember the number of live births they had, the percent with an unknown number of children ever born among women 45-49 represents the maximum extent of misclassification. Indeed, it would undoubtedly be an exaggeration to assume that all of these women were actually childless. However, even if they were, the extent of primary sterility would still not be extremely high. In this connection, it is interesting to note that the proportion childless among

the more than 400 ever-married women aged 45 and above included in the rural round of LS1 was only 3.2 percent (and only 2.3 percent among the 171 ever-married women aged 45-49, for whom memory error is probably less). It seems much less likely that the Longitudinal Study would have misclassified many childless women as having an unknown number of children ever born, since detailed pregnancy histories were called for and the very few cases of women with an unknown number of children ever born were largely limited to older women, for whom recall problems seem more plausible.

Despite the variety of biases operating on the percent childless as a measure of primary sterility, we believe it is safe to conclude that primary sterility in Thailand has been low and not far from the 2- to 3-percent level. We are much more hesitant to draw conclusions about trends in primary sterility from the existing data other than to mention that to the extent the data suggest a trend, it is toward a decline. It is possible, however, that an increase in primary sterility could occur in the future as a result of an increase in venereal disease, especially in urban areas.

There is considerable concern in Thailand about a potential increase in the incidence of both syphilis and gonorrhea, since statistics indicate sharp increases in the reported cases treated, rising fairly steadily from 10 per 100,000 population in 1950 to 24 in 1975-77 for new cases of early syphilis, and from 9 per 100,000 in 1950 to 647 in 1975-77 for gonorrhea (Limanonda and Suwannodom, 1979). Of relevance for primary (or secondary) sterility, of course, is the overall prevalence of venereal disease, not just the incidence of treated cases, and the extent to which cases receive early treatment. Such statistics are not available. Apparently in the early 1930s, venereal disease was rare. According to Zimmerman (1931:229-300), careful physical examination by government physicians of about 10,000 people located in groups of 250 in 40 representative areas revealed virtually no venereal disease outside the large market places or port cities. The sharp rise in treated cases, especially for gonorrhea, would seem to point to some increase in general prevalence. Pathological levels of primary sterility associated with venereal disease are known to characterize some parts of tropical Africa as well as some New Guinean populations and to exert an important influence on their fertility (Gray, 1982; Knodel, 1982). Thus the potential for an increase from

the low levels of primary sterility currently characterizing Thailand appears real if the alleged increase in venereal disease really exists and continues.

## COITAL FREQUENCY

One of the proximate variables for which reliable and representative information is rarely available for most populations is coital frequency (Nag, 1982). Table 30 summarizes results of four studies that provide information on this variable for Thailand. Three of the four

TABLE 30 Reported Weekly Coital Frequency from Selected Studies: Thailand

Part A. Among currently married respondents in a national rural sample, by age and sex, 1975

| Weekly Frequency | As Reported by Married Male Respondents | | | As Reported by Married Female Respondents | | | Both Sexes |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 15-34 | 35+ | Total | 15-29 | 30-44 | Total | |
| 3+ | 45.9 | 13.7 | 29.0 | 41.0 | 15.1 | 25.6 | 27.9 |
| 2 | 23.3 | 15.9 | 19.3 | 29.3 | 19.8 | 23.5 | 20.7 |
| 1 | 22.6 | 26.2 | 24.4 | 18.6 | 24.1 | 21.4 | 23.4 |
| Less than 1 | 8.3 | 44.3 | 27.3 | 11.2 | 40.9 | 29.4 | 28.0 |
| Total Percent | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Mean | 2.6 | 1.3 | 1.9 | 2.5 | 1.4 | 1.9 | 1.9 |
| Median | 1.8 | 0.6 | 1.0 | 1.7 | 0.7 | 1.0 | 1.0 |
| N[a] | 412 | 454 | 869 | 188 | 232 | 429 | 1,298 |

Part B. Among male clients at family planning clinics of Chulalongkorn Hospital, Bangkok, by age and vasectomy status, 1976-78

| Weekly Frequency | Vasectomized Men | | | | Nonvasectomized Men | | | | All Men |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 15-29 | 30-39 | 40+ | Total | 15-29 | 30-39 | 40+ | Total | |
| 5+ | 18.0 | 14.3 | 11.7 | 14.2 | 9.0 | 9.4 | 6.2 | 8.8 | 11.5 |
| 3-4 | 34.4 | 33.2 | 38.3 | 34.6 | 43.0 | 33.3 | 27.7 | 34.8 | 34.7 |
| 1-2 | 44.3 | 47.1 | 42.6 | 45.5 | 42.0 | 51.7 | 50.8 | 49.1 | 47.3 |
| Less than 1 | 3.3 | 5.5 | 7.4 | 5.6 | 6.0 | 5.6 | 15.4 | 7.3 | 6.4 |
| Total percent | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Mean | 3.0 | 2.8 | 2.7 | 2.8 | 2.7 | 2.5 | 2.2 | 2.5 | 2.6 |
| Median | 1.6 | 1.4 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.6 | 1.4 | 1.2 | 1.4 | 1.4 |
| N | 61 | 238 | 94 | 393 | 100 | 234 | 65 | 399 | 792 |

studies are based on quite specialized samples and, as discussed below, the results appear to be quite sensitive to the type of question asked.

The most representative sample for which coital frequency data are available comes from the 1975 Westinghouse Rural Population Survey, which included rural

TABLE 30 (continued)

Part C. Among men vasectomized at Ramathibodi Hospital, Bangkok, prior to and subsequent to the operation, 1974-76

| | Pre-Operative | Post-Operative |
|---|---|---|
| Mean | 2.1 | 2.5 |
| Median | 1.8 | 1.8 |
| N | 463 | 464 |

Part D. Among currently married women aged 15-44, in a Bangkok suburb by contraceptive practice status, 1967-69

| Frequency in Week Prior to Interview | Practicing Contraception | Not Practicing Contraception | Total |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4+ | 6.1 | 7.0 | 6.7 |
| 3 | 10.7 | 9.6 | 10.1 |
| 2 | 17.4 | 14.4 | 15.5 |
| 1 | 35.7 | 30.7 | 32.6 |
| 0 | 30.1 | 38.2 | 35.6 |
| Total percent | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Mean | 1.3 | 1.3 | 1.3 |
| Median | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.5 |
| N | 345 | 570 | 915 |

Notes: Part A: Respondents coded "no answer" are excluded. Mean and median calculated on assumption that the "less than 1" category equals 0.5 and "3+" category equals 4.0.

Part B: Respondents with unknown coital frequency are excluded. Mean and median are calculated on assumption that the "less than 1" category equals 0.5, the "1-2" category equals 1.5, the "3-4" category equals 3.5, and the "5+" category equals 6.0.

Part C: Respondents coded unknown were excluded. The mean and median were calculated by dividing the monthly mean and median by 4.3.

Part D: Respondents with unknown coital frequency are excluded. Mean is based on disaggregated frequencies in "4+" category.

[a]Figures refer to weighted Ns and thus do not sum exactly to total.

Sources: Part A: WRPS (Deemar Company, Ltd. [1975, Vol. 2:Table 15]).
Part B: Popuang (1980:Tables 18 and 19).
Part C: Sethaput and Leoprapai (1977:Table 25).
Part D: Muangman et al. (1973).

respondents in all four major regions. Since this survey included both men and women, it is possible to examine responses by sex of respondent. The results do not support the idea that men exaggerate and women minimize coital frequency, as is sometimes expected. As indicated in Panel A, married men and women reported remarkably similar frequencies of intercourse. Both sexes indicated a mean weekly frequency of 1.9 times and a median of once a week. As would be expected, coital frequency is inversely related to age, with substantial differences indicated between the younger and older portions of the sample.

A less striking though similarly inverse relationship with age is indicated in Panel B based on a specialized study comparing coital frequency among vasectomized and nonvasectomized men receiving services through a Bangkok hospital. The overall coital frequency, whether measured by mean or median, is somewhat higher for both the vasectomized and nonvasectomized men in this study than was indicated by the results for the rural sample in Panel A. Likewise, results from a different study of men receiving vasectomies at another Bangkok hospital, presented in Panel C, indicate that both pre-operative and post-operative rates of coital frequency are also somewhat higher than for the rural sample. In both of these Bangkok studies, the reported mean coital frequency was between two and three times a week and the median between one and two times a week. It is not clear in these studies whether men were reporting only coital frequency with their wives or also included sexual relations with prostitutes. This might account for the difference between the coital frequency rates reported by the Bangkok sample and the rural sample, although undoubtedly many other factors could also influence the results.

The results in Panel D are based on a study in Bangkhen, a Bangkok suburb, and are of particular interest both because the respondents were women and, more importantly, because the data were elicited by what appears to be a different methodology for determining coital frequency. Presumably in the other three studies, respondents were asked a general question on coital frequency rather than one that specifies a particular reference period. In the study summarized in Panel D, respondents were given an envelope containing a card listing the days of the week and were asked to mark the days of the previous week on which they had sexual

relations with their husbands. They were then asked to put the card back in the envelope and return it to the interviewer. This approach has both the advantage of privacy and the fact that it has a concrete period of reference. It does not, however, permit a respondent to indicate more than one act of coitus in any given day. Results were tabulated according to whether or not the women were practicing contraception.

The most striking features of the results in Panel D are the considerably lower rates of coital frequency compared to other studies. Indeed, around a third of the women indicated that they had not had intercourse in the previous week. Quite likely a considerable share of those not having intercourse were experiencing menses. At least one anthropologist indicates that intercourse during menstruation is generally avoided (Mougne, 1978). In addition, about 12 percent of the respondents indicated their husbands had not been home during the reference week (Udry et al., 1982).[3] Given the very different nature of the samples on which these studies are based, it is not possible to say definitively that the difference in methodology accounts for the lower rates of coital frequency reported in the Bangkhen study, but such an explanation is certainly plausible.

## BREASTFEEDING PATTERNS AND THE POSTPARTUM NONSUSCEPTIBLE PERIOD

Among the most important determinants of fertility in the absence of deliberate birth control are lactation practices. The contraceptive effect of breastfeeding is well documented (McCann et al., 1981). Prolonged lactation protects against pregnancy by delaying the postpartum return of ovulation and thus extends the period of nonsusceptibility to conception following a birth. Changes in breastfeeding practices can therefore have a significant effect on fertility trends.

Information on the prevalence and trends in breastfeeding practices are available from several of the national sample surveys. A recent study that extensively analyzed these data has clearly documented a moderate and relatively steady decline in the duration of breastfeeding during the same period that fertility has been declining (Knodel and Debavalya, 1980). The results, summarized in

Table 31, and Figure 4 indicate that sharp rural-urban differences in breastfeeding persisted throughout the period while parallel declines took place in urban and rural areas. In either case the estimated mean duration of breastfeeding fell by almost five months. The evidence on changes in the prevalence of breastfeeding is less clear as measured by the percentage of last-born children who were never breastfed. The data indicate that breastfeeding is almost universal in rural areas, although the prevalence may have declined slightly over the last few years. Even in urban areas, three fourths of last-born children were breastfed for at least a short period of time.

Additional information on breastfeeding is provided by CPS2, taken in 1981. Since information on breastfeeding was asked only of women who had a surviving birth during the two years prior to the survey, indexes comparable to those presented in Table 30 cannot be calculated. However, a rough comparison of the percent of women still breastfeeding their most recent birth can be made with results for NS, which took place in 1978, by also restricting the calculations for NS to women with a birth

TABLE 31 Indexes of Breastfeeding from Selected Surveys, 1969-79: Thailand

| | Rural | | | | Urban | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Index | LS1 1969 | LS2 1972 | SOFT 1975 | NS 1979 | LS1 1971 | LS2 1973 | SOFT 1975 | NS 1979 |
| Percent still breastfeeding[a] | 72.4 | 71.0 | 67.2 | 55.6 | 41.6 | 30.9 | 31.3 | 25.8 |
| Mean duration of breastfeeding per child (months)[b] | 22.4 | 22.0 | 20.9 | 17.5 | 12.9 | 9.9 | 9.7 | 8.4 |
| Percent of last-born child never breastfed | -- | -- | 6.4 | 9.6[c] | -- | -- | 25.8 | 24.4[c] |

-- indicates information not available.

[a]Among nonpregnant women with a child under 3. Standardized for months since last birth by applying equal-weights standardization procedure to results tabulated by successive categories of 4 months duration each.
[b]Based on proportions still breastfeeding by age of child in months.
[c]Standardized for age of mother using the age distribution of respondents to the equivalent question in the equivalent residence category in the SOFT sample.

Source: Adapted from Knodel and Debavalya (1980).

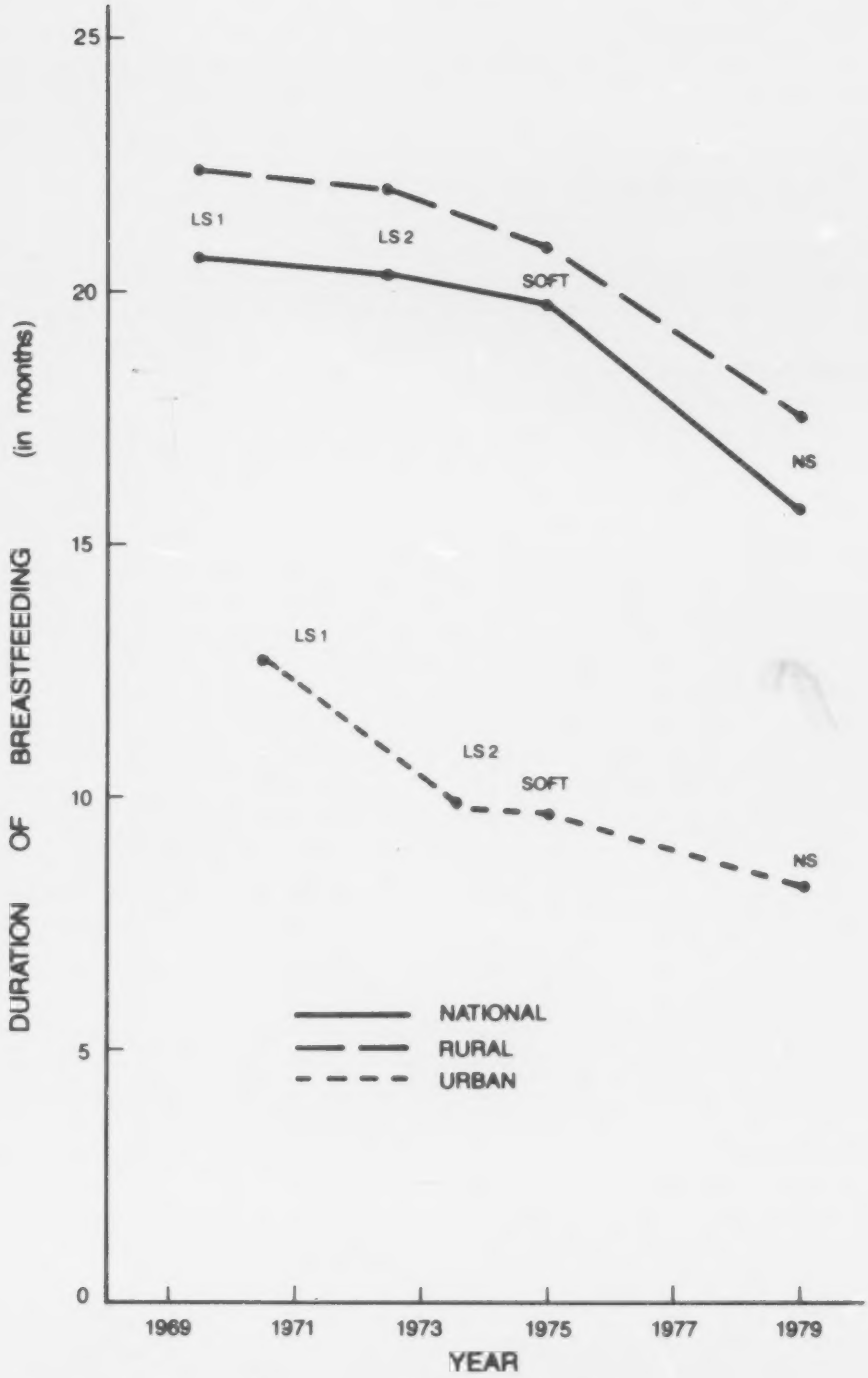



FIGURE 4 Mean Duration (in months) of Breastfeeding from Selected Surveys, 1969-70 to 1979: Thailand

in the two years prior to interview. After standardization for months since last birth, the resulting calculation indicates 67 percent of rural women still breastfeeding in NS and 66 percent two years later in CPS2, while for urban women the comparable figures are 36 percent still breastfeeding for NS and 34 percent for CPS2 (Knodel et al., 1982). Since the CPS2 calculations are restricted to women with a surviving child while NS calculations are not, the CPS2 figures probably overstate to a small extent the percent of women still breastfeeding relative to the NS results and thus understate slightly an apparent continuation of a decline in breastfeeding between the two surveys.[4]

In addition to collecting information on breastfeeding in general, CPS2 contained questions about when non-milk foods were first fed to the child and about how long ago the respondent experienced her last menstrual period. These data from CPS2 provide the basis not only for estimating the median duration of any breastfeeding but also a rough approximation of the median duration of "full" breastfeeding and of postpartum amenorrhea. Moreover, while CPS1 included no questions on breastfeeding, it does provide data on how long ago the respondent experienced her last menstrual period and also can be used to calculate duration of postpartum amenorrhea. Results are presented in Table 32.

In general, the results for CPS2 confirm those from earlier surveys in indicating that the vast majority of both rural and urban women breastfeed their children for at least some period of time. The percent of mothers who never breastfed based on the CPS2 data differ from those presented for earlier surveys in Table 31 inasmuch as they are based only on surviving births and are limited to the most recent birth during the last two rather than three years. The exclusion of nonsurviving births probably lowers the estimate of the percent of mothers who never breastfed their most recent birth, since deceased children are less likely to have been breastfed. In addition, sampling error, especially for relatively small urban portions of the samples, also contributed to differences in the sets of estimates, which argues against treating the comparison as an indication of trends. Hence, while it is possible that the higher prevalence of breastfeeding in urban areas indicated by CPS2 compared to NS may reflect a general increase between 1979 and 1981, we do not feel that firm conclusions can be drawn from a comparison of the two surveys.

TABLE 32 Indexes of Breastfeeding Among Women with a Surviving Birth in the 24 Months Prior to 1981 Interview and Estimated Median Duration of Postpartum Nonsusceptibility, 1978-79 and 1981: Thailand

| Index | National | Rural | Urban |
|---|---|---|---|
| Percent never breastfeeding | 9.1 | 7.5 | 16.7 |
| Median duration of breastfeeding (in months)[a] | 16.6 | 18.5 | 4.0 |
| Median duration of "full" breastfeeding by women who start breastfeeding (in months)[b] | 2.1 | 2.0 | 2.6 |
| Median duration of postpartum non-susceptibility (in months)[c] | | | |
| 1978/79 | 4.9[d] | 6.0 | 2.1[d] |
| 1981 | 4.7 | 5.1 | 3.1 |

[a]Includes women who never breastfed as duration 0.
[b]Derived by life table techniques.
[c]Estimated from data on time since last menstrual period.
[d]Excluding provincial urban

Source: Adapted from Knodel et al. (1982).

The CPS2 results confirm that rural Thai women breastfeed for much longer durations than their urban counterparts. Indeed, the results indicate that half of rural mothers breastfeed their surviving children for at least a year and a half, compared to only four months for urban mothers. The results on duration of breastfeeding from CPS2, however, cannot be compared directly to those presented for earlier surveys, both because the CPS2 results are for medians rather than means and refer to women rather than to children.[5]

When we focus on the median duration of full breastfeeding, a considerably different picture emerges. Since the information on the introduction of supplemental foods is limited to non-milk foods and ignores the possibility that some mothers may have provided their infants with commercial milk products at an even earlier age, the duration of full breastfeeding may be somewhat overestimated from the present data. To underscore the qualified definition of full breastfeeding, the term has been placed in quotation marks in Table 32. The striking feature of the estimates of full breastfeeding is the very short duration that they indicate, despite the possibility that these estimates may overstate its

extent. Clearly, women who breastfed their children introduced non-milk foods into the diet very early. This is true of both rural and urban women. Indeed, the estimated duration of full breastfeeding is slightly shorter for rural than for urban mothers. Findings from a 1979 survey done by Deemar Company under commission from several companies producing infant formula are quite consistent with the CPS2 results in indicating an early introduction of supplemental feeding and the lack of sharp differentials. According to the the Deemar findings, which were based on a random sample of mothers with infants under age 1, over 80 percent of mothers in both Bangkok and rural central Thailand had fed their infants non-milk foods before the age of four months regardless of social class (Gaither International, 1980:29).

The main interest in infant feeding practices for the study of fertility lies in the now well-established relationship linking prolonged lactation with delaying the return of ovulation and thereby extending the postpartum nonsusceptible period during which the woman is usually amenorrheic (Van Ginneken, 1978). Direct information on postpartum amenorrhea in Thailand is rare. Based on a retrospective survey conducted during the 1960s of women delivering in a number of Bangkok and regional hospitals, the mean duration of postpartum amenorrhea was estimated as six months (Van Ginneken, 1974). The sample, however, was clearly nonrepresentative as indicated by their reported mean duration of lactation of 12 months, undoubtedly below the national average at the time. This is not surprising given the probable overrepresentation of urban women in the sample compared to the national population.

More recent indirect estimates of postpartum nonsusceptibility are possible based on information collected in CPS1 and CPS2 on how long ago the respondent experienced her last menstrual period.[6] These estimates have the advantage of being based on representative samples. The striking feature of these results is the rather short period of amenorrheic postpartum nonsusceptibility they indicate for Thai women, suggesting that over half experience the return of menstruation within five months of giving birth. As expected from the longer duration of breastfeeding in rural areas, the return of menstruation is later for rural women than for urban women. However, even for rural women, the median duration of postpartum amenorrhea is only six months according to CPS1 and

slightly over five months according to CPS2, despite the fact that their median duration of breastfeeding is well over one year. Quite plausibly, the reason that breastfeeding in Thailand is not extending postpartum amenorrhea for longer periods may be the very short durations of full breastfeeding. There is considerable evidence available from a variety of studies indicating that the impact of breastfeeding on postponing the return of ovulation and thus extending amenorrhea is considerably less in the case of women who follow a mixed feeding regime (Van Ginneken, 1974).

The remarkably close agreement between the earlier estimate of a mean duration of six months based on the International Postpartum Program in the 1960s and the median durations based on the Contraceptive Prevalence Surveys should not obscure the fact that a decline in the average duration probably took place. Given that the earlier sample clearly underrepresented women who breastfed for longer durations, a more representative sample would surely have yielded a longer estimated duration of amenorrhea.

In brief, data on breastfeeding in Thailand suggest that a moderate decline in the average duration has taken place at the same time fertility has fallen. Nevertheless, breastfeeding is still close to universal, and substantially more than half of Thai women breastfeed for over a year. Supplemental food, however, is introduced at a very early age and probably reduces the potential inhibiting effect on fertility of the relatively long duration of breastfeeding. The median duration of postpartum amenorrhea is currently estimated at less than five months. Since the decline in the duration of breastfeeding has probably operated <u>against</u> the prevailing trend toward lower marital fertility, changes in other proximate variables must have more than counteracted it. As is demonstrated in the following chapters, the main reason marital fertility did not rise as a result of reduced breastfeeding was the massive increase in deliberate birth control, particularly the use of contraception.

NOTES

[1]According to a difference of means test (based on a simple random sample assumption), the difference between the two educational groups is statistically significant

at well beyond the .001 level for the general Bangkok subsample but not significant at even the .05 level for the other two subsamples.

[2]Two other studies of age at menarche in Thailand are cited by Bhumipadhi (1965). Both are apparently based on schoolgirls and thus could suffer from truncation bias. One study, published in 1932, reported a mean age at menarche of 13.7 and the other, dated 1962, reported a mean age of 13.9.

[3]A recent study based on the same data restricted analysis to those women who had husbands at home during the seven-day reference period, with a resulting monthly mean rate of coitus of 6.42 (Udry et al., 1982). This would translate into a weekly rate of 1.5, assuming 4.3 weeks to a month was used to convert the weekly frequencies into monthly ones. This is slightly higher than the mean of 1.3 indicated by Muangman et al. (1973). Presumably the difference is due to the exclusion in the more recent article of women whose husbands were not present. There is a minor discrepancy in total number of respondents indicated by the two articles, with the 1982 article stating 915 and the 1982 article stating 900. The 1982 article indicates that of the total 900 respondents, 95 or approximately 12 percent did not have their husband home at some time during the study period. The 1982 article apparently incorrectly reports that respondents were asked directly about coital frequency rather than being given cards to fill out privately (personal communication from J. Richard Udry).

[4]The effect cannot be large since less than 2 percent of women reporting a live birth in the two years prior to interviews reported that the birth did not survive. Given the prevailing levels of infant and child mortality in Thailand, the low percentage of women reporting a nonsurviving last birth suggests that there is some underreporting of those last births which died early in life. Presumably this affects all surveys equally.

[5]The average duration of breastfeeding per mother is usually longer than the average duration per child since women who breastfeed for short durations typically have more children than those who breastfeed for longer durations. Thus, in calculating an average per woman,

each woman is counted only once but when calculating an average per child, disproportionate weight is given to children of mothers who breastfed for short durations or not at all. For a full discussion of various methodological and conceptual problems in measuring prevalence and duration of breastfeeding, see Page et al. (forthcoming).

[6]For details on how the median duration of postpartum amenorrhea was calculated from these data, see Knodel et al. (1982).

# CHAPTER 5

## PROXIMATE DETERMINANTS 3: DELIBERATE MARITAL FERTILITY CONTROL

As indicated in Chapter 2, the recent fertility decline in Thailand has been largely a matter of reductions in marital fertility. Underlying this change has been a massive increase in the extent to which Thai couples deliberately limit their reproductive capacities by practicing birth control. In this chapter we examine this increase in deliberate marital fertility control in some detail, giving separate consideration to contraception and abortion. In addition, we consider briefly the extent to which infanticide and adoption are used as means of post-birth family limitation.

### CONTRACEPTION

Systematic and representative information on the knowledge and practice of deliberate birth control within marriage is lacking for Thailand prior to 1969. Mention should be made, however, of the large-scale national Rural Economic Survey taken in 1930-31. While it undoubtedly does not conform to modern standards of sampling and survey technique, it nevertheless was the product of a self-conscious effort to collect a variety of representative social and economic data for rural Thailand based on field interviews in 40 villages in all regions. Apparently an effort was made to inquire about birth control. This study concludes ". . . the birth rate does not seem to be under human control. They [the respondents] do not know about birth control nor practice any form to any extent" (Zimmerman, 1931:230). Anthropologists frequently mention some form of abortion as being "traditional" although quantitative information is not provided (see, e.g., Riley, 1972:218; Mougne, 1978;

Lauro, 1979:11). Less frequent is any information on the extent to which traditional forms of birth control were known or practiced. Mougne (1978) mentions that lying by the fire for several weeks following a birth, a common practice in much of Thailand in the past, was thought of as a traditional form of birth control in the northern Thai village she studied. Riley (1972:324-325) indicates he found no evidence of planned abstinence or special practices for the purpose of birth control despite frequent inquiry into the subject during his field work in a central Thai village in 1970-71. He concludes that traditional birth control seems to have been limited to abortion. During field work in another central village during 1975-76, Lauro (1979) attempted to reconstruct detailed contraceptive histories of women in the village. Use of what he termed "modern contraception" was almost totally absent prior to the late 1960s, after which it increased substantially. Unfortunately, he does not seem to have inquired systematically into whether or not traditional forms of contraception were practiced. He notes, however (p. 107), that several of the older village women indicated that they had had large families themselves because, unlike present-day younger women, they had "lacked the means to control fertility" when they were in the prime childbearing years.

Postpartum abstinence of any extensive duration is apparently not commonly practiced in Thailand, judging from the lack of reference to it by most anthropologists. An exception is Mougne (1978), who reports that intercourse is generally said to be resumed soon after the end of the first postpartum month in the village she studied in northern Thailand.

## KNOWLEDGE OF CONTRACEPTION

Evidence from national surveys, summarized in Table 33, clearly indicates that since 1969 there has been a marked increase in awareness of contraceptive techniques among both rural and urban women. At the time of the first round of the Longitudinal Study, about three out of four urban women were able to mention a method of contraception without being prompted, while slightly less than half of rural women could. Less than ten years later, almost all women, whether rural or urban, could mention at least one method. The most universally known contraceptive in Thailand is clearly the pill. It is also the most widely

TABLE 33 Contraceptive Knowledge Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44: Thailand

| Residence and Survey | Percent Knowing Method Without Prompting | | | | | | Mean Number of Methods Known[a] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | IUD | Pill | Vasectomy | Ligation | Injection | Any[a] | |
| Rural | | | | | | | |
| LS1 1969 | -- | -- | -- | -- | -- | 48 | 1.11 |
| SOFT 1975 | 50 | 77 | 25 | 46 | 21 | 86 | 2.34 |
| CPS1 1978/79 | 52 | 90 | 40 | 65 | 43 | 97 | 3.31 |
| CPS2 1981 | 65 | 90 | 56 | 75 | 62 | 97 | 4.03 |
| Urban | | | | | | | |
| LS1 1970 | -- | -- | -- | -- | -- | 74 | 1.80 |
| SOFT 1975 | 59 | 85 | 21 | 41 | 33 | 92 | 2.86 |
| CPS1 1978/79[b] | 59 | 87 | 28 | 59 | 45 | 98 | 3.49 |
| CPS2 1981 | 68 | 94 | 49 | 72 | 65 | 98 | 4.35 |
| National | | | | | | | |
| LS1 1969/70 | -- | -- | -- | -- | -- | 53 | 1.23 |
| SOFT 1975 | 51 | 78 | 24 | 45 | 22 | 87 | 2.41 |
| CPS1 1978/79[c] | 53 | 89 | 38 | 64 | 43 | 98 | 3.34 |
| CPS2 1981 | 65 | 91 | 54 | 74 | 62 | 97 | 4.08 |

-- indicates information not available

[a]Including methods not listed.
[b]Bangkok metropolitan area.
[c]Excludes provincial urban.

Sources: Debavalya and Knodel (1979) and unpublished tabulations.

used method and the method most widely provided by the National Family Planning Program.

The average number of methods mentioned by respondents without prompting has also increased substantially over the last ten years, almost doubling for urban women and almost tripling for rural women. The pronounced urban-rural differential in contraceptive knowledge evident in 1969 narrowed considerably by 1975 and had virtually disappeared by the end of 1978. Thus almost all Thai women, both rural and urban, are now familiar with the idea of birth control and the large majority are aware of a reasonably wide range of specific modern methods.

The results of two regional studies conducted around the time of LS1 are also of interest. In 1969, a question on contraceptive knowledge was included in the Rural Employment Survey and asked of a sample of men in northern Thailand with wives in the reproductive ages. In 1970, a similar question was asked of men in southern Thailand. The results indicate that almost half of the rural northern Thai men and over three fourths of rural

southern Thai men indicated they had no knowledge of contraceptive methods (Jones and Rachapaetayakom, 1970; Jones and Soonthornthum, 1971).

Although there was some familiarity with contraception at the time of LS1, birth control methods were far less salient to women than they are now, especially in rural areas. While national-level data are not available prior to 1969, results of a 1964 survey of the Potharam district, a rural area about 80 kilometers from Bangkok, suggest that familiarity with contraception may have been considerably lower then and thus may also have been increasing rapidly during the 1960s. Of the more than 1,000 currently married women aged 20-44 interviewed in the Potharam district in 1964, approximately two thirds had ". . . no knowledge whatsoever of contraceptive methods" (Hawley and Prachuabmoh, 1971b:36).

With regard to traditional knowledge and practice of contraception, there is some information on awareness of nonmodern methods, particularly withdrawal, which in European populations was a major means of reducing fertility during the demographic transition. Unfortunately, such data are not available from the earliest survey, LS1. According to national tabulations from CPS1, conducted in 1978/79, only 23 percent of ever-married women, ages 15-49 indicated awareness of withdrawal as a birth control method, with 3 percent mentioning it spontaneously and another 20 percent indicating recognition when withdrawal was mentioned to them (Suvanajata and Kamnuansilpa, 1979:24). CPS2 results show a slightly higher awareness of the withdrawal method, with 29 percent indicating knowledge (Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong, 1982). Results from NS in 1979, however, indicated considerably lower figures, especially for rural ever-married women: even with prompting, only 8 percent of them indicated any awareness of withdrawal as a contraceptive technique. The same study shows that only 16 percent of ever-married rural women aged 15-49 indicated awareness of abstinence as a method of limiting family size or spacing children (Institute of Population Studies, 1981). Presumably, this does not mean that Thai women are unaware of the connection between coitus and conception, but rather that they do not think of withdrawal and abstinence as ways of controlling their fertility and that these methods are not part of longstanding folk tradition.

## CONTRACEPTIVE PRACTICE

Even more striking than the spread of contraceptive knowledge during the period under observation is the increase in contraceptive use illustrated in Table 34. For the country as a whole, the percentage of married women in the reproductive ages who reported currently practicing some method rose from less than 15 percent to

TABLE 34 Percent Currently Practicing Contraception Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, by Age and Place of Residence: Thailand

| Residence and Year of Survey | Survey | Age of Women | | | | | | All Ages | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 15-19 | 20-24 | 25-29 | 30-34 | 35-39 | 40-44 | Unstandardized | Standardized for Age |
| **Rural** | | | | | | | | | |
| 1969 | LS1 | 0.4 | 4.2 | 10.9 | 16.2 | 14.0 | 10.0 | 10.9 | 10.5 |
| 1972 | LS2 | 5.0 | 18.3 | 25.0 | 27.4 | 31.9 | 15.7 | 22.8 | 22.8 |
| 1975 | SOFT | 16.7 | 28.5 | 39.9 | 42.4 | 40.3 | 27.6 | 34.8 | 34.9 |
| 1978-79 | CPS1 | 30.0 | 44.6 | 53.5 | 58.4 | 59.4 | 45.8 | 51.3 | 51.2 |
| 1979 | NS | 20.0 | 32.4 | 51.5 | 61.3 | 57.0 | 40.4 | 47.5 | 47.2 |
| 1979 | AFPH[a] | 20.8 | 33.5 | 49.1 | 59.6 | 56.4 | 45.4 | 47.1 | 47.2 |
| 1981 | CPS2 | 27.1 | 46.1 | 60.8 | 67.0 | 66.9 | 53.7 | 57.7 | 57.0 |
| **Urban** | | | | | | | | | |
| 1970 | LS1 | (12.0) | 18.9 | 29.7 | 43.6 | 37.2 | 30.2 | 32.6 | 30.9 |
| 1973 | LS2 | (15.6) | 29.6 | 45.6 | 51.0 | 53.3 | 46.3 | 45.1 | 43.2 |
| 1975 | SOFT | (32.6) | 46.8 | 47.2 | 54.3 | 54.8 | 48.9 | 49.4 | 49.2 |
| 1978-79 | CPS1[b] | (38.1) | 42.7 | 58.5 | 73.3 | 77.8 | 69.8 | 62.8 | 62.5 |
| 1979 | NS | -- | (35.9) | 58.3 | 60.0 | 69.8 | 60.6 | 57.6 | 53.9 |
| 1979 | AFPH[a] | (27.3) | 45.8 | 53.1 | 74.1 | 72.6 | 62.6 | 59.3 | 59.3 |
| 1981 | CPS2 | (41.7) | 55.0 | 58.9 | 71.0 | 76.2 | 70.3 | 65.2 | 64.3 |
| **National** | | | | | | | | | |
| 1969-70 | LS1 | 3.8 | 6.9 | 14.4 | 22.0 | 18.0 | 13.1 | 14.8 | 14.4 |
| 1972-73 | LS2 | 6.0 | 20.1 | 28.6 | 31.4 | 35.6 | 19.4 | 26.3 | 26.0 |
| 1975 | SOFT | 18.1 | 30.9 | 41.0 | 44.0 | 42.3 | 30.5 | 36.7 | 36.8 |
| 1978-79 | CPS1[c] | 31.3 | 44.2 | 54.4 | 61.1 | 62.8 | 49.5 | 53.4 | 53.1 |
| 1979 | NS | 19.5 | 32.9 | 52.7 | 61.1 | 59.5 | 44.2 | 49.3 | 48.5 |
| 1979 | AFPH[a] | 21.4 | 34.5 | 49.6 | 60.9 | 57.5 | 47.1 | 48.1 | 48.2 |
| 1981 | CPS2 | 29.0 | 47.5 | 60.4 | 67.7 | 68.6 | 56.4 | 59.0 | 58.2 |

Notes: The age distribution of currently married women in the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis of the age standardization. Results based on at least 10 but fewer than 50 cases are shown in parentheses; results based on fewer than 10 cases are not shown.

[a]Results refer to a universe of 20 provinces; the urban sample refers to provincial urban only.
[b]Bangkok metropolitan area.
[c]Excluding provincial urban.

Sources: Debavalya and Knodel (1978); Debavalya (1981); Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong (1982); and unpublished tabulations.

close to 60 percent in the 12 years covered by the surveys.[1] While there is some difference in the prevalence rates indicated by the three surveys taken within less than a year of each other, between the end of 1978 and 1979, they all show markedly higher prevalence rates than previous surveys and lower rates than the 1981 survey. Presumably there has been a steady rise in contraceptive prevalence over the period covered and the differences among the 1979 surveys reflect sampling fluctuation and differences in the answers to which they refer. Moreover, the increase is greater among rural women, of whom only 10 percent were practicing contraception in 1969. As a result, rural-urban differences in contraceptive prevalence have narrowed substantially. Even the low prevalence rate for rural women in 1969 (10 percent) may be the result of a recent prior increase, given that the 1964 survey in the Potharam district found only 4 percent of married women aged 20-44 were currently practicing contraception and only 5 percent had ever practiced contraception (calculated from Hawley and Prachuabmoh, 1971a). Likewise Lauro (1979), in his study of a central Thai village, found prevalence increasing from the mid-1960s.

The increase in contraceptive prevalence has clearly occurred at all age groups. On the national level, in almost all the surveys, the highest rate is found among women in the 30-34 group, although rates in the 35-39 group are usually very close. For women in their early forties, however, the percentage currently practicing contraception is noticeably lower, undoubtedly reflecting in large part a recognition of reduced risk of pregnancy as they approach the end of their childbearing years. The lowest rates are consistently indicated for the youngest age group of married women, who presumably have the least incentive to limit their fertility since they are just beginning their childbearing and typically average less than one child ever born (Debavalya, 1981).

While women can discontinue contraceptive use as they become older and perceive that they are no longer risking pregnancy, the percentage of a cohort that has <u>ever</u> used contraception should increase with age up to the point when the last woman in the cohort who eventually adopts contraception does so. To gain an impression of the increase of contraceptive usage with age for a particular cohort, one can examine the proportions ever practicing contraception for successive age groups in the three surveys included in Table 35.

TABLE 35 Percent Who Ever Used Contraception Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-49, by Age and Residence: Thailand

| Age Group | Rural LS1 1969 | Rural SOFT 1975 | Rural NS 1979 | Urban LS1 1970 | Urban SOFT 1975 | Urban NS 1979 | National LS1 1969/70 | National SOFT 1975 | National NS 1969 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15-19 | 3.8 | 25.9 | 30.0 | (14.0) | (51.1) | -- | 5.0 | 28.3 | 28.6 |
| 20-24 | 5.6 | 40.8 | 42.7 | 26.4 | 64.3 | (48.7) | 9.4 | 43.9 | 43.7 |
| 25-29 | 14.3 | 56.1 | 62.1 | 39.6 | 66.9 | 70.0 | 19.1 | 57.7 | 63.6 |
| 30-34 | 21.2 | 57.4 | 73.8 | 50.9 | 71.5 | 78.3 | 27.4 | 59.2 | 74.7 |
| 35-39 | 16.3 | 55.7 | 65.4 | 44.7 | 68.5 | 84.1 | 21.2 | 57.4 | 69.0 |
| 40-44 | 15.0 | 51.1 | 55.7 | 33.3 | 60.4 | 74.2 | 17.8 | 43.7 | 59.2 |
| 45-49 | [a] | 24.8 | 31.5 | 24.2 | 44.8 | (69.8) | -- | 27.6 | 37.4 |
| Age standardized | | | | | | | | | |
| 15-44 | 13.9 | 49.1 | 58.4 | 37.7 | 64.9 | 67.0 | 18.3 | 51.3 | 60.1 |

Notes: The age distribution of currently married women in the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis of the age standardization. Results based on at least 10 but fewer than 50 cases are shown in parentheses; results based on fewer than 10 cases are not shown.

[a]In the rural phase of LS1, only women under age 45 were asked about contraceptive use.

Several caveats are appropriate with regard to the data in Table 35. Since the table refers only to currently married women, the data at younger ages refer only to those women in a cohort who marry early and who may be unrepresentative of the cohort as a whole as it ages and additional women in the cohort marry. Presumably few of the women who had not yet married were practicing contraception (see, e.g., Yoddumnern, 1981), but we have no way of knowing what proportions would have had they already been married. (The problem in interpretation is similar to the one discussed in Chapter 2 in connection with the total expected number of children in Table 13). In addition, the times between the surveys are not exact multiples of five years in every case, further detracting from the precise identity of particular cohorts over time when age is tabulated in five-year age groups as is the case in Table 35. However, since the time period between the surveys never deviates by more than one year from a five-year interval, we can at least approximate the experience of a particular cohort over time by comparing successive age groups across the three points in time.

The comparison clearly indicates that the proportion who had ever practiced contraception within individual cohorts increased sharply as the cohort became older. For example, the proportion of the cohort of rural women aged 20-24 in 1969 that ever practiced contraception increases from 6 percent in 1969, to 56 percent in 1975, and to 74 percent by the time they are aged 30-34 in 1979. Sharp increases are indicated for most cohorts, although several inconsistencies are apparent. The most glaring appears among rural women who were aged 40-44 in 1975: the proportion reporting ever using contraception was 41 percent in 1975, whereas four years later the 45-49-year age group reported only 32 percent ever used. Such inconsistencies are rare, however, and may arise from either reporting or sampling error. The generally sharp increase in ever use with age for cohorts is in contrast to the impression gained by comparing successive age groups in the cross-sections provided by any one of the particular surveys. In this period of rapid change, the cross sections are clearly inadequate for estimating cohort experience.

The specific methods of contraception being used by respondents are indicated in Table 36 and Figure 5 (after standardization for age). With the exception of LS1, which shows female sterilization as the most popular technique, all subsequent surveys at the national level

TABLE 36 Percent Currently Practicing Specific Methods of Contraception, Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, Standardized for Age, Classified by Residence: Thailand

| Residence and Year of Survey | Survey | Pill | IUD | Sterilization | | Injection | Condom | Others | All Methods |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Male | Female | | | | |
| Rural | | | | | | | | | |
| 1969 | LS1 | 2.7 | 2.1 | 1.9 | 2.9 | 0.4 | 0.0 | 0.5 | 10.5 |
| 1972 | LS2 | 9.7 | 4.6 | 2.7 | 4.5 | 0.8 | 0.0 | 0.2 | 22.8 |
| 1975 | SOFT | 14.3 | 6.8 | 2.2 | 6.6 | 2.1 | 0.3 | 2.7 | 34.9 |
| 1978/79 | CPS1 | 23.1 | 3.7 | 3.5 | 10.4 | 4.9 | 1.5 | 4.1 | 51.2 |
| 1979 | NS | 21.4 | 1.9 | 4.2 | 12.4 | 6.1 | 10.6 | 0.7 | 47.2 |
| 1979 | AFPH[a] | 17.9 | 4.9 | 5.4 | 11.0 | 5.8 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 47.2 |
| 1981 | CPS2 | 20.4 | 4.4 | 4.2 | 17.0 | 7.6 | 1.2 | 2.3 | 57.0 |
| Urban | | | | | | | | | |
| 1970 | LS1 | 8.9 | 2.2 | 2.9 | 14.9 | 0.5 | 0.3 | 1.4 | 30.9 |
| 1973 | LS2 | 16.6 | 5.0 | 3.5 | 16.5 | 1.2 | 0.6 | 1.9 | 43.2 |
| 1975 | SOFT | 20.3 | 5.0 | 2.3 | 13.6 | 2.1 | 1.6 | 4.3 | 49.2 |
| 1978/79 | CPS1[b] | 16.4 | 5.5 | 3.3 | 24.6 | 3.5 | 5.3 | 4.0 | 62.5 |
| 1979 | NS | 16.7 | 4.2 | 2.3 | 24.8 | 2.7 | 1.0 | 2.3 | 53.9 |
| 1979 | AFPH[a] | 15.6 | 3.2 | 2.6 | 28.2 | 4.7 | 3.0 | 1.9 | 59.3 |
| 1979 | NS | 16.7 | 4.2 | 2.3 | 24.8 | 2.7 | 1.0 | 2.3 | 53.9 |
| 1981 | CPS2 | 19.5 | 2.6 | 3.8 | 24.9 | 4.1 | 5.1 | 4.3 | 64.3 |
| National | | | | | | | | | |
| 1969/70 | LS1 | 3.8 | 2.1 | 2.0 | 5.1 | 0.4 | 0.1 | 0.7 | 14.4 |
| 1972/73 | LS2 | 10.8 | 4.7 | 2.8 | 6.4 | 0.9 | 0.1 | 0.5 | 26.0 |
| 1975 | SOFT | 15.1 | 6.6 | 2.2 | 7.5 | 2.0 | 0.5 | 2.9 | 36.8 |
| 1978/79 | CPS1[c] | 22.0 | 4.0 | 3.4 | 12.9 | 4.6 | 2.2 | 4.0 | 53.1 |
| 1979 | NS | 20.6 | 2.1 | 3.9 | 14.8 | 5.4 | 0.7 | 1.0 | 48.5 |
| 1979 | AFPH[a] | 17.7 | 4.8 | 5.2 | 12.5 | 5.7 | 1.2 | 1.0 | 48.2 |
| 1981 | CPS2 | 20.1 | 4.1 | 4.1 | 18.4 | 6.9 | 1.9 | 2.7 | 58.2 |

Notes: The age distribution of currently married women in the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis of the age standardization. Rounding errors, minor coding discrepancies, and users of unspecified methods account for the small differences between the sum of the percentages practicing individual methods and the percentage for all methods.

[a]Results refer to a universe of 20 provinces; the urban sample refers to provincial urban only.
[b]Bangkok metropolitan area.
[c]Excluding provincial urban.

find the contraceptive pill the most commonly used method. Recent sharp increases in female sterilization, however, make it a close second by 1981. A distinct rural-urban difference also exists. All four of the most recent surveys find that in urban areas the pill is second to female sterilization, as it was at the time of LS1 as well. Indeed, in 1981 approximately one out of every four urban, currently married women in the reproductive ages reported having been sterilized. The higher rates of sterilization in urban areas undoubtedly reflect the greater accessibility there to medical facilities

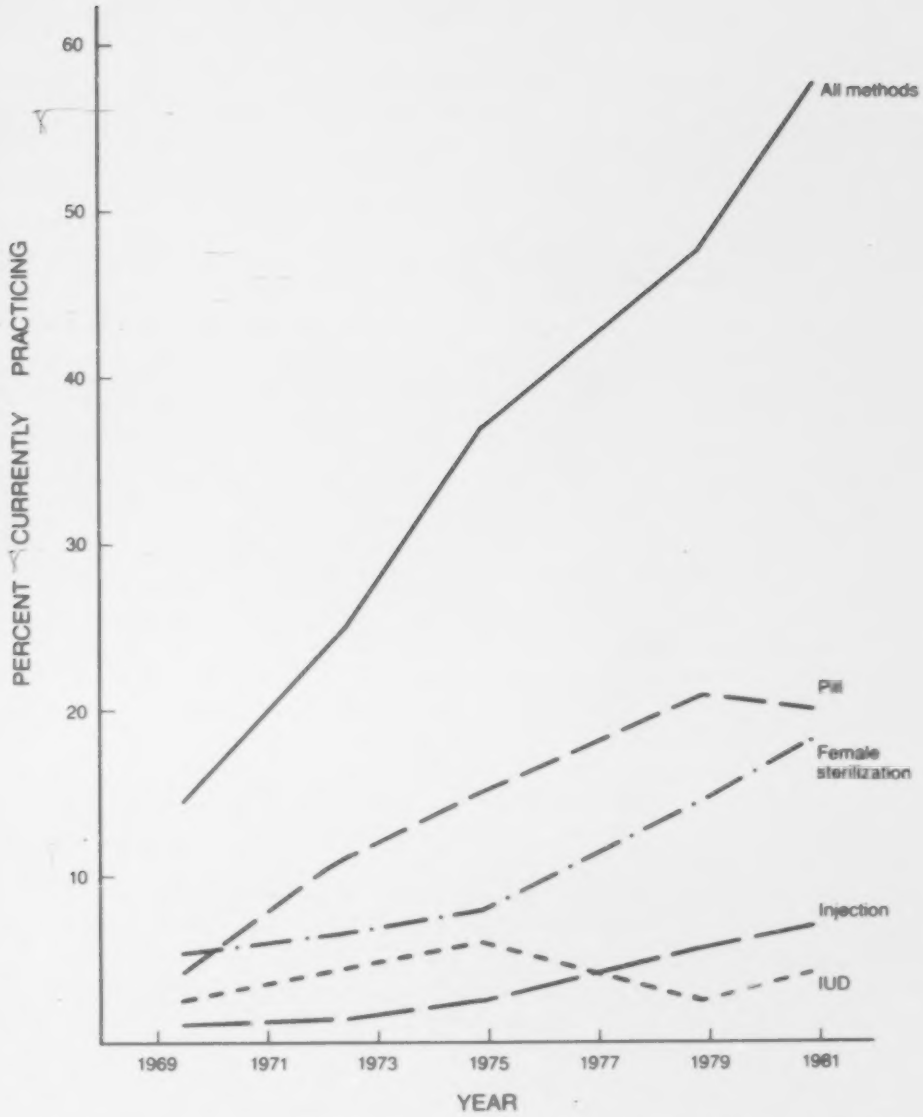



FIGURE 5 Percent Currently Practicing Specified Methods of Contraception from Surveys, 1969-70 to 1981: Thailand

Sources: 1969-70 LS1; 1972-73 LS2; 1975 SOFT; 1979 NS; 1981 CPS2.

providing sterilization services. Even among rural women, however, the proportion sterilized is substantial and is approaching one out of every five currently married women, according to the most recent surveys.

## THE CONTRIBUTION OF THE NATIONAL FAMILY PLANNING PROGRAM

The coincident timing of the development of an active national family planning program and the increase in contraceptive use suggests there is a connection between the two. Although the program was officially established in 1970, training activities began in early 1968 and by the time the national policy was declared in 1970, personnel had been trained in almost all provinces and the program was operating to some extent in most rural areas by or shortly after that time. Moreover, family planning was available through government hospitals in urban areas even earlier (Rosenfield et al., 1982). Since substantial proportions of urban women reported themselves as already using contraception in 1970 before the official program was launched, many were undoubtedly availing themselves of both the family planning services provided by these hospitals and commercially available contraception. Surveys indicate that the situation was quite different in rural areas. Only very minimal usage of contraception appears to pre-date the onset of the national program.

The particular mix of methods as well as the trends in different methods are undoubtedly associated with developments in the National Family Planning Program. For example, the popularity of the pill in rural areas is no doubt related to its wide availability, especially through outlets of the Ministry of Public Health, and coincides with the fact that during the last decade the majority of new acceptors reported by the National Family Planning Program chose the pill. In addition, the high rates of female sterilization are probably related to the increasing emphasis this method is being given in the national program, especially in the last few years (Joint Thai/U.S. Evaluation Team, 1979; Rosenfield et al., 1982).

The number of family planning acceptors officially attributed to the program (which includes most acceptors to affiliated private programs) has grown almost steadily since its inception, increasing from an average of about 60,000 new acceptors per year during 1965-68 to over 1 million by 1979. As Table 37 indicates, the largest

TABLE 37 New Acceptors in the National Family Planning Program: Thailand

| Year | Total[a] | Pill | IUD | Injectable Hormonal | Female Sterilizations | Vasectomy |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1965-68 | 186,893 | 17,861 | 125,458 | -- | 47,574 | |
| 1969 | 130,219 | 60,459 | 54,496 | -- | 15,264 | |
| 1970 | 225,439 | 132,387 | 74,404 | -- | 18,648 | |
| 1971 | 404,187 | 294,607 | 86,304 | -- | 23,546 | |
| 1972 | 456,694 | 327,582 | 90,128 | 6,316[b] | 32,668 | |
| 1973 | 422,176 | 268,674 | 93,449 | 10,447[b] | 49,606 | |
| 1974 | 494,479 | 305,244 | 89,739 | 19,014[b] | 73,702 | 6,780 |
| 1975 | 535,023 | 345,117 | 75,163 | 24,559[b] | 82,650 | 7,534 |
| 1976 | 627,239 | 376,707 | 71,894 | 73,357 | 95,131 | 10,150 |
| 1977 | 758,212 | 488,765 | 74,794 | 68,714 | 106,816 | 19,123 |
| 1978 | 890,713 | 557,857 | 77,775 | 86,620 | 124,205 | 44,256 |
| 1979 | 984,590 | 614,525 | 78,082 | 117,451 | 138,732 | 35,300 |
| 1980 | 1,065,518 | 653,610 | 79,378 | 149,744 | 151,681 | 31,105 |

-- indicates information not available.

[a]Includes only methods listed here, except for the years 1972-75.
[b]Totals include acceptors of methods not listed here such as condoms and foam.

Source: Mimeographed material from Thailand, Ministry of Public Health, and personal communications.

share of acceptors is attributed to the pill, which accounts for more than half of all acceptors for each year shown.

The program's success in reaching a large number of acceptors is undoubtedly due to a variety of factors. Of particular importance from the point of view of the program's structure has been the involvement of health personnel at all levels in family planning activities and especially the delegation of family planning tasks to paramedical personnel. In 1970, a decision was made to allow auxiliary midwives and nurses to provide the contraceptive pill, thus expanding enormously the number of personnel and service outlets for pill distribution. Another factor that apparently boosted pill use and ultimately the number of contraceptive users was the decision in 1976 to provide the pill free of charge. After that, a marked and sustained increase in the number of pill acceptors occurred without a compensating decline in acceptors of other methods or in commercial sales (Joint Thai/U.S. Evaluation Team, 1979). The use of midwives and nurses along with the free-pill policy undoubtedly contributed to the widespread use of the pill in Thailand.

Sample surveys such as CPS1, AFPH, and CPS2 are especially useful in assessing the extent of the government's contraceptive services independent of the government's official program statistics. Table 38 indicates the source of contraception reported by ever-married women in the reproductive ages who were currently using contraception at the time of each survey. As all three surveys clearly show, the large majority of users indicate a government source as the provider of their method of contraception. In both CPS1 and CPS2, more than three out of four women indicated they obtained their method from a government outlet. Nevertheless, the private sector, particularly drug stores, are a fairly significant source of contraception, accounting for between one fourth and one fifth of users nationally. As might be expected, given the more extensive commercial network and concentration of private clinics in urban areas, the importance of the private sector is greater for urban than for rural women. Among rural women, about four out of five rely on the government for provision of family planning services while only two thirds of urban women do.

A recent study attempted to assess the impact of the national program on fertility by estimating the number of births averted through use of program-supplied contraception (Khoo, 1979). A range of estimates is provided that depends on the particular combination of fertility schedules and continuation rates input into the computer model used for the calculations. The results suggest that a reasonable estimate of the national program's effect on births averted would account for close to 80 percent of the decline in the total fertility rate between 1964 and 1975, assuming no substitution of program methods for nonprogram methods. Allowance for substitution would, of course, reduce the estimated impact of the program. Unfortunately, it is not possible to estimate with any certainty how much substitution occurred. At the same time, however, the computer model used for the estimation ignores the possibility that new acceptors may be self-selected for higher-than-average fertility and that some nonprogram birth control might be stimulated by the program.

## FAMILY LIMITATION AND BIRTH SPACING

There is evidence accumulating from both historical studies of Europe and contemporary experience in the

TABLE 38 Percent Ever-Married Women Aged 15-49 Currently Using Contraception, by Source and Residence: Thailand

| Source of Contraception | AFPH 1969 | | | CPS2 1981 | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Rural | Provincial Urban | CPS1 1978-79 | National | Rural | Urban |
| Government | 78.9 | 62.9 | 76.9 | 78.4 | 81.2 | 66.7 |
| Private | 21.1 | 37.1 | 23.1 | 21.6 | 18.8 | 33.3 |
| Drugstore | 10.6 | 19.0 | 11.3 | 12.0 | 10.0 | 20.4 |
| Clinic/Hospital | 8.6 | 16.6 | 6.3 | 7.6 | 7.0 | 9.9 |
| Other | 1.8 | 1.5 | 5.5 | 2.0 | 1.8 | 3.0 |
| Total | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| N | 1,418 | 542 | (1,349) | (3,633) | (2,927) | (706) |

Notes: Results refer to all current users, including a small number not currently married. CPS1 excludes the provincial urban population.

Sources: Kamnuansilpa et al. (1982), and unpublished tabulations.

developing world that the introduction and spread of birth control for limiting family size rather than increasing child spacing is a key feature in the initial stages of the fertility transition (Knodel, 1979, 1981; Siddiqui, 1979; for a dissenting view, see Friedlander et al., 1980). Thus we would expect couples who already have all the children they want to be the most receptive to adopting birth control as it spreads through the population. In his study of a central Thai village, Lauro (1979:243) reports: "Villagers were unanimous in expressing that their objective in practicing family planning was to curtail fertility rather than to space children or defer childbearing to a later time." He indicates that his finding was confirmed through in-depth qualitative investigation.

As the results in Table 39 clearly show, the percentage practicing birth control is substantially higher among couples who indicate that they want no more children than among those who still wish to have additional children. As would be expected, the increase in contraceptive prevalence has been more pronounced among the former group, with almost seven out of ten practicing contraception in 1981 among couples in which the wife is under age 45 and indicates she wishes to stop having children. Indeed, among the urban population more than three fourths of couples in this situation indicate they are currently practicing some form of contraception. Nevertheless, the practice of contraception for spacing births is also becoming more common, as indicated by the increase in contraceptive prevalence among couples in which the wife indicates she wants additional children. The most recent survey, CPS2, indicates that four out of ten couples who still want additional children are practicing birth control for spacing purposes.

A direct question on whether contraception was being practiced to space children or to terminate childbearing was asked current users in the Northeast Survey (NES) taken in 1980. The results indicate that 70 percent said their use was to stop childbearing altogether, 26 percent said they were spacing, and the remainder indicated they were unsure.

An initial dominance by the motivation to limit family size and the subsequent increasing importance of the spacing motivation over the course of the fertility decline is also evident in data collected from new acceptors to the National Family Planning Program. As indicated in Table 40, when the expanded National Program

TABLE 39 Percent Currently Practicing Contraception Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, by Residence and Desire for Additional Children: Thailand

| Residence and Year of Survey | Survey | Desire for Additional Children: Want More | Want No More | Not Sure |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rural | | | | |
| 1969 | LS1 | 1.2 | 16.7 | -- |
| 1972 | LS2 | 9.7 | 30.7 | (16.7) |
| 1975 | SOFT | 22.4 | 41.0 | 34.8 |
| 1978-79 | CPS1 | 37.5 | 58.3 | (46.5) |
| 1979 | NS | 24.8 | 62.6 | -- |
| 1979 | AFPH[a] | 26.8 | 59.1 | -- |
| 1981 | CPS2 | 40.3 | 67.5 | 50.6 |
| Urban | | | | |
| 1970 | LS1 | 17.1 | 46.4 | 16.0 |
| 1973 | LS2 | 19.7 | 62.6 | 45.6 |
| 1975 | SOFT | 35.7 | 59.1 | (29.1) |
| 1978-79 | CPS1[b] | 43.0 | 74.5 | -- |
| 1979 | NS | 26.6 | 76.9 | -- |
| 1979 | AFPH[a] | 36.5 | 73.4 | -- |
| 1981 | CPS2 | 45.3 | 77.1 | (23.5) |
| National | | | | |
| 1969-70 | LS1 | 4.5 | 21.3 | (8.7) |
| 1972-73 | LS2 | 11.4 | 35.0 | (30.7) |
| 1975 | SOFT | 24.6 | 43.1 | 33.0 |
| 1978-79 | CPS1[c] | 38.6 | 61.1 | 46.0 |
| 1979 | NS | 25.1 | 65.2 | -- |
| 1979 | AFPH[a] | 29.2 | 62.7 | -- |
| 1981 | CPS2 | 41.2 | 69.2 | 46.0 |

Notes: Results based on at least 10 but fewer than 50 cases after weighting are shown in parentheses; results based on fewer than 10 cases are not shown.

[a]Results refer to a universe of 20 provinces; the urban sample refers to provincial urban only.
[b]Bangkok metropolitan area.
[c]Excluding provincial urban.

TABLE 40 Percentage Distribution of New Acceptors in the National Family Planning Program by Desire for Additional Children: Thailand

| Year of Survey | Want More | Want no More | Unsure |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1971-72 | 13.6 | 67.6 | 18.8 |
| 1973 | 19.5 | 61.6 | 19.0 |
| 1974 | 21.3 | 59.8 | 18.9 |
| 1975 | 22.6 | 57.9 | 19.5 |
| 1976 | 23.1 | 56.0 | 20.9 |
| 1977 | 25.9 | 55.4 | 18.7 |
| 1978 | 28.5 | 52.6 | 18.9 |
| 1979 | 28.4 | 53.5 | 18.2 |
| 1980 | 29.7 | 51.7 | 18.6 |

Source: Unpublished material from Thailand, Ministry of Public Health, and personal communications.

began in the early 1970s, more than two thirds of new acceptors indicated they wanted no more children. However, this share of acceptors has declined almost without exception in each subsequent year, so that by 1980 only slightly more than half of new acceptors indicate that they are ready to terminate childbearing altogether. At the same time, the share of new acceptors who indicate that they still want additional children has increased almost without interruption, so that close to 30 percent of new acceptors by 1980 are apparently adopting family planning from the National Program explicitly for spacing purposes. The proportion of acceptors who were unsure about their future fertility plans has remained remarkably steady throughout the decade at slightly less than one fifth of all acceptors.

Thailand seems to be rapidly approaching a situation where deliberate fertility control within marriage will be exercized widely for both spacing and stopping births. Even during the very short time that the fertility transition has been underway in Thailand, one can see the same evolution in contraceptive practice patterns with respect to spacing and stopping that probably occurred over a much longer period in the past for developed countries. This suggests that the demand for family planning services for spacing purposes will

probably contribute significantly to the overall demand in the future.

## ABORTION

While the various surveys clearly document both the general increase in contraceptive practice and the methods of contraception used, they are less helpful for determining the amount of induced abortion in Thailand. Because abortion is illegal under most circumstances and, unlike contraception, is believed by many to be contrary to the principles of Buddhism, responses to direct survey questions on the use of abortion are generally assumed to seriously understate its prevalence.

In response to a direct question, only 3 percent of ever-married women under age 50 acknowledged ever having resorted to abortion as a means of birth control in CPS1 and only 2 percent did so in CPS2 (Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong, 1982). In the FPHH study, which interviewed approximately 8,000 married women in the reproductive ages in the northeast region, only 1.5 percent admitted to ever having had an induced abortion (Porapakkham and Bennett, 1978:89). In the northern Thai fertility study, interviews with almost 2,000 women in two northern Thai provinces revealed reported rates of 2.4 percent in Chiang Mai province and 0.7 percent in Chiang Rai province (Shevasunt and Hogan, 1979:35). It is virtually certain that responses to direct questions in the surveys grossly underestimate the prevalence of induced abortion. It is interesting that Riley (1972:218) indicates that despite the fact that there was an abortionist in the village he studied and that he knew of specific instances of induced abortion, only one woman admitted to having had an induced abortion in the course of the systematic interviews he conducted to collect fertility histories.

Results from a number of sources other than direct survey questions suggest that the prevalence of induced abortion may be substantial in Thailand. A 1978 study of abortion practitioners in rural Thailand (Research and Evaluation Unit, National Family Planning Program, 1979) indicates that abortion is widely practiced, using methods ranging from very primitive to modern. Of these methods, massage abortion appears to be the most common. The study estimated that there are a minimum of around 300,000 illegal abortions per year in rural and provincial urban

Thailand. This would correspond to approximately one abortion for every four live births or an abortion rate of approximately 37 per 1,000 women, excluding the Bangkok population, which was not covered in this particular study. A 1980 study in an overwhelmingly rural northeastern province, again based on interviews with indigenous practitioners, indicated a considerably higher incidence of abortion: over eight abortions for every ten live births and an abortion rate of 107 per 1,000 women aged 14-44 (Narkavonnakit and Bennett, 1981).

An earlier attempt to estimate the national annual abortion rate, based on country-wide hospital admissions for incomplete abortions, indicated a total of 200,000 to 230,000 cases of induced abortion per year during 1972-73, corresponding roughly to an induced abortion rate of 28 per 1,000 women aged 15-45 (Cook and Leoprapai, 1974, cited in Baker and Clinton, 1981). The estimate is based on a series of assumptions that can be called into question. For example, they assume that all reported hospital admissions for incomplete abortions represent incomplete induced abortions. This is almost certainly not true and would bias their estimate upward. On the other hand, they assumed that hospital admissions represent approximately 10 percent of all induced abortions which may be too high and thus bias their estimate downward. For example, Narkavonnakit and Bennett estimate that in the northeastern province they studied only about 2.4 percent of induced abortions resulted in hospital admissions. Although firm estimates of the extent of induced abortion are not available for Thailand, and existing estimates can be called into question on the basis of representativeness and accuracy, it seems fairly clear that induced abortion is substantial in Thailand and should not be ignored as a factor influencing recent levels of fertility. In this connection, it is worth noting that a variety of studies make it clear that substantial numbers of abortions, perhaps the large majority, are attributable to married women, especially in rural areas and thus have potentially important influence on the level of marital fertility (see Baker and Clinton, 1981).

Limited evidence suggests that the overall prevalence of abortion has increased substantially during the same period that contraceptive practice has risen sharply. An extensive study based on a large number of hospitals throughout the country indicates a three-fold increase between 1966 and 1974 in the number of cases admitted for

complications associated with abortion. Although information specifying whether the complications resulted from induced or spontaneous abortion was not available, the author reports that many cases were probably the result of illegally induced abortions (Rauyajin, 1979). Another study based on admissions for induced abortion to a Bangkok hospital, indicates a steady 3.6-fold increase between the first three years, 1968-70, and 1977, followed by a slight decline during the next two years (Koetsawang, 1980; Baker and Clinton, 1981). These studies clearly suggest a major trend toward increased abortion at the same time contraceptive use is rapidly increasing.

At this stage in Thailand's fertility transition, it appears that both abortion and contraceptive use are part of the same process whereby family limitation is spreading rapidly throughout the population. As the fertility transition advances and contraceptive use becomes virtually universal and more efficient, and especially if the prevalence of sterilization continues to increase, the number of abortions in Thailand should decline. Perhaps the results from the Bangkok hospital study showing a decline since 1977 are beginning to signal such a change. A pattern of initial increase in abortions followed by a decrease may be a relatively common feature of fertility transitions in a number of countries (see Population Crisis Committee, 1979).

## INFANTICIDE AND ADOPTION

In the absence of or in addition to birth control within marriage, mechanisms that can effectively reduce family size include infanticide, child abandonment, and transferring children out to live with others who are willing to care for them. While such factors cannot be thought of as proximate <u>fertility</u> variables, they can have the effect of limiting family size. We are unaware of any studies directed at examining the existence of deliberate infanticide, underinvestment in childcare (sometimes called infanticide by neglect), or child abandonment for Thailand with reference to either the past or present, although de Young (1955:49) states that "infanticide is so unthinkable by Thai Buddhist standards that anyone who committed it would be judged insane." Lauro (1979:106) notes that almost all villagers in the central Thai village he studied claimed to spend substantial sums of

money on medicines and treatment to keep their children well. However, Mougne (1978:83) does not rule out the possible infrequent practice of infanticide in the northern Thai village she studied and cites "pinching of the nose of the newborn" or deliberate neglect as the means. She concludes ". . . information regarding this is extremely difficult to obtain in Buddhist society, and it is unlikely to have ever been a major factor in traditional fertility limitation."

In contrast to the nearly unanimous views discounting infanticide, several observers have commented on transferring children through adoption as a way of coping with unwanted fertility under special or extreme circumstances. In his study of a central Thai village, Riley (1972: 228-229) indicates that 6 percent of first births tabulated in his study of pregnancy histories and pregnancy outcomes were reported as having been given to someone else to raise. Most cases involved young mothers whose babies were reared by other kin. Henderson (1971:68) states that ". . . families with large numbers of children may send one or more children to stay with relatives, neighbors, or in the case of boys, to the wat (Buddhist temple), where . . . they act as servants to the monks." They also state that "children are frequently adopted, especially by childless couples" (p. 71). Their description makes it clear that people are not referring to orphans but to children whose parents are still alive. In an article describing his own experience, being sent to live as a monk's apprentice at an early age, Sudham (1980:67) states that ". . . to give one of your children to be adopted by strangers for a sum of money or for free had been a common practice of peasants who have a large brood of youngsters, particularly in years of drought."

Data from the AMS provide a unique opportunity to evaluate the extent to which children lived separately from their biological parents and thus provide some idea of the extent of child transfer through adoption. In the course of collecting the life histories of respondents in the AMS, information was recorded indicating with whom the respondent lived at the time she was approximately ten years old. The data thus referred to the situation approximately a generation ago. Since information was also collected on when the parents died if they were no longer alive, it is possible to examine the percentage of respondents who were not living with either biological parent at age ten according to the survival status of the parents. As is evident from the results presented in

TABLE 41 Percent of Ever-Married Women Reporting Not Living with Either Biological Parent at Age 10, by Survival Status of Parents at Age 10: Thailand

| Area | Survival Status of Parents at Age 10 | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Both Parents Alive | Mother Alive Father Dead | Father Alive Mother Dead |
| Bangkok General | 4.3 (415) | 5.3 (57) | 28.6 (28) |
| Bangkok Slums | 6.1 (425) | 11.1 (45) | 44.4 (27) |
| Semi-Rural | 2.6 (568) | 4.2 (48) | 38.2 (34) |

Source: Asian Marriage Survey.

Table 41, the respondents were more likely to report living with someone other than the biological parents if one of the parents had died, particularly the mother. Of greater interest are the results referring to the situation where both parents were still alive. In all three subsamples, a small percentage of respondents indicated that they did not live with parents even though both parents presumably were alive. The results suggest that this phenomenon was most prevalent among the Bangkok slum respondents, perhaps reflecting their poorer economic background during their childhood. These estimates are probably somewhat understated since we attempted to be conservative when judging from the data available whether a respondent's parents were alive at the time of her reaching age ten. Clearly, more direct evidence on this phenomenon would be required before any firm conclusions could be reached about its extent. It would be particularly interesting to examine whether the phenomenon of child transfer through adoption had been affected by the advent of widespread birth control.

NOTE

[1]Contraceptive prevalence as discussed in the present study includes use of all methods of contraception including "male" methods such as condoms or vasectomy. For the sake of convenience, however, prevalence is expressed as the percentage of women who are currently using or who have ever used some method, since the information on contraceptive use is typically elicited from women respondents.

# CHAPTER 6

## ESTIMATING THE IMPACT OF THE PROXIMATE DETERMINANTS ON FERTILITY

The observed fertility level of a population can be affected by variations in any of the intermediate variables as proposed by Davis and Blake (1956) or as reorganized and proposed as proximate determinants by Bongaarts (1978). However, Bongaarts (1980b) has demonstrated that only four proximate determinants--namely, the proportion married, contraception, induced abortion, and postpartum infecundability--are of any substantial importance in the analysis of fertility differences or trends, because variations in the population averages of the other factors usually are not large enough to make a substantial impact on fertility. He has proposed an analytical accounting scheme which enables us to assess the impact of each of these four principal proximate variables on the fertility level at any given point in time and to examine changes in their impact over time (Bongaarts, 1978). The fertility-inhibiting effect of each is assessed by comparing an estimate of the fertility level that would prevail in its presence and then in its absence. The potential fertility level that would prevail in the absence of the four principal proximate variables (i.e., under conditions in which all women in the reproductive ages were married and there was no breastfeeding, induced abortion, or contraception) is called the total fecundity rate. The level of total fecundity varies from population to population due to differences in the other proximate variables. Based on empirical analysis of a number of populations, Bongaarts has found that the total fecundity rate averages about 15.3 births per woman.

In the Bongaarts model, the impacts of the four principal intermediate fertility variables are measured by four indexes, each ranging from 0 to 1. When a given

intermediate variable has no fertility-inhibiting effect, the corresponding index equals one; if the fertility inhibition is complete, the index equals zero. The four indexes are defined as follows:

$C_m$ = index of proportion married (equals 1 in the absence of celebacy and 0 in the absence of marriage);

$C_c$ = index of contraception (equals 1 in the absence of contraception and 0 if all fecund women use 100 percent effective contraception);

$C_a$ = index of induced abortion (equals 1 in the absence of induced abortion and 0 if all pregnancies are aborted); and

$C_i$ = index of postpartum infecundability (equals 1 in the absence of lactation and postpartum abstinence and 0 if the duration of infecundability is infinite).

Since each index equals the proportionate reduction in fertility that it causes, the total fertility rate (TFR) is a product of the four indexes times the total fecundity rate (TF): $TFR = TF \times C_m \times C_a \times C_c \times C_i$.

The Bongaarts indexes can be estimated from a series of reproductive measures. In Table 42, measures and indexes required for the Bongaarts model are presented for four points in time corresponding to the one-year periods on which estimates of total fertility derived from LS1, LS2, SOFT, and NS were based. These four surveys were chosen because they were all conducted by or in collaboration with the same organization, the Institute of Population Studies at Chulalongkorn University, and thus should be relatively comparable. Details on the calculations of the reproductive measures are provided in the notes to the table. Each is based in some way on the data reviewed in the previous chapters.

It is worth stressing that several of these measures--in particular those referring to contraceptive effectiveness, induced abortion, and to a lesser extent lactational infecundability--require that a variety of assumptions be made in order to convert the observed data into measures. The utility of the Bongaarts model, however, does not depend on the availability of absolutely precise estimates of the required measures. As long as reasonable though rough estimates are possible, the model can be quite useful in providing the orders of magnitude for the extent to which the four principal proximate determinants inhibit

TABLE 42 Estimates of Selected Reproductive Measures and Derived Indexes of Four Proximate Determinants According to Bongaarts's Model: Thailand

| | Year to Which Estimates Refer | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1968 | 1971 | 1974 | 1978 |
| **Measure** | | | | |
| Total fertility rate (TRF) | 6.12 | 5.30 | 4.52 | 3.38 |
| Total marital fertility rate (TFMR) | 9.23 | 8.07 | 7.03 | 5.49 |
| Current contraceptive use (u) | .14 | .26 | .37 | .49 |
| Contraceptive effectiveness (e) | .95 | .94 | .92 | .93 |
| Total induced abortion rate (TA) | .41 | .55 | .69 | .83 |
| Lactational infecundability (i) | 8.7 | 8.6 | 8.1 | 6.6 |
| **Model Indexes** | | | | |
| Index of proportions married | | | | |
| $C_m$ = TMFR/TFR | .66 | .66 | .64 | .62 |
| Index of contraception | | | | |
| $C_c$ = (1 - 1.08 ue) | .85 | .74 | .64 | .51 |
| Index of induced abortion | | | | |
| $C_a$ = TFR/(TFR + (.4 x (1+u) x TA)) | .97 | .95 | .92 | .88 |
| Index of lactational infecundability | | | | |
| $C_i$ = 20/(18.5 + i) | .74 | .74 | .75 | .82 |
| Combined indexes | | | | |
| $C_m \times C_c \times C_a \times C_i$ | .40 | .34 | .28 | .24 |

Notes: Where applicable, data for 1968, 1971, 1974, and 1978 are based on LS1, LS2, SOFT, and NS, respectively. TMF is calculated from Table 9 with estimated rates for the 15-19 age group, calculated as .75 times the rate of the 20-24 age group, substituted for the observed rates; u is based on age-standardized rates reported in Table 34. The estimates of e are derived from the distribution of methods presented in Table 36, applying an effectiveness rate of 1 for sterilization, .95 for IUD, .90 for pill and injection, and .70 for all others. These effectiveness rates were suggested by John Bongaarts (personal communication) and are adapted to data from the Philippines. TA for 1978 was based on a rate of 27.75 abortions to married women per 1,000 total women aged 15-44 derived by assuming that the national abortion rate for married women is three fourths the 37 per 1,000 women rate reported by Research and Evaluation Unit, National Family Planning Program (1979). The rate for 1968 was assessed to be half of this and to increase linearly to 27.75 by 1977. The mean number of months of lactational infecundability, estimated as 6.6 for 1978, was derived from the median value of 4.9 from CPS1 and the relationship between mean and median values of postpartum amenorrhea indicated in Lesthaeghe (1982:Figure II). Values for earlier years are proportional to the duration of breastfeeding based on the earlier surveys relative to the duration based on NS.

fertility, how their contributions change over time, and the contribution each makes to changes in fertility.

According to our calculations, marital structure alone reduces the total fecundity rate by a third or more during the decade under observation. The intercensal trends toward increasing proportions single and corresponding decreasing proportions of women currently married are reflected in the declining $C_m$ index. Thus the proportions married were inhibiting potential fertility somewhat more by the end of the decade under observation than at the start. As would be expected, the index of contraception declined very substantially, reflecting the increasing importance of contraceptive practice in inhibiting potential fertility. Indeed, the change in this index is by far the greatest of any of those shown. While in 1968 proportions married had the largest inhibiting effect, as indicated by the fact that $C_m$ has the lowest value of the four indexes, by 1974 contraception was of equal importance and by 1978 was of considerably greater importance. The index of induced abortion also declines, suggesting that abortion assumed an increasing importance in inhibiting potential fertility during the decade under observation, but this is a result of the largely arbitrary assumptions made about changes in induced abortion rather than being based on solid data. In contrast to the other three indexes, the index of lactational infecundability ($C_i$) increases in value, reflecting the decline in the duration of breastfeeding. Hence the importance of breastfeeding decreases as an inhibitor of potential fertility.

Given the straightforward multiplicative nature of Bongaarts's accounting scheme, it is a simple matter to estimate what fertility would be in the absence of any one or combination of the indexes. In addition to total fecundity (TF), which represents fertility in the absence of all four of the indexes, Table 43 presents three other measures of potential fertility: total marital fertility (TMF), which represents fertility if all women in the reproductive ages were married, i.e., in the absence of nonmarriage; total marital fertility in the absence of contraception but with abortion (TMFA); and total natural marital fertility (TNMF), which represents total marital fertility in the absence of both contraception and abortion. Total fecundity (TF) then represents total marital fertility in the absence of contraception, abortion, and breastfeeding. All four are easily

TABLE 43 Estimated Value of Selected Fertility Measures, Based on Bongaarts's Model, 1968-78: Thailand

| Fertility Measures | Years to Which Estimates Refer | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1968 | 1971 | 1974 | 1978 |
| Total fertility rate (with breastfeeding, induced abortions, use of contraception, and nonmarriage) | 6.12 | 5.30 | 4.52 | 3.38 |
| Total marital fertility rate with breastfeeding, induced abortions, and contraception ($TMF = TFR \div C_m$) | 9.23 | 8.07 | 7.03 | 5.49 |
| Total marital fertility rate with breastfeeding, induced abortions ($TMFA = TMF \div C_c$) | 10.82 | 10.96 | 11.05 | 10.74 |
| Total natural marital fertility rate with breastfeeding ($TNMF = TMFA \div C_a$) | 11.16 | 11.54 | 11.97 | 12.34 |
| Total fecundity rate ($TF = TNMF \div C_i$) | 15.18 | 15.63 | 15.92 | 15.43 |

estimated from the total fertility rate (TFR) and the other indexes as follows:

$$TMF = TFR \div C_m$$
$$TMFA = TMF \div C_c$$
$$TNMF = TMFA \div C_a$$
$$TF = TNMF \div C_i$$

Given the multiplicative relationship linking the measures of potential fertility, graphing them on a semi-logarithmic scale, as in Figure 6, is a convenient way to represent visually the relative importance of the fertility-inhibiting effect of each of the four principal proximate determinants responsible for the decline in total fertility during the decade under observation.

Bongaarts's accounting scheme also permits a decomposition of changes in total fertility into changes in the four principal proximate determinants separately, the remaining proximate determinants taken collectively, and an interaction factor (Bongaarts and Potter, forthcoming: Chapter 5). The decomposition of changes in total fertility between 1968 and 1978 is given in Table 44 and Figure 7. Results are expressed in terms of absolute change in total fertility, percent change, and the distribution of percent change. The results indicate that increases in contraceptive prevalence made a far greater contribution to the decline in total fertility then did any other variable, not only during the entire decade but also during each intersurvey interval. The

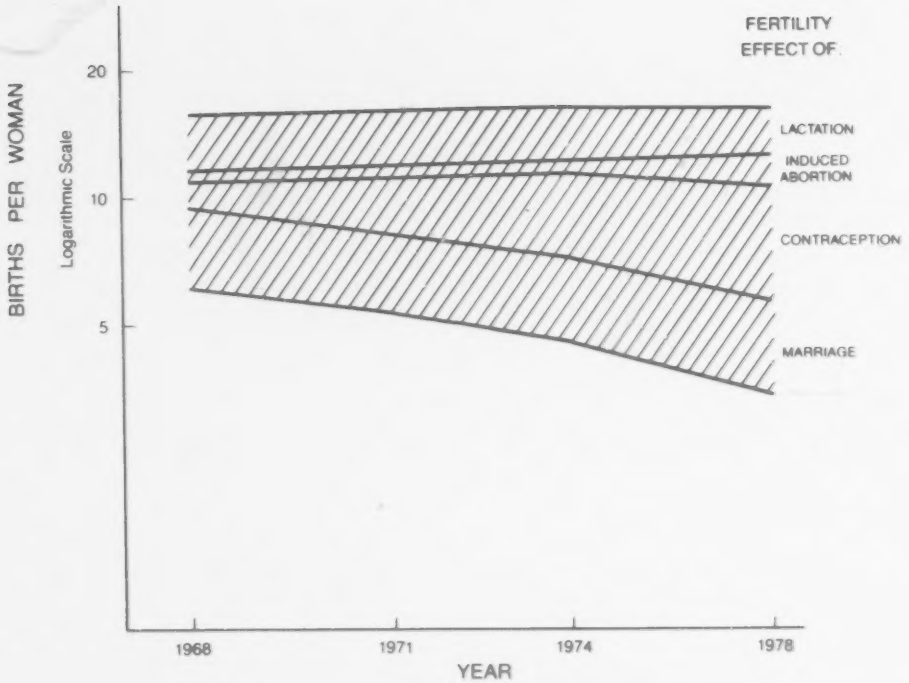



FIGURE 6 Changes in Selected Reproductive Measures Based on Bongaarts's Model, 1968-78: Thailand

Source: Table 43.

contributions to lower total fertility made by the assumed increase in abortion and the decrease in proportions married are of much smaller magnitudes. The results also indicate, however, that fertility would have increased during the decade by almost one fifth due to declining breastfeeding had the other variables remained constant. When the contribution of contraception and abortion are taken together, it is obvious that Thailand's reproductive revolution is largely the product of increasing deliberate marital fertility control with all other factors being of secondary importance.

TABLE 44 Decomposition of the Change in the Total Fertility Rate, Based on Bongaarts's Model, 1968-78: Thailand

| Factors Responsible for Fertility Change | Absolute Change in TFR | | | | Percent Change in TFR | | | | Distribution of Change in TFR | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1968 -71 | 1971 -74 | 1974 -78 | 1968 -78 | 1968 -71 | 1971 -74 | 1974 -78 | 1968 -78 | 1968 -71 | 1971 -74 | 1974 -78 | 1968 -78 |
| Proportion of women married | -.06 | -.11 | -.19 | -.43 | -0.9 | -2.1 | -4.2 | -7.1 | -6.7 | -14.3 | -16.7 | -15.8 |
| Contraceptive practice | -.84 | -.72 | -.89 | -2.45 | -13.7 | -13.6 | -19.7 | -40.1 | -102.2 | -92.5 | -78.2 | -89.5 |
| Induced abortion | -.13 | -.15 | -.24 | -.61 | -2.1 | -2.8 | -5.4 | -10.0 | -15.7 | -19.0 | -21.4 | -22.3 |
| Postpartum infecundability | +.02 | +.10 | +.27 | +.51 | +0.4 | +1.9 | +6.0 | +8.4 | +3.0 | +12.9 | +23.8 | +18.8 |
| Other proximate determinants | +.18 | +.10 | -.14 | +.10 | +3.0 | +1.9 | -3.1 | +1.6 | +22.4 | +12.9 | -12.3 | +3.6 |
| Interaction | -.01 | .00 | +.05 | +.15 | -0.1 | 0.0 | +1.2 | +2.4 | -0.7 | 0.0 | +4.8 | +5.4 |
| Total | -.82 | -.78 | -1.14 | -2.74 | -13.4 | -14.7 | -25.2 | -44.8 | -100 | -100 | -100 | -100 |

Note: Due to rounding, sum of individual factors may not add up to total.

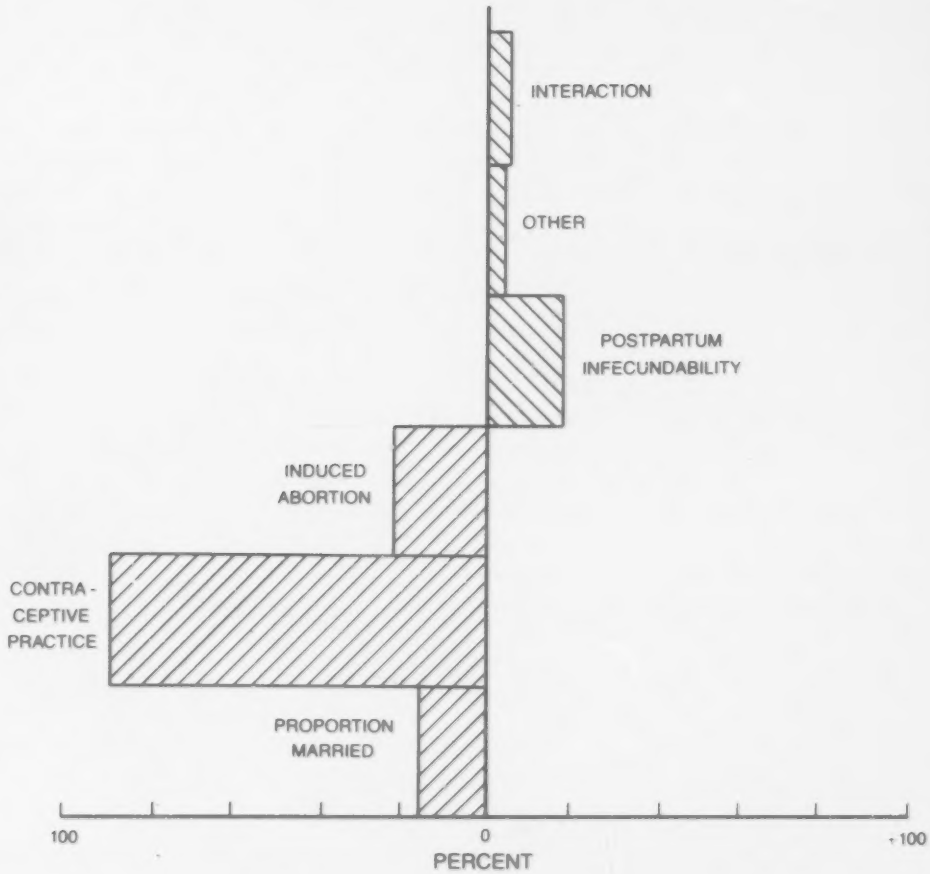



FIGURE 7 Decomposition of the Change in the Total Fertility Rate Based on Bongaarts's Model, 1968-78: Thailand

Source: Table 44.

# CHAPTER 7

# ATTITUDES TOWARD FAMILY SIZE, SEX COMPOSITION, AND FERTILITY CONTROL

Many of the studies reviewed in the previous chapters that provided behavioral data on fertility and birth control practices also attempted to explore preferences for family size and sex of children as well as attitudes toward fertility control with regard to both contraception and abortion. In this chapter we review the evidence from these studies and several others regarding desired family size, preferences for the sex composition of families, and attitudes toward birth control, including abortion. We do not include in this chapter, however, any extensive examination of the detailed attitudinal data that have been collected on the value and disvalue of children, available from the international Value of Children Study in which Thailand participated and to a lesser extent from the husband survey component of SOFT. Such a task is beyond the more limited scope of the present study as we have defined it.

## DESIRED FAMILY SIZE

Attempts to measure family-size preferences in developing countries have been incorporated in so-called KAP surveys (meaning Knowledge of, Attitudes toward, and Practices of family planning) since their inception. While a variety of more sophisticated approaches have been developed to measure family-size preferences, undoubtedly the most common source of such information is a relatively simple question asking for the number of children the respondent would have if he or she could have just the number wanted. In cases where the respondents are married, the question often is phrased in terms of how many children the respondents would like to have if he or she were starting

marriage over again. A number of surveys in Thailand included such questions and provide the basis for testing both the level and trend in desired family size over the period of the recent fertility decline.

The meaningfulness of responses to questions on desired family size, particularly in developing countries, have often been questioned. Especially in settings where the practice of birth control is rare or absent, family size may not be thought of as a matter of conscious rational choice and thus questions on desired family size may make little sense to the respondent. In a recent study of birth expectations, Placek and Hendershot (1981) propose a conceptual framework which contrasts situations dominated by fate and those dominated by control. In tne former, many couples may lack the knowledge of birth control, the planning orientation, or the social environment that leads to decision making about fertility, and children are viewed as the inevitable consequence of sexual activity. In contrast, the role of individual decision making becomes more salient as control over the environment and over one's "demographic fate" increases (Back, 1967). A similar argument can be made with regard to fertility preferences. Thus we might expect responses to desired family size questions to become increasingly meaningful with the spread of deliberate family limitation practices.

There is some evidence indicating that concern about limiting family size was not well entrenched in the thinking of much of the population at the onset but that it gained salience during the early stages of the recent fertility decline in Thailand. As part of the Rural Employment Survey in 1969, a sample of men with wives in the reproductive ages in northern Thailand were asked if they had ever discussed with their wives the number of children they wanted or the possibility of using birth control. Only 29 percent said they had ever discussed family size and only 17 percent had discussed the possible use of birth control (Jones and Rachapaetayakom, 1970). Similar questions were asked a sample of married men in the south a year later. Slightly more than a third had discussed family size and 17 percent had discussed birth control (Jones and Soonthornthum, 1971).

In LS1 and LS2 married women respondents were asked whether and how often they had discussed problems of having too many children with their husband, with relatives, or with friends or neighbors. Results are summarized in Table 45. Only a minority of women in LS1

TABLE 45 Percentage Discussing Problems of Excess Fertility Among Married Women in Reproductive Ages, Currently Living with Husband, by Residence: Thailand

| Reference Person and Frequency | Rural LSI 1969 | Rural LS2 1972 | Urban LS1 1970 | Urban LS2 1973 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| With Husband | | | | |
| Very Often | 8.6 | 7.3 | 6.5 | 10.7 |
| Fairly Often | 18.4 | 20.3 | 16.0 | 18.5 |
| Once or Twice | 10.9 | 12.9 | 23.2 | 21.2 |
| Never | 62.1 | 59.5 | 54.3 | 49.6 |
| Total Percent | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Total N | 952 | 1,269 | 1,458 | 527 |
| With Relatives | | | | |
| Very Often | 4.1 | 5.4 | 4.2 | -- |
| Fairly Often | 15.2 | 21.6 | 15.1 | -- |
| Once or Twice | 9.2 | 9.2[a] | 16.0 | -- |
| Never | 71.5 | 63.9 | 64.8 | -- |
| Total Percent | 100 | 100 | 100 | -- |
| Total N | 956 | 1,270 | 1,459 | -- |
| With Friends or Neighbors | | | | |
| Very Often | 4.8 | 7.7 | 8.6 | -- |
| Fairly Often | 16.8 | 25.7 | 20.3 | -- |
| Once or Twice | 10.7 | 12.8[a] | 17.5 | -- |
| Never | 67.8 | 53.8 | 53.7 | -- |
| Total Percent | 100 | 100 | 100 | -- |
| Total N | 947 | 1,270 | 1,455 | -- |

Notes: Totals exclude a small number of respondents coded as don't know, no answer. Reproductive ages were defined as 15-44 in the rural phase of LS1 and 15-49 in all others.

[a]Including a small number of respondents for whom the frequency of discussion is unknown but who indicated that they have discussed problems of excess fertility.

indicated they had discussed this matter with any of the specified reference persons. However, both the proportion who ever discussed such matters as well as the frequency of those discussions apparently increased between the two rounds of the survey, although more than half of rural women still indicated never having had any discussions by the time of LS2. As might be expected, given the lower fertility levels and greater use of contraception among urban women at the time of the surveys, discussions of the problems of having too many

children were more common among urban than rural respondents. Interestingly, for the rural sample, for which such a comparison is possible, the greatest increase in discussions is indicated with friends or neighbors and the least increase with husbands. According to an analysis of the early experience of organized family planning activities in Thailand, such person-to-person communication among friends and acquaintances proved an effective way of recruiting sizable numbers of acceptors (Rosenfield et al., 1973).

Since many of the same respondents were included in LS1 and LS2, the possibility exists that the first round of the survey itself in which questions related to the desired family size and birth control may have stimulated the increased discussion. Results from WRPS, an entirely different survey, however, suggest a continuation of the trend toward heightened salience of fertility limitation concerns. Of the rural sample of women interviewed in 1975, three years after the rural round of LS2, only 47 percent said they had never discussed their desired number of children with their husband. Moreover, this proportion was lower among younger women than older women: 42 percent of women aged 15-29 never discussed this matter with their husbands compared to 52 percent of women aged 30-44 (Deemar Company, Ltd., 1975). Again, this suggests a trend over time toward increased concern about the question of family size.

Several studies have attempted to evaluate the meaningfulness and quality of responses to questions on desired family size in Thailand. One common difficulty with such data, for example, is that many respondents answer the question with vague responses referring to fate, "up to God," and so on, rather than providing a specific number. Based on data from LS1, Knodel and Prachuabmoh (1973) point out that the vast majority of currently married Thai women did provide numerical responses to a question on family-size preferences. (For data on men, see Prachuabmoh et al., 1972:69). The LS1 data show that desired family size increases with age, a relationship found in all Thai surveys as well as typically in surveys in other countries. This undoubtedly reflects to some extent a tendency for respondents to rationalize the number of children they have when stating the numbers they would want if they were recently married. Nevertheless, analysis of LS1 data reveals that the vast majority of respondents indicated a preferred number that was different from the number of living children they had at

the time of interview. Moreover, the large majority of women with five or more living children stated a preferred number that was lower than their actual number of children. These results from LS1 are of particular interest since they refer to a period of time when contraceptive prevalence was still relatively low.

Of course, simply providing a numerical answer to a question on desired family size does not necessarily indicate that the response is meaningful. The very nature of the survey approach may encourage respondents to give numerical responses even if they are not particularly inclined to do so. For example, interviewers might encourage respondents to whom the question made little sense to provide some answer anyway. The findings of Lauro (1979), based on his study of a central Thai village, are interesting in this connection. He posed an open-ended question to villagers about their childbearing preferences and consciously attempted not to encourage numerical responses if they did not come forth spontaneously. Only about a quarter of the villagers responded to the question with exact numbers. However, a number of others were able to state a narrow range or to express a preference in terms of "few" or "many". Altogether, approximately 5 percent were able to give precise numbers or some indication of preferred size. Of those who did not give such responses, about a third, mostly unmarried females, indicated they had never thought about it; another third responded that the number of children they already had was enough; and the remainder indicated they either did not understand the question, did not know, or gave an ambivalent response. His findings thus indicate that very few married respondents said they had never thought about the question, even though this was a permissible answer (as indicated by the substantial number of unmarried women who provided it). Lauro does not provide information about the marital status of those who indicated they did not understand the question, did not know their desired number of children, or were ambivalent. Quite possibly these include a fair number of unmarried respondents as well. Finally, the substantial proportion who responded that the number of children they had was enough suggests that they clearly had some idea of how many children they wanted even if the questioning did not elicit numerical responses. Thus Lauro's results support the idea that Thai villagers currently have conscious desires about family size even if such desires are not necessarily conceptualized as a

single number. It should be noted that contraceptive prevalence was already fairly substantial in the study village at the time of his field work and thus his findings do not tell us the extent to which villagers would have been able to articulate family-size preferences prior to the spread of birth control.

Based on a comparison of responses in LS1 and LS2 for respondents included in both surveys, Knodel and Piampiti (1977) calculated the reliability ratios for a number of variables, including desired family size. The reliability ratio is intended to indicate the proportion of respondents giving the same answer after allowing for the fact that there would be some agreement simply by chance. The results indicate fairly low levels of individual consistency. Nonrandom consistency ranged from 19 percent for rural women to 29 percent for urban male household heads. Even so, responses on desired family size showed greater consistency than most other attitudinal variables, although considerably lower consistency than for most behavioral variables. Moreover, among rural women, urban women, and urban household heads, the majority of respondents who stated different ideal family sizes in the two survey rounds deviated by only one child in either direction. Only among rural household heads was the average discrepancy greater than one child. Viewed in this way, the amount of inconsistency seems considerably more moderate; also, allowances should be made for genuine change, given the three-year interval between the two surveys.

In the AFPH survey, women were not only asked the standard question on desired family size but were also asked a hypothetical question on the number of children they would recommend a daughter to have. Presumably the latter question would be less affected by attempts to rationalize the respondent's own existing number of children. The results of these two questions are compared in Table 46 by age of respondent. While for both questions the mean number of preferred children increases with age, at every age the number stated for the daughter is lower than for the respondent herself. The fact that this difference increases substantially with age strongly suggests that at least part of the increase with age in preferred number of children for self is due to rationalization of the number of living children. Possibly, the change in the recommended number of children for daughters with age is also a product of rationalization, although it could also reflect a trend toward smaller desired family sizes over time.

TABLE 46 Preferred Number of Children for Self and for Daughter, by Age and Residence, Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, 1979: Thailand

| Age | Rural | | | Urban | | | Total | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | For Self | For Daughter | Difference | For Self | For Daughter | Difference | For Self | For Daughter | Difference |
| 15-19 | 2.60 | 2.52 | .08 | (2.30) | (2.45) | (.15) | 2.58 | 2.52 | .06 |
| 20-24 | 2.72 | 2.68 | .04 | 2.64 | 2.52 | .20 | 2.72 | 2.66 | .06 |
| 25-29 | 2.99 | 2.75 | .24 | 2.89 | 2.70 | .29 | 2.99 | 2.75 | .24 |
| 30-34 | 3.41 | 2.88 | .53 | 2.99 | 2.73 | .69 | 3.38 | 2.87 | .51 |
| 35-39 | 3.59 | 3.00 | .59 | 3.06 | 2.89 | .70 | 3.56 | 2.99 | .57 |
| 40-44 | 3.64 | 3.01 | .63 | 3.44 | 2.94 | .70 | 3.62 | 3.00 | .62 |
| Total | | | | | | | | | |
| Unstandardized | 3.19 | 2.82 | .37 | 2.94 | 2.72 | .22 | 3.15 | 2.81 | .34 |
| Unstandardized for age | 3.21 | 2.83 | .38 | 2.94 | 2.73 | .21 | 3.19 | 2.82 | .37 |

Notes: The results refer to a sampling universe of 20 provinces; the urban sample refers to provincial urban only. The distribution of currently married women for the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis for the age standardization. Results in parentheses are based on fewer than 50 cases.

Source: AFPH.

Trends in family-size preferences are indicated in Table 47, which shows the mean preferred number of children across successive surveys for both married women and their husbands. In addition, separate results are shown for married women under age 25, on the assumption that the responses of younger married women are less affected by rationalization since most are still at an early stage of family building. Moreover, responses from the younger women should reflect the most recent trends in family-size preferences and thus be more indicative of fertility developments in the near future as these women pass through their remaining childbearing years. However, some caution is warranted when examining results for the younger women, since those who married at younger ages may not be representative of all women who eventually marry by the end of the reproductive span.[1]

The mean preferred number of children declined substantially during the period under observation both for women aged 15-44 and for women under 25. In each survey, the mean preferred number of children is lower for the younger women, but the declines are quite parallel, so the difference of about half a child indicated at the time of LS1 is still evident more than a decade later. Likewise, in every survey the number of children preferred by husbands is consistently higher than for their wives, but it declines in a remarkably parallel fashion. Both rural men and women consistently expressed higher preferred numbers of children than their urban counterparts throughout the period. In the countryside as well as in towns, younger women since 1979 indicated they want fewer than three children on the average, suggesting that fertility rates in the future should continue to decrease.

The mean preferred number of children remained constant for rural women between 1969 and 1972 and declined by only one tenth of a child for rural husbands, despite the fact that contraceptive usage increased substantially and marital fertility declined during the same period. Moreover, desired family size among currently married women aged 20-44 in the Potharam district was 3.8 in 1964 and 4.0 in 1965, thus averaging 3.9 or exactly the same as the figure for rural women reported approximately five years later in LS1 (Hawley and Prachuabmoh, 1971a:77).

The Thai experience is roughly similar to that of Taiwan and Korea, where initial increases in contraceptive practice and decreases in fertility took place in the absence of any noticeable concomitant change in desired

TABLE 47 Preferred Number of Children Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, and Husbands of Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, Standardized by Age, and Among Currently Married Women Under 25, by Place of Residence: Thailand

| | LS1 1969/70 | LS2 1972/73 | SOFT 1975 | NS 1979 | AFPH[a] 1979 | CPS2 1981 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rural | | | | | | |
| Women 15-44 | 3.9 | 3.9 | 3.7 | 3.3 | 3.2 | 3.0 |
| Husbands | 4.3 | 4.2 | 3.8 | 3.5 | -- | -- |
| Women under 25 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.1 | 2.9 | 2.7 | 2.6 |
| Urban | | | | | | |
| Women 15-44 | 3.6 | 3.4 | 3.3 | 3.0 | 2.9 | 2.5 |
| Husbands | 3.8 | 3.6 | 3.5 | 3.2 | -- | -- |
| Women under 25 | 3.0 | 2.9 | 2.9 | 2.8 | 2.6 | 2.2 |
| Total | | | | | | |
| Women 15-44 | 3.8 | 3.8 | 3.6 | 3.3 | 3.2 | 2.9 |
| Husbands | 4.2 | 4.1 | 3.8 | 3.4 | -- | -- |
| Women under 25 | 3.3 | 3.3 | 3.0 | 2.8 | 2.7 | 2.5 |

Notes: The age distribution of currently married for the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis of the age standardization. Results for husbands were standardized based on their wife's age.

[a]Results refer to a universe of 20 provinces; the urban sample is provincial urban only.

Sources: Knodel et al. (1980); Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong (1982); and unpublished tabulations.

family size; only after these changes had gained some momentum was an accompanying decline in the preferred number of children observed (Freedman et al., 1974; Ross and Kap Suk Koh, 1977). In all three countries the stated preferred number of children was substantially below the number of living children women had by the end of their childbearing years.

The experience of these countries as well as Thailand suggests that fertility desires may respond to the spread of family planning practices rather than vice versa. One possible interpretation of such a lag in attitudinal change relative to behavioral change is that only after the concept of family planning becomes widely known and contraceptive practice reaches a moderate level is it realistic for couples to start adjusting their preferred number of children downward. In the Thai experience, this situation may have been reached before 1970 among

urban women, thus permitting a steady decrease in the mean preferred family size over the period under observation. In the rural areas, where contraceptive knowledge was much more limited and contraceptive practice minimal at the beginning of the period, a short time lag may have been required before fertility desires started to decline in response to an increasing awareness of the possibility of limiting family size.

The distribution of responses to the question on family-size preferences as reported in LS1 and in the three most recent surveys reveals that a substantial change occurred over the decade (see Table 48). At the time of LS1, the majority of both rural and urban currently married women in the reproductive ages reported a desired family size of four or more children for themselves. This has decreased substantially while the proportion who expressed a preference for two or three children increased considerably. By 1981, a substantial majority of women indicate two or three as the desired number. Presumably the effect of rationalization of existing number of children on desired family size is minimized in the data on preferred number of children by women under 25 as well as in the data on the number of children that women in all reproductive ages would recommend for a daughter. In these cases, a modal preference for two children is clearly apparent both for rural and urban women. All surveys point to a clear avoidance of preferences for zero or one child. In both of these respects, family-size preferences among Thai women resemble those expressed recently in the United States.

The modal preference for two children is supported by evidence from other sources as well. In all three AMS subsamples of currently married women--in Bangkok generally, in a Bangkok slum, and in a semi-rural area--two children was also the most frequently expressed preference. Lauro (1979) also found that two was the most frequently cited preferred number of children in response to the open-ended question he used in his central Thai village study. In his study of unmarried adolescents, Muangman (1979) indicates that two was clearly the dominant preferred number of children.[2] Two was not only the modal preference but was the number stated by the majority (57 percent) of those who expressed a preference.

Table 49 shows the average preferred number of children by age of respondent among currently married

TABLE 48 Percent Distribution of Preferred Number of Children for Self and for Daughter Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44 (and under 25), by Place of Residence: Thailand

| Residence and Preferred Number of Children | For Self, Women 15-44 | | | | For Self, Women Under 25 | | | For Daughter, Women 15-44[a] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | LSI 1969/70 | NS 1979 | AFPH[b] 1979 | CPS2 1981 | LS1 1969/70 | NS 1979 | CPS2 1981 | AFPH[b] 1979 |
| Rural | | | | | | | | |
| 0-1 | 5.2 | 2.3 | 4.0 | 6.0 | 8.5 | 2.1 | 6.3 | 3.3 |
| 2 | 18.2 | 29.7 | 29.7 | 34.1 | 27.1 | 47.0 | 47.2 | 39.6 |
| 3 | 21.0 | 22.8 | 32.0 | 31.3 | 22.6 | 20.6 | 31.9 | 34.6 |
| 4+[c] | 55.5 | 45.2 | 34.3 | 28.6 | 41.8 | 30.3 | 14.7 | 22.5 |
| Total | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Urban | | | | | | | | |
| 0-1 | 3.9 | 4.4 | 4.8 | 10.1 | 7.2 | 2.1 | 15.0 | 3.2 |
| 2 | 21.2 | 34.5 | 34.2 | 46.6 | 29.8 | 53.2 | 51.0 | 40.8 |
| 3 | 23.5 | 22.6 | 34.3 | 27.3 | 27.5 | 17.0 | 27.7 | 38.9 |
| 4+[c] | 51.3 | 38.5 | 26.8 | 16.0 | 35.5 | 27.7 | 6.3 | 17.1 |
| Total | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Total | | | | | | | | |
| 0-1 | 5.0 | 2.7 | 4.1 | 6.7 | 8.2 | 2.1 | 7.6 | 3.4 |
| 2 | 18.7 | 30.5 | 29.9 | 36.3 | 27.6 | 47.9 | 47.8 | 39.7 |
| 3 | 21.5 | 22.8 | 32.2 | 30.6 | 23.5 | 20.1 | 31.2 | 34.9 |
| 4+[c] | 54.8 | 44.0 | 33.8 | 26.4 | 40.7 | 29.9 | 13.4 | 21.9 |
| Total | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |

[a]Including a small number of women 45 or older.
[b]Refers to a universe of 20 provinces; urban refers to provincial urban only.
[c]Including "as many as possible."

Source: Results for the CPS2 in part from Kamnuansilpa et al. (1982).

TABLE 49 Preferred Number of Children by Age and Place of Residence, Currently Married Women, Aged 15-44: Thailand

| | Rural | | | Urban | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Age Group | LS1 1969 | SOFT 1975 | NS 1979 | LS1 1970 | SOFT 1975 | NS 1979 |
| 15-19 | 3.67 | 2.90 | 2.84 | 2.93 | (2.67) | -- |
| 20-24 | 3.29 | 3.14 | 2.86 | 3.04 | 2.89 | (2.87) |
| 25-29 | 3.78 | 3.43 | 3.15 | 3.38 | 3.21 | 2.57 |
| 30-34 | 3.86 | 3.95 | 3.45 | 3.82 | 3.26 | 3.23 |
| 35-39 | 4.33 | 4.02 | 3.75 | 3.91 | 3.49 | 3.39 |
| 40-44 | 4.33 | 4.10 | 3.65 | 4.14 | 4.13 | 3.50 |
| 45-49 | -- | 4.60 | 4.16 | 3.87 | (4.35) | (3.61) |

Notes: Results based on at least 10 but fewer than 50 cases shown in parentheses; results based on fewer than 10 cases not shown.

women for three national surveys spanning the last decade. For each survey the desired family size increases with age for both rural and urban women and undoubtedly reflects the increasing importance of rationalization as women's actual family size increases. A comparison of the same age group across the three surveys reveals a pervasive decline in the desired family size regardless of age. Moreover, the magnitude of the decline shows little association with age.

We can approximate the experience of specific cohorts as they aged over the decade by comparing successive age groups across three surveys. As discussed in connection with similar comparisons with respect to contraceptive prevalence and expected number of children, some caution is required when interpreting results in this manner. In particular, problems arise because of sample fluctuation, selection for early marrying members of one cohort for younger age groups, and deviations from five-year multiples in the interval between the surveys. Contrary to the impression given by the cross-sectional association between age and desired family size, there are only limited instances of increases with age for particular cohorts. Indeed, desired family size is as likely to decline as to increase between the two surveys for any particular set of successive age groups. Apparently the declining trend in fertility desires over the period was

sufficient to counteract the tendency for desired family size to increase with age as a result of rationalization. The sharp increases in contraceptive prevalence with age for the same cohort, as indicated in the previous chapter, undoubtedly resulted in lower increments in family size with age than in the past. This in itself would also reduce the extent to which rationalization would lead to an increase in desired family size with age for the cohort experience compared to the cross-sectional age pattern.

## GENDER PREFERENCES

Anthropological studies make clear that children of both sexes are valued in Thailand although to some extent for different reasons. Only a son can serve time in the Buddhist monkhood, an action thought to bring considerable merit to his parents and a reason frequently cited as underlying the importance of having a son. On the other hand, in much of rural Thailand, couples typically reside with the wife's parents immediately following marriage, thus adding the labor of the son-in-law to that of the household. While such co-residence is often temporary, it is common for the youngest daughter in the family to live with her husband in the parental household permanently, to take care of her parents in their old age and eventually to inherit the house (Smith et al., 1968:120; de Young, 1966:23; Foster, 1975, 1978). Thus we might expect that many couples will feel it is important to have at least one child of each sex. In his study of a central Thai village, Riley (1972) points out that many women when asked about their ideal family size said they wanted two children and then volunteered the information "one boy and one girl." Although some anthropologists report son preference (e.g., Kingshill, 1960:187), more frequently they note that there is a lack of strong preference for sons (Hanks and Hanks, 1963; Blanchard, 1958:435). Occasionally, a preference for daughters is even suggested (Mougne, 1974, Part 3:19; Potter, 1976:127; Kemp, 1970:83).

In a comparative study of gender preference based on the Value of Children Study, Kuo (1980) judged the level of son preference to be intermediate in Thailand, below that characteristic of Korea or Taiwan but stronger than the Philippines or Indonesia. The data also confirm the impression of anthropologists that sons and daughters are valued to some extent for different reasons.

Statistical evidence on preferences for the sex composition of families has been examined in two studies based on LS1 and LS2 (Prachuabmoh et al., 1974; Knodel and Prachuabmoh, 1976). In this section we review some of the findings from these studies and update them with data from NS and, to a lesser extent, CPS2. In all but CPS2, both male household heads and married women were interviewed, thus permitting a comparison of gender preferences among men and women.

In the urban round of LS2 and NS, respondents were not only asked about their preferred number of children but also were asked how many children of each sex they would like to have if they could have just the number they wanted. Responses to these questions provide direct evidence on the preferred sex composition of the desired number of children. Analysis of these data must be limited to those respondents who were able to state not only a desired family size but to specify the number of sons and daughters they wanted. Fortunately, this includes the vast majority of respondents. Nevertheless, it should be recognized that some respondents who stated a desired family size but not a desired number of sons and daughters probably had no strong preferences regarding the sex of their children.

The percent distribution of desired number of sons and daughters is shown in Table 50 for currently married women in reproductive ages and for male household heads with wives in the reproductive ages. For both men and women in the sample and for both residence categories, the mean number of desired sons exceeds the mean number of desired daughters. The sex ratio of desired sons to desired daughters is substantially higher for men, however, than for women respondents, thus indicating a substantially stronger son preference among males. Similar results were also obtained in the Value of Children Study done in 1976: the sex ratio of desired children indicated by wives was 1.16 and by husbands was 1.39 (Kuo, 1980).

For both men and women in the NS sample, the ratio of desired sons to desired daughters is higher for the urban population, although the difference is much greater for males than for married women. This urban-rural difference undoubtedly results mainly from the substantial proportion of ethnic Chinese in the urban sample. Analysis of the urban round of LS2 indicates that the sex ratio of preferred children for ethnic Chinese women was 1.25 compared to 1.10 for ethnic Thai women and 1.50 for

TABLE 50 Percent Distribution of Desired Number of Sons, Desired Number of Daughters, and Ratio of Desired Number of Sons to Daughters, by Residence, Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44: Thailand

| | Urban | | | | Rural | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | LS2 1973 | | NS 1979 | | NS 1979 | |
| Desired Number | Sons | Daughters | Sons | Daughters | Sons | Daughters |
| Among Married Women | | | | | | |
| 0 | 3.0 | 5.3 | 2.1 | 6.0 | 1.7 | 2.4 |
| 1 | 34.3 | 41.8 | 43.4 | 50.2 | 39.4 | 46.8 |
| 2 | 47.6 | 44.9 | 43.8 | 38.1 | 45.4 | 40.6 |
| 3+ | 15.2 | 8.0 | 10.7 | 5.7 | 13.5 | 10.2 |
| Total percent | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Mean number | 1.81 | 1.58 | 1.68 | 1.45 | 1.78 | 1.61 |
| Sex ratio (m/f) | 1.15 | | 1.16 | | 1.10 | |
| Total N | 1,248 | | 281 | | 1,315 | |
| Among Male Household Heads | | | | | | |
| 0 | 1.7 | 7.1 | 0.7 | 11.5 | 0.5 | 4.9 |
| 1 | 20.4 | 44.9 | 28.1 | 44.6 | 32.0 | 44.9 |
| 2 | 51.3 | 39.0 | 51.1 | 41.0 | 46.1 | 39.3 |
| 3+ | 26.3 | 9.0 | 20.1 | 2.9 | 21.4 | 11.0 |
| Total percent | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Mean number | 2.61 | 1.54 | 2.11 | 1.36 | 2.01 | 1.63 |
| Sex ratio (m/f) | 1.40 | | 1.55 | | 1.23 | |
| Total N | 879 | | 139 | | 844 | |

Note: Respondents not stating numerical responses to questions on the desired number of sons and daughters are excluded from the table.

Source: LS2 results from Knodel and Prachuabmoh (1976).

ethnic Chinese male household heads compared to 1.36 for ethnic Thai household heads (see Knodel and Prachuabmoh [1976] for a discussion of definitions of ethnic Chinese in urban Thailand). Thus the sex ratio of desired children for urban ethnic Thais in LS2 is quite similar to results for rural respondents in NS, of whom only a small proportion would be ethnic Chinese. Results from the FPHH study for a large sample of married women in the northeast, the vast majority of whom were residing in rural areas, indicate a similar sex ratio of 1.11 for the reported desired number of sons and daughters (Porapakkham and Bennett, 1978:104-105).

Although a distinct son preference is apparent for male respondents, only a very small percentage of either men or women indicate they wish to have no daughters.[3] The sex ratio of desired children depends quite strongly on the total number of desired children. As Table 51 shows, respondents who wanted an even number of desired children overwhelmingly indicated an equal number of

TABLE 51 Percent Distribution of Desired Number of Sons, by Residence and Desired Number of Children Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, and Male Household Heads with Wives Aged 15-44 Who Expressed Desired Family Sizes of Five or Fewer Children, 1979: Thailand

| Residence and Desired Number of Children | Married Women: Desired Number of Sons 0 | 1 | 2 | 3+ | Total Percent | N | Male Household Heads: Desired Number of Sons 0 | 1 | 2 | 3+ | Total Percent | N |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Rural** | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 42 | 58 | -- | -- | 100 | 19 | 10 | 90 | -- | -- | 100 | 10 |
| 2 | 2 | 96 | 3 | -- | 100 | 397 | 0 | 92 | 8 | -- | 100 | 213 |
| 3 | 2 | 34 | 63 | 1 | 100 | 297 | 0 | 26 | 70 | 3 | 100 | 202 |
| 4 | 0 | 4 | 88 | 8 | 100 | 405 | 1 | 2 | 85 | 11 | 100 | 245 |
| 5 | 1 | 4 | 37 | 59 | 100 | 112 | 0 | 7 | 22 | 71 | 100 | 90 |
| **Urban** | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 40 | 60 | -- | -- | 100 | 10 | -- | -- | -- | -- | -- | 2 |
| 2 | 1 | 91 | 8 | -- | 100 | 101 | 3 | 80 | 17 | -- | 100 | 30 |
| 3 | 2 | 35 | 62 | 2 | 100 | 63 | 0 | 26 | 68 | 6 | 100 | 50 |
| 4 | 0 | 3 | 90 | 8 | 100 | 79 | 0 | 0 | 86 | 14 | 100 | 36 |
| 5 | 0 | 0 | 20 | 80 | 100 | 15 | 0 | 0 | 9 | 91 | 100 | 11 |

Notes: Respondents not stating numerical responses to questions on the desired number of sons and daughters are excluded from this table. Totals of percents may differ from 100 due to rounding.

Source: NS.

desired sons and daughters, while those who expressed an odd number of desired children were very likely to indicate a preference for more sons than daughters. Thus when couples express a desired family size of two--which appears, by the trends presented above, to be increasingly the case--they are typically thinking in terms of one son and one daughter. A preference for one child of each sex characterizes men almost as much as women and may help explain why very few respondents expressed a desired family size of fewer than two children.

Even when we combined respondents stating odd and even family sizes, results from NS show that the majority of both rural and urban women and rural men prefer equal numbers of sons and daughters, as shown in Table 52. Only among urban males do less than a majority opt for equal numbers of children of each sex. Clearly, however, when unequal numbers of sons and daughters are desired, respondents are more apt to opt for more sons than for more daughters. In brief, the attitudinal data on gender preferences suggest that some moderate son preference coexists with a more dominant preference for a balanced sex composition. Moreover, son preference is clearly stronger among men than among women.

Indirect evidence on the pattern of gender preferences in Thailand is provided in Table 53, which compares the

TABLE 52 Percent Distribution of Sex Composition Preferences by Residence Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, and Male Household Heads with Wives Aged 15-44: Thailand

| | Married Women | | Male Household Heads | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Preference (in percent) | Rural | Urban | Rural | Urban |
| More daughters than sons | 15.1 | 12.8 | 11.7 | 11.5 |
| Equal numbers | 59.1 | 60.5 | 52.8 | 39.6 |
| More sons than daughters | 25.9 | 26.7 | 35.4 | 48.9 |
| Total percent | 100 | 100 | 100 | 100 |
| Total N | 1,315 | 281 | 844 | 139 |

Note: Respondents not stating numerical responses to questions on the desired number of sons and daughters are excluded from this table.

Source: NS.

TABLE 53 Percent Not Wanting Additional Children by Number and Sex Composition of Living Children and by Residence Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, and Among Male Household Heads with Wives Aged 15-44, with Two or Three Living Children: Thailand

| | Rural | | | | | | Urban | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Married Women | | | | Male Heads | | Married Women | | | | Male Heads | |
| Number of Living Children and Sons | LS1 1969 | LS2 1972 | NS 1979 | CPS2 1981 | LS2 1972 | NS 1979 | LS1 1970 | LS2 1973 | NS 1979 | CPS2 1981 | LS2 1973 | NS 1979 |
| Two Children | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| No son | (26) | (41) | 41 | 52 | (46) | (47) | 32 | 38 | (60) | 67 | (43) | -- |
| 1 son | 52 | 53 | 64 | 71 | 64 | 64 | 45 | 49 | (76) | 76 | 58 | (73) |
| 2 sons | (59) | (41) | 54 | 55 | (58) | (66) | (35) | 26 | (38) | 72 | (54) | (40) |
| Three Children | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| No son | (72) | (62) | (79) | 71 | (61) | (71) | (42) | (48) | | (78) | (67) | |
| 1 son | (75) | 70 | 66 | 86 | 76 | 82 | 60 | 69 | | 88 | 78 | |
| 2 sons | 63 | 77 | 80 | 85 | | 74 | 63 | 73 | | | 89 | |
| 3 sons | (64) | (67) | (69) | 76 | | (88) | (56) | (61) | | | 87 | |

Notes: Couples who were sterilized but not asked if they desire more children are assumed not to want more. Results based on 10-49 cases shown in parentheses; results based on fewer than 10 cases not shown.

Sources: LS1 results from Prachuabmoh et al. (1974); LS2 results from Knodel and Prachuabmoh (1976);
CPS2 results from Kamnuansilpa, et al. (1982).

percentage not wanting additional children according to the sex composition of the family at the time of the survey. Since most of the respondents indicated a preference for either two or three children, analysis is limited to respondents with two or three living children. Results for both rural and urban married women with two children are consistent in showing that those with a balanced composition are the most likely to indicate they wish to stop childbearing. Among women with three children, the results are less clear but generally point to those with at least one child of each sex being more likely to want to stop childbearing than are women with all three children of the same sex. When women with two or three children who have all sons are compared with those who have all daughters, there is some tendency for high percentages of those with all sons to indicate a desire to stop childbearing, although several exceptions are apparent.

Results for male heads are reasonably consistent in indicating that those with two or three children and no sons are the least likely to want to stop childbearing. Apparently the desire to have at least one son is more pronounced for males. Results are rather mixed with regard to whether men with at least one son and one daughter or those with all sons are more likely to indicate that they wish to have no more children. In general, the results are reasonably consistent with the attitudinal data on desired number of sons and daughters, that is, they indicate a dominant preference among women for balance in the sex composition of children and a stronger son preference among men than among women.

Additional evidence of a pervasive desire for at least one child of each sex is provided by data from SOFT. Among currently married "exposed" women with two living children who wanted another child, all of those with no sons preferred their next child to be a son while only 2 percent of those with two sons did; in addition, exactly half of those with a son and a daughter preferred their next child to be a son (Institute of Population Studies and National Statistical Bureau, 1977, Volume II, Table 3.2.2A).

If preferences for sex composition of offspring have a measurable impact on fertility, then we would expect the practice of contraception to be related to the number of sons and daughters a couple already has (Freedman and Coombs, 1974). The results in this regard, presented in Table 54, do not show an entirely consistent pattern.

TABLE 54 Percent Currently Practicing Contraception by Number and Sex Composition of Living Children, by Residence, Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44 with Two or Three Living Children: Thailand

| Number of Living Children and Sons | Rural LS1 1969 | Rural LS2 1972 | Rural NS 1979 | Rural CPS2 1981 | Urban LS1 1970 | Urban LS2 1972 | Urban NS 1979 | Urban CPS2 1981 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Two Children | | | | | | | | |
| No son | (4) | (22) | 49 | 60 | 27 | 44 | (87) | 71 |
| 1 son | 10 | 30 | 65 | 70 | 28 | 44 | (88) | 76 |
| 2 sons | (9) | (21) | 55 | 65 | 18 | 44 | (47) | 69 |
| Three Children | | | | | | | | |
| No son | (33) | (52) | (67) | 57 | 33 | (43) | (74) | (78) |
| 1 son | (18) | 36 | 57 | 68 | 41 | 54 | | 79 |
| 2 sons | 13 | 31 | 69 | 68 | 43 | 65 | (70) | 81 |
| 3 sons | (7) | (33) | (50) | 65 | (42) | (49) | | (90) |

Note: Results based on 10 to 49 cases shown in parentheses; results based on fewer than 10 cases not shown.

Sources: LS1 results from Prachuabmoh et al. (1974); LS2 results from Knodel and Prachuabmoh (1976); CPS2 results from Kamnuansilpa et al. (1982).

Among rural women with two children in all surveys, and to a lesser extent among urban women, those with one son and one daughter were the most likely to be practicing contraception. Such a pattern is consistent with a preference for a balance of children of each sex. Both rural and urban women with three children, however, show little consistency in the relationship between contraceptive practice and number of sons.

One problem with using tabulations such as those in Tables 53 and 54 as indicators of the influence of sex preferences on fertility is that they ignore the heterogeneity of preferences within the population. As Tables 51 and 52 demonstrated, there is some variety in the preferred sex composition of families, although the extent of heterogeneity may be somewhat exaggerated due to rationalization.[4] To the extent that couples at a given parity have different preferences for combinations of sons and daughters, differences in the percentage not wanting more children or practicing contraception among those with different combinations of living sons and daughters would be reduced compared to a situation where

everyone shared the same sex composition preference (McClelland, 1979). In order to avoid this problem, we have compared the stated desired number of sons and daughters with the actual number of sons and daughters and classified respondents who had exactly the number of children they said they wanted according to whether or not the combination of sons and daughters was as they said they wanted. The fact that there is a considerably higher proportion of respondents whose actual and preferred sex composition of children agreed than would be expected by chance indicates that some rationalization of the existing sex composition exists. Couples that had not yet reached the desired number of children or who had exceeded the desired number were placed in separate categories.

The comparison of these categories with respect to the percentage of respondents in them who wanted no more children (both for married women and male heads of households) and with respect to the percentage using contraception (for married women) are shown in Table 55 for respondents with two, three, and four living children. Of particular interest is the comparison among women whose desired and actual number of children are the same, between those who also achieved their preferred sex compositions, and those who did not. In general, both for married women and for male heads of households, those who have both the desired number and desired combination of sons and daughters are more likely to indicate that they want no more children than those who have the desired number but not the desired sex composition. The differences, however, are not large, except for women with two children. Interestingly, it is only among women with two children that contraceptive use is higher among those who have both the desired number and sex composition than among those who have the desired number but not the desired sex composition. For women with three or four living children, the difference between these two groups is small and in the opposite direction from that expected. Thus it appears that it is mainly among couples who want two children that not having the desired sex composition leads to an additional child.

A more detailed analysis (not shown) reveals that virtually all the respondents who prefer two children but do not have their desired sex composition have either all sons or all daughters. Although the small number of cases precludes firm conclusions, the results suggest that some proportion of these respondents are motivated to go on to have an additional child in hopes of having

TABLE 55 Percent Wanting No More Children and Percent Currently Practicing Contraception, by Number of Living Children and Whether the Number and Sex Composition of Living Children Corresponds to the Desired Number and Sex Composition, Among Currently Married Women Aged 15-44 and Male Household Heads with Wives Aged 15-44, with Two, Three, or Four Living Children: Thailand

| Comparison of Living Children with Desired Number and Sex Composition | Percent Wanting No More Children | | | | | | Percent Using Contraception | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Married Women by Living Children | | | Female Heads by Living Children | | | Married Women by Living Children | | |
| | 2 | 3 | 4 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 2 | 3 | 4 |
| Number not reached | 33 | 46 | (50) | 39 | 65 | (54) | 52 | 44 | (53) |
| Number but not sex composition reached | (66) | (91) | 93 | (85) | (93) | (91) | 62 | (77) | 68 |
| Both number and sex composition reached | 95 | 95 | 99 | 91 | (93) | (98) | 79 | 73 | 66 |
| Number exceeded | -- | 91 | 97 | -- | (88) | (93) | -- | 79 | 76 |

Notes: Results based on 10 to 49 cases are shown in parentheses; results based on fewer than 10 cases not shown. Respondents not stating numerical responses to questions on the desired number of sons and daughters are excluded from this table.

Source: NS.

one of the opposite sex, particularly if they have no sons. Of respondents who have three or more children, the motivation not to go beyond the desired number seems to largely overwhelm sex composition considerations.[5] Finally, the fact that a considerable proportion of respondents whose number of living children is less than the preferred number of children nevertheless indicate that they wish to have no more children underscores the hypothetical nature of the question on preferred number of children. Quite possibly, respondents are thinking in terms of an ideal situation in which constraints on the number of children are much less than they feel actually exist in their current situation.

In sum, the direct and indirect evidence on gender preferences in Thailand suggests that there are differences in the attitudes of husbands and wives; that the dominant preference is probably for at least one child of each sex; that there is also some son preference, especially among men; and that avoidance of exceeding the desired family size is more important that achieving a desired sex composition, except perhaps for a sizable proportion of those who wish to have one son and one daughter initially but whose first two children are of the same sex. The evidence is also consistent with the suggestion that the desire for both a son and a daughter tends to set a lower limit on the extent to which family size can decline.

## ATTITUDES TOWARD BIRTH CONTROL

A number of different questions have been included in the various surveys that have attempted to determine the attitude of the Thai population toward the use of deliberate fertility control within marriage. In general, they indicate overwhelming approval of the use of contraception but at least an overt disapproval of abortion.

Buddhism as adhered to in Thailand apparently presents no obstacles to the acceptance and practice of contraception and in some respects may indirectly facilitate it. Buddhism contains no scriptural prohibitions against contraception nor is Buddhist doctrine particularly pronatalist (Ling, 1969). Thai Buddhism stresses the role of the individual in seeking his or her own liberation which may indirectly contribute to tolerance and acceptance of practices designed to control the individual's fertility (Lauro, 1979).

Several recent studies of Buddhist monks confirm that there is little religious opposition to contraception. Among a reportedly representative national sample of almost 2,000 monks, 83 percent indicated they were supportive of the government's pro-family planning policy and only 5 percent indicated they were not supportive, with the remainder not having an opinion (Muangman and Hirunraks, 1980). The same study found that almost four out of five monks agreed that married couples should practice family planning and only 6 percent disagreed (Kanchanasinith et al., 1980). In the same study, 100 Muslin imams were also interviewed. Approval was slightly lower among the imams although still quite high, with 71 percent agreeing and 10 percent disagreeing that married couples should practice family planning.

Lay persons also apparently do not feel that contraception is against their religion. Among a sample of married men in southern Thailand, results of a 1970 survey indicate that 86 percent of Buddhists and 82 percent of Moslems said contraception was not against their religion; only 20 percent of the Buddhists and 6 percent of the Moslems said contraception was counter to their religions, with the remainder not indicating an opinion (Jones and Soonthornthum, 1971).

Religious objections to abortions are quite different. In particular, the Buddhist proscription against taking life appears to directly contravene abortion (Ling, 1969). The study of religious leaders found that 98 percent of both the monks and imams perceived induced abortion as being against religious doctrine. Nevertheless, as Lauro (1979:267) points out, the moral issue of abortion is confounded by the general Buddhist notion that the seriousness of taking a life increases with the size and complexity of the life being taken and by the general cultural proclivity for leaving decisions to individuals.

Given the rapid increase in contraceptive prevalence over the last decade, it is hardly surprising that Thais are favorably disposed toward the idea of family limitation and the practice of birth control within marriage. Lauro (1979:230-231) was impressed, even surprised, at the pervasiveness and depth of interest in matters of modern birth control among women in the central Thai village in which he did his fieldwork. However, anthropological accounts based on fieldwork prior to the recent upsurge in birth control activity would probably not have led one to expect that the Thai population would be so willing to adopt family planning practices. On the other

hand, the Potharam Study conducted in 1964 did clearly point to fairly widespread interest in family planning and motivation to control fertility in that rural district (Hawley and Prachuabmoh, 1971b). This finding has been confirmed in the national studies that took place later.

In the Potharam Study and both rounds of LS, respondents were asked the following rather typical question used in KAP surveys about their attitude toward the idea of family planning: "If you knew of a simple and harmless way to avoid becoming pregnant too often or having too many children (more than you want) or having children too close together, would you be in favor of a married couple using such a method?" The purpose of the question was to define the basic idea of family planning for the respondents, in case the concept was foreign to them, and then to elicit approval or disapproval. The question is indirect in that it does not mention family planning or contraception per se and indeed is rather cumbersome. There is ample evidence that the wording of the question may have led to some confusion in interpreting its meaning on the part of respondents. For example, in the Potharam Study, some women indicated disapproval in response to the question and yet indicated in response to another question that they wanted to do something to regulate the number of children they had and wanted to learn about methods of family planning (Hawley and Prachuabmoh, 1971b:33). In LS1, substantial proportions of women who indicated they did not approve of family planning in response to this question were themselves currently practicing or intending to use contraception (Knodel and Pitaktepsombati, 1973).

While results from LS1 indicated that the majority of married women in reproductive ages expressed approval in response to this question, close to a third of rural women and about one in four urban women indicated they did not approve (Knodel and Pitaktepsombati, 1973). The approval rate was about the same for rural women in LS2 three years later but showed a noticeable increase for urban women (Knodel and Pitaktepsombati, 1975). Nevertheless, approximately 18 percent of ever-married urban women who expressed a definite opinion indicated disapproval in response to this indirect question. A direct question, however, was also included in the urban phase of LS2; it asked simply: "Do you approve of family planning?" About 40 percent of ever-married women indicated they either did not understand the question or were coded "don't know, no answer." Of those who pro-

vided a definite opinion, 93 percent indicated approval and only 7 percent indicated disapproval. Moreover, of those who indicated disapproval to the indirect question, only 11 percent indicated disapproval to the direct question; twice a many indicated approval, and the large majority either indicated they did not understand or were coded "don't know, no answer." It is also interesting to note that the percent indicating incomprehension or giving no answer to the direct question increased sharply with age from less than one in four for ever-married women under 30 to half of women aged 45-49 and well over half for older women. This may reflect a time trend in which recent cohorts entering the reproductive years were increasingly aware of the concept of deliberate fertility control within marriage.

In the urban phase of LS2, male household heads were also asked a direct question about their approval of family planning and in addition were asked whether they approved of their wives practicing family planning. Although a substantial minority indicated they did not understand the question or did not provide an explicit opinion, of those who did, well over 90 percent indicated approval to both questions.

For the reasons discussed above, we believe that the responses to the standard indirect question tend to underestimate the extent of approval or at least receptivity to the idea of family planning in Thailand in these earlier surveys and that the vast majority of respondents who understood the concept approved of it. In subsequent surveys, direct questions were asked typically, as it was no longer felt that the concept of family planning needed to be explained, given the rapid increase in knowledge of contraceptive methods and prevalence of contraceptive use. Results from several of these surveys are indicated in Table 56 and are consistent in indicating the widespread approval of birth control among both men and women and in both rural and urban sectors of the population.[6]

An even more consistent finding in survey results in Thailand is an overt disapproval of abortion, except under special circumstances. More than 90 percent of women interviewed in the Potharam Study in 1964 indicated disapproval of abortion in response to a question which did not specify any circumstances (Hawley and Prachuabmoh, 1971b). In a survey of the Bangkok suburb of Bangkhen in 1968, only 4 percent favored abortion if the women simply wanted no more children, although 92 percent favored it

TABLE 56 General Attitudes Toward the Use of Birth Control as Reported in Selected Surveys: Thailand

| | Approve | Dis-approve | Depends | Don't Know | Total Percent | N |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| WRPS, 1975: Rural | | | | | | |
| Married men | 76 | 15 | | 8 | 100 | 925 |
| Married women | 86 | 9 | | 6 | 100 | 425 |
| Total | 79 | 13 | | 8 | 100 | 1,350 |
| NS, 1979: Ever-Married Women | | | | | | |
| Rural | 81 | 14 | 2 | 3 | 100 | 2,154 |
| Urban | 82 | 12 | 4 | 2 | 100 | 444 |
| Total | 81 | 14 | 2 | 3 | 100 | 2,598 |
| AFPH, 1979: Currently Married Women | | | | | | |
| Rural | 85 | 8 | 4 | 3 | 100 | 2,240 |
| Urban | 88 | 6 | 5 | 2 | 100 | 747 |
| Total | 86 | 7 | 4 | 3 | 100 | 2,987 |
| CPS2, 1981: Ever-Married Women | | | | | | |
| Own opinion | 96[a] | 2 | 1 | 1 | 100 | 7,038 |
| Perception of husband's view | 87 | 5 | 0 | 8 | 100 | 7,038 |

[a]Includes all women currently using contraception.

Sources: Deemar Company, Ltd. (1975); Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong (1982); and unpublished tabulations.

under circumstances where the birth endangered the life of the mother (Cowgill et al., 1969). In a national rural sample interviewed in 1972, only 19 percent of married women indicated approval of abortion if the couple did not want or could not afford another child (Burnight and Leoprapai, 1975). The most recent figures of a national sample come from NS and indicate very low percentages of ever-married women approving abortion as a means of avoiding a birth under normal circumstances. For example, only 6 percent of either urban or rural women indicated approval under conditions of contraceptive failure. However, a large majority indicated approval under special circumstances such as danger to the mother's health and rape (Institute of Population Studies, 1981).

The lack of public approval of abortion, as indicated by opinion survey evidence, seems to be inconsistent with indications that the practice of abortion is rather widespread. As Riley (1972:227) points out, while inducing abortion is theoretically considered a moral wrong, it is also recognized as a practice that might be carried out by a reasonable person under certain circumstances. The opinion surveys also show clearly that approval of abortion is highly dependent on the severity of the circumstances described in the question (see review of studies by Baker and Clinton, 1981). Quite likely the same set of circumstances when confronted in reality by the respondent herself may be perceived as considerably more severe and thus justifying abortion than when posited in the abstract in a survey question. Given the strong emphasis that individuals are responsible for their own fate in Thai culture, there may be considerably more social tolerance, if not approval, of abortion than indicted by the overwhelming disapproval expressed in response to opinion questions. Thus it is of interest that despite the widespread perception that abortion is being used with increasing frequency in Thailand as a birth control measure, neither the Buddhist hierarchy nor the government has spoken out strongly on this issue.[7] Apparently abortion is not the highly salient moral issue in Thailand that it is in some countries (Lauro, 1979).

NOTES

[1]Responses of currently married women, 15-44, whose present marriage is of less than five years duration are also less likely to be affected by rationalization, are

unlikely to be affected by selectivity and reflect very recent trends. Results based on LS1, NS, and CPS2 for these women show trends very similar to married women under 25:

| | LS1 1969/1970 | NS 1979 | CPS2 1981 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Rural | 3.3 | 2.8 | 2.5 |
| Urban | 3.0 | 2.6 | 2.2 |
| National | 3.2 | 2.8 | 2.4 |

[2]Although Table 61 in Muangman (1979:15), which presents the relevant data, is labeled "Expected Number of Children," the text describing the findings suggests the question on which it is based referred to desired family size. In any event, for unmarried Thai adolescents, all of whom presumably have not yet started their reproductive careers, the distinction between expected and desired family size is probably unimportant.

[3]Rationalization of existing children might reduce the percent expressing a preference for no son or no daughter. However, NS national data on the preferred number of sons and daughters among currently married women aged 15-44 and married less than five years and among male household heads with wives aged 15-44 and married less than five years (groups presumably much less prone to rationalization) indicates similarly low percentages stating such a preference (provided they wanted at least one child):

| | Percent Wanting No | |
|---|---|---|
| | Sons | Daughters |
| Women | 1.8 | 3.5 |
| Men | 0.0 | 9.1 |

[4]For example, even if everyone had exactly the same preference for a particular combination of sons and daughters at the onset of their reproduction, if some of them later rationalized that they wanted the sex

composition that they attained, even though it was different from the one that they had initially wanted, this rationalization would lead to the appearance of heterogeneity in terms of preferences when in fact none existed initially.

[5]For couples who want at least one child of each sex and who have only children of one sex, having an additional child gives them a chance to meet the goal of having at least one child of each sex even if the resulting sex composition would be different from the one initially stated, given the necessity of going beyond the initial number of desired children. If the actual sex composition differs from the desired sex composition in any other way, it is not a simple matter to determine whether having an additional child could necessarily improve on the existing composition. Moreover, as McClelland (1979) points out, couples actually risk worsening the sex composition by having an additional child even when their actual sex composition is different from their desired composition.

[6]Although the wording of the questions was not identical, familiarity with the concept of family limitation or birth control was probably sufficiently widespread by the mid-1970s so that any reasonable wording directly asking about birth control or family planning would have been understood by the large majority of respondents and would have elicited a similar response.

[7]An attempt in 1981 to "liberalize" Thailand's restrictive abortion law was defeated in Parliament in 1981.

# CHAPTER 8

## THE PERVASIVENESS OF REPRODUCTIVE CHANGE DIFFERENTIALS BY EDUCATION, INCOME, AND RELIGION

Our examination of fertility trends, proximate variables, and family-size preferences clearly indicates that the current fertility transition taking place in Thailand is at least as much a rural as an urban phenomenon. Thus, reproductive change in Thailand appears to have permeated at least one very fundamental societal division. In this chapter, we explore further the pervasiveness of reproductive change by examining differentials in fertility, preferred numbers of children, and several proximate variables according to educational attainment, income, and religion. These social, economic, and cultural dimensions were chosen in part because of availability of information on them in a number of the fertility-related surveys. But more importantly, these variables represent basic characteristics that are generally assumed to affect a wide variety of social behavior and in particular are commonly expected to differentiate with respect to fertility-related attitudes and actions. Our goal in this chapter is primarily a descriptive one. We do not attempt to explain such differentials as they exist in Thailand except to a very limited extent within the proximate determinants framework. Rather, the main purpose is to determine how widespread the transformation of reproductive behavior and attitudes has become within the relatively brief time span of Thailand's fertility transition.

### EDUCATIONAL DIFFERENTIALS

Besides place of residence, probably no other social variable has been as frequently associated with fertility differentials as education. It is generally

expected that at any given point in time, fertility and educational levels are inversely related and that during the fertility transition, better educated couples lead in the adoption of contraception and reduction of fertility. In addition, a common expectation is that improvements in the educational levels of the population in the course of socioeconomic development will contribute to declining fertility.

In Thailand, primary education comprises four years for the lower grades and three years for the upper grades. Relatively few women in the reproductive ages, especially in rural areas, have received more than a lower primary education, but at the same time there has been steady progress toward increasing proportions receiving a full four years of schooling. Until recently, four years of education was compulsory. The requirement has recently been extended to six years, but the extension is an ongoing process rather than a sudden universal change.

The implementation of this change, moreover, has not yet had much impact on the educational distribution of women in the reproductive ages in rural Thailand, the large majority of whom have attended school exactly four years. According to the 1960 census, only 4 percent of women 20-44 years of age had received more than four years of schooling. This increased to 8 percent by 1970 and to 11 percent by 1975. In 1970, 28 percent of women 20-44 had less than four years of schooling while fully 65 percent reported having exactly a fourth-grade education. The substantial increases over time in the proportion of women who received at least a fourth-grade education is evident in the comparisons of different age cohorts from the 1970 census. For example, the percentage of women who completed at least fourth grade was only 16 percent for women at all ages 45 and above, 54 percent for the 40-44 age group, and 88 percent for the 15-19 age group.

In analyzing data from the 1-percent sample of the 1960 census, Goldstein et al. (1972) found an inverse relationship between educational attainment and cumulative fertility in Thailand. The number of children ever born was lower for literate women in both rural and urban residence categories and a woman's educational attainment was inversely related to her fertility. Likewise, in analyzing the 2-percent sample from the 1970 census, Chamratrithirong and Boonpratuang (1977) found a substantial negative relationship of children ever born to educational attainment in all regions of Thailand and in both rural and urban places. A comparison of these two

studies suggests that educational differentials in completed fertility had increased between the two censuses.[1]

Table 57 presents several measures reflecting fertility and family-size preferences for currently married Thai women according to their educational attainment. Subdivision of the samples into educational categories reduces substantially the number of women on which each particular measure is based and thus increases the likelihood that the results will be affected by sampling error. This is particularly true for the highest educational category in the rural samples since so few rural women attended school past the basic four years of lower primary education. In addition, there are substantial differences in the distribution of educational attainment between the rural and urban sectors of the population, which should be kept in mind. Generally, substantially larger proportions of urban women fall in the highest educational attainment categories and substantially smaller proportions in the lowest. Given the recent trends toward increasing education, the age distributions within each educational attainment category differ considerably. In order to control for this, all results are standardized for age.

Results referring to children ever born are shown for LS1, NS, and CPS2. The same inverse relationship between cumulative fertility and education found in the census data referred to above is evident in the survey results. However, there is no sign of contraction in the differentials over time, although firm conclusions in this respect are not justified, given the problems with sample size. Educational differentials in the average number of living children are slightly less pronounced than for children ever born, especially for the rural sample, reflecting the higher child mortality experienced by women in the lower educational categories.

An inverse association between education and the expected number of children is apparent for all surveys shown. For the rural sample, the smallest differences are evident for the two earliest surveys. The most recent survey indicates that rural women with less than a fourth-grade education expected almost one child more than women with more than four years of schooling. The difference is even more pronounced for urban women. While also generally inverse for the preferred number of children, the relationship is considerably less pronounced. Data on the preferred number of children for

TABLE 57 Mean Number of Children Ever Born, Living Children, and Marital Fertility Index ($I_g'$), for Currently Married Women Aged 15-49; and Mean Number of Children Expected, Preferred for Self, and Preferred for Daughter, for Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, Standardized for Age, by Educational Attainment and Place of Residence: Thailand

| | Place of Residence and Number of Years of Schooling | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Rural | | | Urban | | |
| | 0-3 | 4 | 5+ | 0-3 | 4 | 5+ |
| Children Ever Born | | | | | | |
| LS1 1969/70 | 4.5 | 4.2 | (3.5) | 4.0 | 3.6 | 2.6 |
| NS 1979 | 4.1 | 3.6 | 2.2 | 3.6 | 3.0 | 2.4 |
| CPS2 1981 | 3.8 | 3.4 | 2.7 | 3.3 | 2.8 | 1.9 |
| Living Children | | | | | | |
| LS1 1969/70 | 3.7 | 3.6 | (3.4) | 3.7 | 3.3 | 2.5 |
| NS 1979 | 3.6 | 3.2 | 2.1 | 3.5 | 2.8 | 2.3 |
| CPS2 1981 | 3.3 | 3.1 | 2.5 | 3.1 | 2.6 | 1.9 |
| Expected Number | | | | | | |
| LS1 1969/70 | 4.6 | 4.4 | (4.1) | 4.4 | 4.0 | 3.7 |
| LS2 1972/73 | 4.0 | 3.9 | 3.7 | 4.4 | 3.8 | 3.1 |
| SOFT 1975 | 4.2 | 4.0 | 3.1 | 3.9 | 3.4 | 3.1 |
| CPS1 1978/79[a] | 3.9 | 3.6 | 3.3 | 3.5 | 3.2 | 2.7 |
| NS 1979 | 4.1 | 3.8 | 2.8 | 4.0 | 3.4 | 2.7 |
| AFPH 1979[b] | 4.0 | 3.7 | 3.3 | 3.9 | 3.4 | 2.8 |
| CPS2 1981 | 3.7 | 3.4 | 2.9 | 3.4 | 2.9 | 2.3 |
| Preferred Number | | | | | | |
| LS1 1969/70 | 4.1 | 3.8 | (4.0) | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.2 |
| LS2 1972/73 | 4.0 | 3.9 | 3.8 | 3.6 | 3.5 | 3.0 |
| SOFT 1975 | 3.8 | 3.6 | 3.2 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.1 |
| NS 1979 | 3.5 | 3.3 | 2.7 | 3.7 | 2.9 | 2.7 |
| AFPH 1979[b] | 3.3 | 3.2 | 2.9 | 2.9 | 3.0 | 2.7 |
| CPS2 1981 | 3.2 | 3.0 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 2.6 | 2.3 |
| Preferred Number for Daughter | | | | | | |
| AFPH 1979[b] | 2.9 | 2.8 | 2.7 | 2.8 | 2.8 | 2.6 |
| $I_g'$ (for 2 years prior to survey)[c] | | | | | | |
| LS1 1969/70 | .67 | .69 | (.50) | .52 | .50 | .39 |
| LS2 1972/73 | .62 | .58 | (.58) | .53 | .45 | .44 |
| SOFT 1975 | .56 | .54 | .45 | .47 | .43 | (.51) |
| NS 1979 | .48 | .39 | (.38) | (.31) | .43 | (.46) |
| $I_g'$ (for years prior to survey) | | | | | | |
| CPS2 1981 | .47 | .46 | .49 | .47 | .45 | .49 |

TABLE 57 (continued)

Notes: Expected number of children equals the number of living children plus the additional children desired. The age distribution of currently married women in the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis for the age standardization. Results for children ever born and living children in parentheses are based on fewer than 50 cases; $I_g'$ results shown in parentheses are based on an average of fewer than 50 woman years of observation per five-year group.

[a]Urban sample refers to Bangkok metropolitan area.
[b]Results refer to a universe of 20 provinces; the urban sample refers to provincial urban only.
[c]Not directly comparable to $I_g'$ results in Tables 5 or 6 that are based on births during one year prior to the survey.

Sources: Knodel et al. (1980); Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong (1982); and unpublished tabulations.

daughters collected in the AFPH survey show almost no association between family-size preference and education, suggesting that in the absence of rationalization, the association between education and preferred number for self might be even weaker, although it should be noted that even preferred number for self shows a particularly weak relationship in the AFPH results.

Current marital fertility as measured by $I_g'$ is also inversely related to education for rural women in most surveys, but almost no relationship is evident in results from CPS2, the most recent survey. Less consistency in terms of an inverse relationship is indicated for urban women, and again the CPS2 results suggest little association with education. Moreover, preliminary results from NES, a large survey of northeastern women, indicate almost no educational differential in current marital fertility, with $I_g'$ for 1979 equaling .46, .48, and .47 for women in the three successive educational categories.

Perhaps the most important picture emerging from the results on educational differentials is that the recent transformation in reproductive behavior and family-size preferences in Thailand is occurring in all educational categories. Less-educated women have participated in the changes in the last decade at least as much as better educated women.

Educational differentials are available for several of the principal proximate variables. Table 58 presents selected measures of nuptiality by educational attainment based on the 2-percent sample of the 1970 census, while Figure 8 shows the percentage single by age for men and women at different educational levels.

TABLE 58 Selected Measures of Nuptiality by Educational Attainment, 1970: Thailand

| Nuptiality Measure | No Schooling | Primary | Secondary | University |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Singulate Mean Age at Marriage | | | | |
| Men | 24.5 | 24.3 | 26.7 | 29.5 |
| Women | 20.2 | 21.7 | 25.4 | 29.2 |
| Percent Single 40-44 | | | | |
| Men | 5.4 | 2.2 | 5.4 | 3.6 |
| Women | 3.9 | 3.5 | 11.1 | 31.7 |
| Marital Status Indexes | | | | |
| $I_m$ (married) | .770 | .646 | .317 | .291 |
| $I_s$ (single) | .148 | .305 | .661 | .689 |
| $I_d$ (divorced) | .016 | .011 | .004 | .002 |
| $I_p$ (separated) | .021 | .020 | .013 | .014 |
| $I_w$ (widowed) | .044 | .018 | .004 | .004 |

Note: Primary refers to grades 1-7, secondary to grades 8-12.

Source: Adapted from Chamratrithirong (1980).

In most populations, higher educational attainment is associated with later ages at marriage, and Thailand is no exception in this respect (see, e.g., Durch, 1980). For both men and women, the differences in the singulate mean age at marriage are small between those with no schooling and those with primary schooling, but higher levels of education are associated with considerably later ages at marriage. The impact is greater for women than for men. Permanent nonmarriage as measured by the percent single at ages 40-44 show little association with education for men but show a marked increase with greater education for women for levels past primary schooling. As Figure 8 shows, educational differentials in the percent single at all ages are more pronounced for women than for men, and a considerable proportion of women with secondary and particularly with university education never marry.

These same differences are reflected in the marital status indexes $I_m$ and $I_s$ and suggest that nuptiality differences by educational categories can have very substantial impacts on educational differences in cumulative fertility. There is, of course, no guarantee

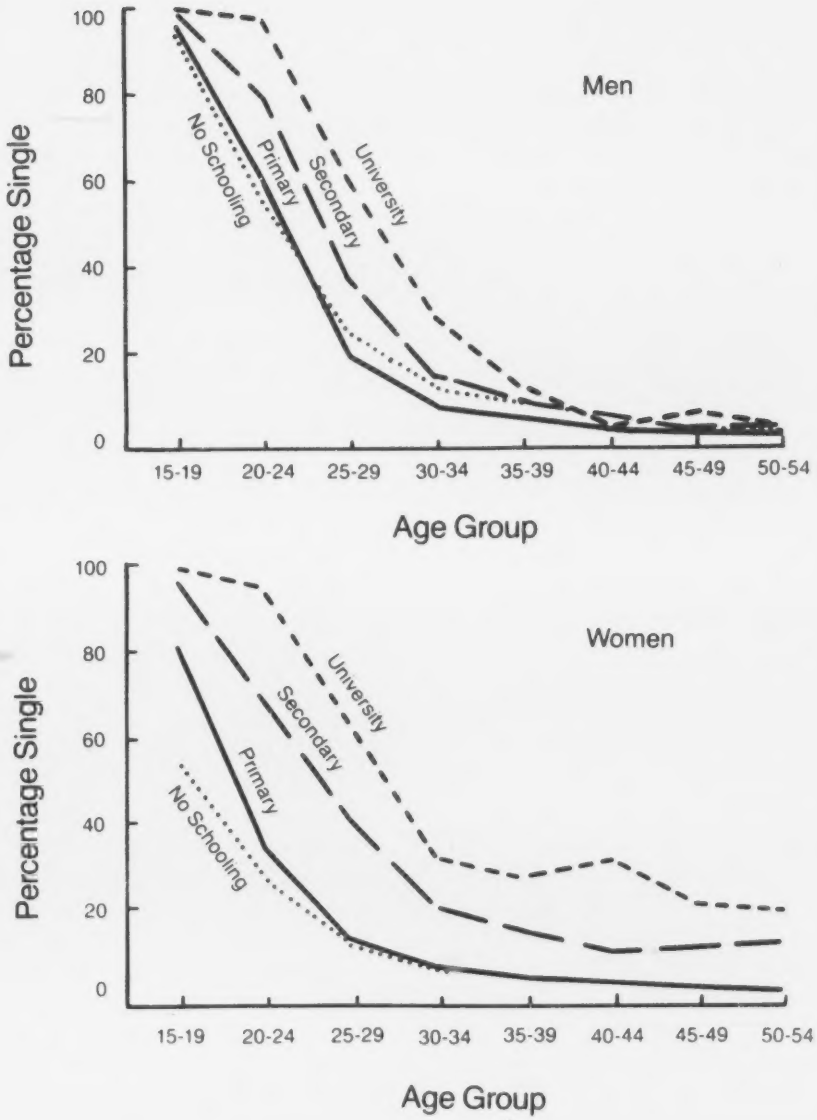



FIGURE 8 Percentage of Men and Women Single by Age, for Four Educational Levels, 1970: Thailand

Source: Chamratrithirong (1980).

that these differentials will persist, particularly as the educational composition of the Thai population changes. It is worth noting, however, that the changes in educational composition of women in reproductive ages could have had only limited impact on the overall nuptiality pattern since only modest increases have occurred in any absolute sense in the percentage of women going beyond primary school, the point at which the impact on marriage seems to make a substantial difference.

The marital status indexes point to a distinct inverse association between education and marital dissolution. This relationship would tend to counterbalance the positive association between age at marriage and education in terms of consequences for educational differentials in cumulative fertility among ever-married women. Educational differences in the proportion of women widowed reflect differences in mortality associated with socioeconomic status. Lower proportions of divorced or separated among the better educated may have several explanations, as Chamratrithirong (1980) has discussed. Since the age at marriage is higher among the better educated, such women are exposed to a shorter period of risk of divorce or separation. In addition, women of higher socioeconomic status may tend to remarry more than women of lower socioeconomic status. Marital stability could be related to financial stability, which presumably could be greater among the better educated. Since the three marital status indexes referring to the different types of marital dissolution are low in an absolute sense regardless of educational attainment, differentials and marital disruption are unlikely to account for much of the educational differentials in fertility.

Analysis of data from SOFT also points to a clear inverse relationship between marital dissolution and education. Based on life table analysis, the probability of first marriages being dissolved within ten years based on the experience of women aged 25-49 is 21 percent for those with no education, 13 percent for women with primary education, and 10 percent for those with middle education (Smith, 1981). Since this analysis explicitly takes marriage duration into account, the differences cannot be a result of differences in the period of exposure. However, widowhood is included as one source of dissolution, so the results might reflect in part differential mortality risks by education.

Data on the relationship of breastfeeding with the mother's number of years of schooling are shown in

Table 59. The measure of breastfeeding is the percent of mothers still breastfeeding their most recent child at the time of the survey among women who had a birth within three years prior to the survey. In several of the data sets, information on current breastfeeding status was available only for nonpregnant women. The results indicate that breastfeeding has been declining among all educational groups with the possible exception of better educated urban women, who were already characterized by very low levels of breastfeeding in the earliest survey. For all surveys, the highest educational group was characterized by distinctly lower proportions still breastfeeding than the other two groups. For several surveys, the most highly educated rural women were characterized by even lower proportions still breastfeeding than their less educated urban counterparts, although it should be stressed that even by 1979 only a very small fraction of rural women in reproductive ages belonged to the highest educational category. To the extent that decreased breastfeeding influences educational differentials in fertility (through ending postpartum infecundability), it operates in a direction opposite to the one that has generally prevailed. All else being equal, the shorter breastfeeding of the better educated should lead to higher rather than lower fertility. Obviously educational differences in other proximate determinants must outweigh the influence of decreased breastfeeding.

Educational differentials in the percent of married women who are currently practicing and who ever practiced contraception are shown in Table 60. Most surveys show a direct relationship between contraceptive prevalence and years of schooling in both rural and urban sectors of the population. Undoubtedly the educational differentials in marital fertility observed in many of the surveys reviewed is largely a result of these differentials in contraceptive use. While the results are not completely consistent in this respect, they generally point to a contraction in the educational differentials in the percent currently practicing over the period spanned by the surveys.

Clearly, the rapid increase in contraceptive prevalence has occurred among all educational groupings of the population and indeed has been, if anything, more rapid among the least educated women. While lesser educated women may have lagged behind briefly during the initial stages of the spread of contraception, the evidence suggests that a catch-up effect has already taken place. The experience of Thailand in comparison with the

TABLE 59 Percent Still Breastfeeding Most Recent Child Among Women with a Birth in the Three Years Prior to Interview, by Educational Attainment and Residence, Standardized for Number of Years Since Last Birth: Thailand

| | Education of Women (years) | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 0-3 | 4 | 5+ |
| Nonpregnant Women | | | |
| Rural | | | |
| LS1 1969 | 74.3 | 77.8 | -- |
| LS2 1972 | 75.0 | 72.3 | (38.9) |
| SOFT 1975 | 70.8 | 67.6 | 49.5 |
| NS 1979 | 59.9 | 57.4 | (14.3) |
| Urban | | | |
| LS1 1970 | 48.1 | 47.2 | 22.1 |
| LS2 1973 | 41.0 | 37.9 | 16.5 |
| SOFT 1975 | (36.9) | 36.2 | 14.0 |
| NS 1979 | -- | (29.0) | (22.6) |
| All Women | | | |
| Rural | | | |
| SOFT 1975 | 66.9 | 63.6 | 46.2 |
| NS 1979 | 57.3 | 55.9 | (14.3) |
| Urban | | | |
| LS2 1973 | 36.6 | 34.7 | 15.6 |
| SOFT 1975 | (31.9) | 32.1 | 13.6 |
| NS 1979 | -- | 30.5 | (22.1) |

Notes: Standardization performed by applying equal weights procedure to results by successive categories of one-year duration each. Results based on 20 to 49 cases are shown in parentheses; results based on fewer than 20 cases are not shown.

Source: Adapted from Knodel and Debavalya (1980).

TABLE 60 Percent Currently Practicing and Percent Ever Practiced Contraception for Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, Standardized for Age, by Educational Attainment and Place of Residence: Thailand

| Contraceptive Use and Survey Source | Place of Residence and Number of Years of Schooling | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Rural | | | Urban | | |
| | 0-3 | 4 | 5+ | 0-3 | 4 | 5+ |
| **Percent Currently Practicing** | | | | | | |
| LS1 1969/70 | 7 | 13 | (17) | 28 | 31 | 36 |
| LS2 1972/73 | 13 | 26 | 38 | 34 | 42 | 54 |
| SOFT 1975 | 33 | 36 | 45 | 44 | 50 | 53 |
| CPS1 1978/79[a] | 50 | 52 | 52 | 59 | 65 | 65 |
| NS 1979 | 48 | 48 | 57 | 42 | 50 | 64 |
| AFPH 1979[b] | 43 | 48 | 47 | 60 | 58 | 64 |
| CPS2 1981 | 52 | 58 | 61 | 64 | 63 | 66 |
| **Percent Ever Practiced** | | | | | | |
| LS1 1969/70 | 9 | 18 | (20) | 33 | 38 | 46 |
| LS2 1972/73 | 20 | 33 | (48) | 51 | 53 | 65 |
| SOFT 1975 | 43 | 51 | 67 | 66 | 62 | 73 |
| CPS1 1978/79[a] | 67 | 71 | 77 | 83 | 87 | 86 |
| NS 1979 | 55 | 64 | 71 | 77 | 70 | 81 |
| AFPH 1979[b] | 62 | 66 | 83 | 78 | 76 | 80 |
| CPS2 1981 | 74 | 78 | 83 | 80 | 83 | 89 |

Notes: The age distribution of currently married women for the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis of age standardization. Results in parentheses are based on fewer than 50 cases.

[a]Urban sample refers to Bangkok metropolitan area.
[b]Results refer to a universe of 20 provinces; the urban sample refers to provincial urban only.

Sources: Knodel et al. (1980); Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong (1982); and unpublished tabulations.

historical record of Western countries points not only to a much accelerated pace of fertility transition but probably also to more pervasive participation during the early stages, at least with respect to educational groupings.

## FAMILY INCOME

Determining family income is considerably more difficult than determining educational attainment. The concept of family income is far more complex and the subject matter more sensitive. Nevertheless, attempts were made in several of the surveys to collect information on recent family income, thus making it possible to examine differentials in reproductive behavior and attitudes along this dimension. The difficulties inherent in measuring income give reasons to be cautious in interpreting the results, especially since in most cases information on income was based on responses to a simple direct question. Moreover, current income is not necessarily an accurate reflection of a family's wealth. In interpreting results, one must keep in mind the reasonably rapid inflation in Thailand over the last decade; the same absolute family income at the beginning of the 1970s was worth considerably less by the end.

In the Longitudinal Study, information on family income was collected only for the rural phase of the second round. Table 61 shows a variety of measures of reproductive behavior and fertility desires for five income categories. Income is expressed in terms of the Thai baht (there were approximately 20 baht to one U.S. dollar during the 1970s). The sample was distributed more or less equally across the five income categories shown.

The results suggest only weak differences in cumulative fertility as measured by children ever born according to family income. Although the largest mean number of children ever born characterized the lowest income group, there is not a consistent inverse relationship among the remaining categories. Apparently, infant and child mortality is higher for the lower income group and thus in terms of the mean number of living children, they are not distinctly higher than several other income groups. Differentials in the expected number of children are even weaker than for cumulative fertility, with almost no differences evident across the income categories. A

TABLE 61 Selected Fertility-Related Variables by Family Income, Standardized by Age Among Rural Women with a Child Under Three Years Old, 1972: Thailand

| Fertility-Related Variables | Annual Family Income (in baht) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Under 1,000 | 1,000-1,999 | 2,000-3,999 | 4,000-9,999 | 10,000 and over |
| Children ever born | 4.4 | 3.8 | 3.8 | 4.1 | 4.0 |
| Living children | 3.7 | 3.3 | 3.3 | 3.7 | 3.6 |
| Expected number | 4.2 | 3.9 | 3.9 | 4.0 | 3.8 |
| Percent pregnant | 17 | 16 | 19 | 8 | 8 |
| Months since last birth[a] | 27 | 29 | 35 | 36 | 40 |
| Percent current use of contraception | 9 | 20 | 24 | 36 | 40 |
| Percent ever use of contraception | 14 | 27 | 27 | 43 | 43 |
| Percent wanting no more children | 61 | 54 | 56 | 65 | 60 |
| Preferred number of children | 4.1 | 3.9 | 4.0 | 4.0 | 3.6 |
| Percent still breastfeeding last born child under 3[b] | 79 | 78 | 78 | 68 | 56 |

Note: The age distribution of currently married women for the whole country as reported in the 1970 census served as the basis for the age standardization.

[a]Excluding currently pregnant women.
[b]Standardized for number of years since last birth by applying equal weights procedure to results tabulated by successive categories of one-year duration.

Source: LS2.

somewhat different picture is suggested for current fertility, as indicated by either the percent pregnant or the average open interval measured in terms of months since last birth. Percent of women pregnant among the two highest income categories is distinctly lower than for the other three, and a consistent inverse association is indicated between income and open interval. There appears to be a more or less inverse association between income and breastfeeding, again with the two highest income categories showing distinctly lower percentages still breastfeeding their last child under age three (after standardization for age of child). Whatever fertility-enhancement effect the lower breastfeeding might have is apparently more than compensated for by the rather sharp differentials in current use of contraception. A distinctly positive relationship is evident between income and percent of women currently practicing contraception; women in the highest income category are more than four times as likely to be practicing contraception as those in the lowest. Differentials in the percent who ever used contraception are less consistent but nevertheless generally in the same direction.

Finally, the two measures of fertility desires, the percent wanting no more children and the mean preferred number of children, show only weak differences across income categories.

One exception to studies that obtained information on family income through a simple direct question was SOFT, in which a more complex approach was taken. Family income was calculated as the sum of a variety of separate components, including farm income, which in turn was estimated indirectly from farm size, crops grown, and animals raised. In a study of economic factors in family-size decisions in Thailand, Arnold and Pejaranonda (1977) classified couples according to this measure of family income, dividing them into five roughly equal categories. Their study presents results of a multiple classification analysis which relates the preferred number of children as expressed by husbands and the percent of fecund women currently using contraception to family income as well as a variety of other variables. The differentials in preferred number of children and contraceptive prevalence according to family income are summarized in Table 62. Prior to adjustment for other socioeconomic variables, the preferred number of children among married men showed an inverse relationship with family income while contraceptive prevalence among fecund women showed a distinct

TABLE 62 Mean Preferred Number of Children Among Married Men with Wives Under Age 50 and Percent of Fecund Married Women Currently Using Contraception by Family Income, Unadjusted and Adjusted by Multiple Classification Analysis for Selected Socioeconomic Variables, 1975: Thailand

| | Preferred Number of Children for Married Men | | Percent of Fecund Women Currently Using Contraception | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Family Income | Unadjusted | Adjusted | Unadjusted | Adjusted |
| Level 1 (lowest) | 4.4 | 4.2 | 29.8 | 33.5 |
| Level 2 | 4.4 | 4.2 | 36.3 | 38.7 |
| Level 3 | 4.0 | 3.9 | 41.9 | 42.0 |
| Level 4 | 3.7 | 3.7 | 45.7 | 43.2 |
| Level 5 (highest) | 3.5 | 3.7 | 46.1 | 42.2 |

Notes: Preferred number of children adjusted for husband's and wife's education, place of residence, husband's occupation, wife's employment status, number of living children, and indexes of perceived cost and utility of children. Contraceptive use adjusted for all the above plus wife's age.

Source: Adapted from Arnold and Pejaranonda (1977).

positive relationship, similar to the LS2 findings. Adjustment for a whole variety of socioeconomic variables reduces the differential somewhat, but the associations persist nevertheless.

The two most recent surveys that permit examination of differentials by family income are AFPH and NES, the latter referring to a large sample of rural northeastern women. In addition to inquiring about income, AFPH included a question concerning the respondents' perception of their wealth relative to others which permits us to classify respondents according to their perceived relative wealth as well as to their reported annual income. The AFPH results also permit a comparison of income differentials for the rural and urban populations (although urban is limited to provincial towns).

The AFPH results, presented in Table 63, reveal a general inverse relationship between income and total expected number of children in the rural portion of the sample, but a much less regular relationship is apparent for the urban portion. When classified by perceived relative wealth, the inverse relationship for the rural sample more or less disappears while a distinct inverse relationship emerges for the urban sample. It should be kept in mind that there is greater variation in income among the urban population and this is probably reflected in sharper perceptions of differences in relative wealth. Current fertility as reflected in the percent pregnant shows an irregular relationship with annual family income in both the rural and urban samples. However, a positive relationship with perceived relative wealth is indicated for the rural sample while a distinctly negative one is indicated for the urban sample. The positive relationship between current contraceptive use and annual income observed in the earlier surveys is also evident in the AFPH results, although the differentials appear less pronounced and are rather irregular for the urban sample. With regard to perceived relative wealth, there is virtually no relationship with the percent currently using contraceptives for the rural sample, although a direct relationship is evident for the urban sample. Curiously, an association of ever use with relative wealth is virtually absent for the urban sample. Inverse relationships between the preferred number of children for self and both annual family income and perceived relative wealth are evident, although the differences are not large. These differences contract considerably for the rural sample and virtually disappear for the urban sample when the preferred number for a daughter is considered.

TABLE 63 Selected Fertility-Related Variables, by Family Income, Perceived Relative Wealth, and Place of Residence, Standardized for Age, Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, 1979: Thailand

| | Total Expected Children | | Percent Pregnant | | Percent Current Use Contraception | | Percent Ever Use Contraception | | Preferred Number of Children | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | For Self | | For Daughter | |
| | Rural | Urban | Rural | Urban | Rural | Urban | Rural | Urban | Rural | Urban | Rural | Urban |
| Annual Family Income (in baht) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Under 5,000 | 3.97 | 3.37 | 11.2 | 12.0 | 43.3 | 50.1 | 62.2 | 70.0 | 3.42 | 3.15 | 3.00 | 2.7 |
| 5,000 - 9,000 | 3.98 | | 11.1 | | 43.7 | | 58.6 | | 3.32 | | 2.90 | |
| 10,000 - 14,000 | 3.80 | 3.83 | 8.6 | 6.2 | 48.7 | 41.1 | 69.3 | 61.6 | 3.16 | 2.95 | 2.83 | 2.7 |
| 15,000 - 24,000 | 3.55 | 3.37 | 10.0 | 7.2 | 47.2 | 64.6 | 66.2 | 80.7 | 3.16 | 2.94 | 2.77 | 2.6 |
| 25,000 - 34,000 | 3.74 | 3.43 | 10.0 | 10.4 | 48.1 | 61.9 | 64.1 | 83.4 | 3.14 | 2.86 | 2.71 | 2.8 |
| 35,000+ | 3.45 | 3.18 | 6.8 | 8.4 | 55.1 | 61.3 | 75.8 | 78.1 | 2.96 | 2.89 | 2.78 | 2.7 |
| Perceived Relative Wealth | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Poorer | 3.83 | 3.57 | 10.3 | 7.2 | 46.5 | 56.8 | 65.5 | 74.5 | 3.28 | 2.96 | 2.85 | 2.6 |
| Average | 3.71 | 3.26 | 9.8 | 9.5 | 47.4 | 60.3 | 65.2 | 77.8 | 3.19 | 2.95 | 2.84 | 2.7 |
| Wealthier | 3.73 | 3.10 | 9.2 | 13.2 | 49.6 | 64.0 | 71.1 | 75.3 | 3.10 | 2.72 | 2.71 | 2.6 |

Note: The age distribution of currently married women for the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis of the age standardization.

Source: AFPH.

Results for the NES, presented in Table 64, are striking with respect to the weak differences apparent across income categories for most of the variables. The sharpest differentials seem to be the inverse association between current marital fertility as measured by $I_g'$ and income. No similar inverse relationship is apparent for the percent currently pregnant, although this is undoubtedly an inferior measure of current fertility. Differences in cumulative fertility as measured by children ever born are minimal as are differences in the preferred number of children and the percent wanting no more children. Indeed, the data on fertility desires are remarkable in showing virtually no difference at all across income groups. While there is some evidence of a direct association between contraceptive use and family income, the differentials are very small and contraceptive use rates are rather high even for the lowest income group.

The data on differentials in reproductive behavior and attitudes by income for the four surveys reviewed suggest that income differentials are less marked than educational differentials. The most consistent pattern found was a direct association between contraceptive use and income, although the evidence from the two most recent surveys and particularly the NES suggest that these differences have contracted considerably. Given problems with measuring income as well as comparability in income categories among the different surveys, these findings can only be considered suggestive. Moreover, the NES results refer only to the northeast. Some confirmation is provided by a recent survey conducted in eight rural districts in the northeast, which also found a noticeably weak association between contraceptive use and income class (Grandstaff, 1980). Perhaps most importantly, the data are fairly clear in indicating that all income categories have participated substantially in the reproductive changes that have occurred over the last decade. Hence, both with respect to education and income, Thailand's fertility transition can be considered quite pervasive.

## RELIGION

Over 90 percent of the Thai population is considered Buddhist and 5 percent adhere to Islam, the second largest religion. Nevertheless, religious differentials in fertility and related behavior are of interest because

TABLE 64 Selected Fertility-Related Variables by Family Income, Currently Married Women Aged 15-44, Standardized for Age, Rural Northeast, 1980: Thailand

| Fertility-Related Variables | Annual Family Income (in baht) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Under 4,500 | 4,500-9,499 | 9,500-14,499 | 14,500-24,499 | 24,500 34,499 | 34,500 and over |
| Children ever born[a] | 3.7 | 3.7 | 3.7 | 3.8 | 3.7 | 3.5 |
| $I_g$ (for 1979) | .55 | .47 | .45 | .43 | .43 | .40 |
| Percent currently pregnant | 9.9 | 9.0 | 11.4 | 9.4 | 9.0 | 9.5 |
| Percent current use of contraception | 48 | 49 | 50 | 56 | 52 | 55 |
| Percent ever use of contraception | 59 | 59 | 61 | 67 | 64 | 65 |
| Percent wanting no more children | 55 | 56 | 57 | 57 | 57 | 55 |
| Preferred number of children | 3.5 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.4 | 3.9 |

Note: The age distribution of ever-married or currently married women, as appropriate, for the whole country as reported in the 1970 census was used as the basis for the age standardization.

[a]Including stillbirths.
[b]Excluding preference for no children due to coding problems in data set.

Source: NES.

cultural differences between Buddhists and Moslems are relatively sharp within the generally homogeneous Thai society. Information on religious reproductive differentials is limited because of the low proportion of Moslems in the population and the consequent small numbers that are included in any national sample survey. Moreover, the Longitudinal Study (LS1 and LS2) purposely excluded the four heavily Moslem provinces in the south and the two Contraceptive Prevalence Surveys (CPS1 and CPS2) do not include information on the respondent's religion, thus effectively precluding analysis of religious differentials from these surveys. Nevertheless, the limited data available from SOFT and from other specialized surveys suggest that Moslems have participated considerably less in the recent reproductive changes that have taken place and represent probably at least one exception to the pervasiveness that otherwise characterizes Thailand's fertility transition.[2] As a result, the somewhat complex pattern of religious differentials in fertility that existed formerly appears to have changed considerably in a relatively brief period of time.

In one of the earlier studies of religious differentials in fertility in Thailand, Goldstein (1970) analyzed the 1-percent sample tabulation of the 1960 census and found substantial differentials between Buddhists and Moslems, with the latter characterized by distinctly lower numbers of children ever born. This finding held for each of the broad age groups analyzed but was considerably more pronounced at older ages. Given that Moslems marry at a considerably earlier age than Buddhists, the lower cumulative fertility is particularly interesting. Goldstein speculated that more frequent divorce and remarriage may account for the lower Moslem fertility rates. He also suggested that poor health may play a part.

Data from the 1970 Rural Employment Survey in southern Thailand, which included questions on fertility and contraception, also indicated that Moslem women had a substantially lower average number of children ever born than Buddhist women by the end of the reproductive span. At younger ages, however, the average number of children ever born was higher for Moslem women, with the crossover in differentials occurring around age 35 (Jones and Soonthornthum, 1971). Information on contraceptive use indicated that prevalence was low for both groups. The authors concurred with Goldstein's view that one possible

source of the religious differentials in completed fertility at older ages was probably higher rates of divorce and separation among Moslems. Unfortunately, their data set lacked adequate information to explore this hypothesis.

Although the number of Moslems included in SOFT was not large, the sample did include several districts in the heavily Moslem provinces of the south and thus there are sufficient cases available to permit at least a suggestive analysis of religious differentials in fertility and to reveal proximate determinants. Data on cumulative fertility and marriage patterns based on SOFT are summarized in Table 65. Since well over two thirds of the Moslem women interviewed were from the southern region, comparisons between Buddhists and Moslems at the national level can be distorted by regional differences. Therefore, results are shown separately for the southern region, enabling comparisons between southern Buddhists and Moslems. The findings on children ever born are consistent with those based on the special 1970 KAP survey, indicating somewhat higher cumulative fertility for Moslem women under age 30 but lower numbers of children ever born for older Moslem women compared to Buddhists. The higher Moslem fertility at younger ages is not surprising in light of the substantially earlier age at first marriage among Moslems. The religious differentials in age at first marriage are even more pronounced when the comparison is limited to the southern region. Although these data on age at first marriage are affected by a truncation bias (as discussed in Chapter 3), and since this bias affects both religious groups, it is unlikely to bias the comparisons very much. While Moslem women marry at an earlier age, they also experience considerably more divorce or separation, as indicated both by the higher percent who are currently divorced or separated and the higher percent who are currently married but who have had more than one husband. Again, these religious differentials are even more pronounced when comparison is limited to the southern region. The higher prevalence of marital dissolution among Moslem women acts in a contrary direction to the younger age at marriage as an influence on cumulative fertility and is a potential explanation for the lower numbers of children ever born found for Moslem women at the older reproductive ages.

Smith's (1981) application of life table techniques to data from SOFT in order to estimate marital dissolution

TABLE 65 Mean Number of Children Ever Born, Mean Age at First Marriage, Percent Currently Divorced or Separated, and Percent Married More than Once, by Religion and Age, Ever-Married Women, 1975: Thailand

| Geographical Area and Age Group | Children Ever Born | | Age at First Marriage | | Percent Divorced or Separated | | Percent Married More than Once | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Buddhist | Moslem | Buddhist | Moslem | Buddhist | Moslem | Buddhist | Moslem |
| National | | | | | | | | |
| Under 30 | 1.90 | 2.41 | 18.9 | 16.7 | 4.6 | 8.0 | 5.5 | 12.1 |
| 30-39 | 4.42 | 4.25 | 20.3 | 17.1 | 4.6 | 2.3 | 13.5 | 40.8 |
| 40+ | 6.41 | 5.88 | 20.2 | 17.9 | 4.7 | 11.7 | 16.6 | 41.0 |
| All ages | 3.93 | 3.73 | 19.7 | 17.1 | 4.6 | 7.8 | 11.1 | 25.9 |
| Southern Region | | | | | | | | |
| Under 30 | 2.15 | 2.32 | 19.1 | 15.9 | 2.8 | 11.3 | 2.5 | 17.1 |
| 30-39 | 4.54 | 4.16 | 21.0 | 16.2 | 2.1 | 2.8 | 11.0 | 49.4 |
| 40+ | 6.53 | 5.74 | 20.7 | 17.1 | 4.0 | 13.4 | 19.7 | 51.6 |
| All ages | 4.29 | 3.66 | 20.2 | 16.3 | 2.9 | 9.9 | 10.6 | 33.8 |

Source: SOFT.

rates also indicates greater dissolution among Moslems. His analysis controls for educational differentials among the two religious groups by limiting the comparison to women with no more than a primary education. His estimates indicate that 14 percent of first marriages for Buddhists and 32 percent for Moslems dissolve within the first ten years.

Additional evidence on differences in nuptiality patterns by religion are available from an analysis of the 2-percent sample of the 1970 census by Chamratrithirong (1980). His results indicate a singulate mean age at marriage for Moslem women of 19.6 compared to 22 for Buddhist women. Moreover, the percent never married among women aged 40-44 was also lower for Moslem women: no less than 1 percent compared to 4 percent for Buddhists of the same age.

There is some evidence to suggest that a shift may have occurred in Buddhist-Moslem fertility differentials in the course of Thailand's recent fertility transition. Based on a survey conducted in 1980, a study of religious fertility differences in the Jana district of Songkla province in southern Thailand found higher average numbers of children ever born among Moslem women, not only at most younger ages but also at older ages (Porapakkham and Serikajornkitjarean, 1981). Moreover, this study found distinctly lower current marital fertility for Buddhist compared to Moslem women: the $I_g'$ was .35 for Buddhist women and .50 for Moslem women based on births in the year prior to the survey. Measures of current marital fertility by religion are not available for previous studies, but data from SOFT indicate that within the southern region there was no difference in the self-reported rate of pregnancy in 1975; 12 percent of both southern Buddhist and southern Moslem women reported themselves as pregnant at the time of the interview.

There are, of course, problems of comparability between a survey which is based on only one district and other surveys which have drawn from broader populations but are based on small numbers of cases. For example, an $I_g'$ of .42 for both religious groups combined for the Jana district is noticeably lower than the rate for the southern region based on any of the surveys, including CPS2 which took place a year later (see Table 6). Sampling fluctuations and differences in methodology are also potential sources of discrepancies when making comparisons. However, information on religious differentials in contraceptive prevalence found in several surveys over

the last decade and summarized in Table 66 indicates that a substantial gap in contraceptive practice has developed between Buddhists and Moslems.

This gap is of considerable importance given the leading role of contraceptive use among the proximate determinants responsible for Thailand's fertility decline (see Chapter 6). At the start of the 1970s, contraception was practiced by relatively few rural women in the south regardless of religion. While Buddhist couples in the south may lag somewhat behind couples in other

TABLE 66 Percent Currently Practicing Contraception Among Currently Married Women, by Religion, from Selected Surveys: Thailand

| Survey and Geographical Area | Buddhist | Moslem |
|---|---|---|
| Rural Employment Survey, 1970 | | |
| Southern region | 9.4 | 4.2 |
| SOFT, 1975 | | |
| All Thailand | 41.1 | 11.9 |
| Southern region | 25.8 | 7.2 |
| Thai Moslem Fertility Survey, 1976 | | |
| Five southernmost provinces | -- | 13.6 |
| Jana District Survey, 1980 | | |
| Jana District in southern Thailand | | |
| All methods | 46.7 | 23.0 |
| Excluding withdrawal | 31.7 | 9.0 |

Notes: Results from SOFT refer to currently married women under age 45; all other results refer to currently married women under age 50. Results from the Rural Employment Survey are reported by the husband and refer to nonpregnant women only. Results for the Thai Moslem Fertility Survey are the average of those reported by wives and husbands.

Sources: Jones and Soonthornthum (1971); Thailand, National Economic and Social Development Board (1978); Porapakkham and Serikajornkitjarean (1981); and unpublished tabulations.

regions in the adoption of family planning, as indicated by results from SOFT, contraceptive practice among them still increased considerably and apparently to a considerably greater extent that for Moslem women. The 1980 results for the Jana district indicate that Moslem women are not only much less likely to be practicing contraception but that a larger share of those who do so report using some nonmodern method, particularly withdrawal, rather than the modern methods practiced by the Buddhists. Examination of the methods reported in SOFT help confirm this finding: close to half of the small number of Moslem users reported some nonmodern method compared to only a very small proportion of all users. While direct evidence on effectiveness of different methods in Thailand is not available, experience from other countries suggests that nonmodern methods such as withdrawal are probably less effective that most modern methods.

Given the low proporation of Moslem women practicing contraception and particularly modern methods, we must look to other proximate determinants as explanatory factors underlying their relatively low fertility in the past. Clearly, marriage patterns and in particular high rates of marital dissolution have played a part. Data from SOFT suggest that religious differentials in breastfeeding patterns may also be of some importance. Table 67 summarizes data on a variety of breastfeeding indexes by religion. While Buddhist and Moslem women resemble each other on a national level, the southern region Moslem women clearly breastfeed their children longer than Buddhist women do. If such differences have been true in the past, this could help account for the lower cumulative fertility characterizing older Moslem women that has been found in a number of studies.

Given the relatively scanty information that is currently available on religious differentials in reproductive behavior, firm conclusions on the extent of the differentials and the proximate determinants underlying them would be premature. However, the results suggest that important differences in proximate determinants do underlie the observed religious fertility differentials. Moreover, it is likely that both the extent and nature of the religious differentials in fertility as well as in the proximate determinants may be changing as Thailand's fertility transition proceeds. The data suggest for example, that religious differentials in contraceptive use may actually be increasing and thus, unlike educational or family income differentials, religious differ-

TABLE 67 Selected Indexes of Breastfeeding by Religion: Thailand

| Selected Indexes | National | | Southern Region | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Buddhist | Moslem | Buddhist | Moslem |
| Estimated Mean Age at Weaning From Percent Still Breastfeeding[a] | 18.8 | 19.0 | 18.8 | 22.0 |
| Reported Mean Age at Weaning of Next-to-Last-Born Child | 17.2 | 18.9 | 17.1 | 22.0 |
| Percent Reporting Breastfeeding Last-Born Child More than 3 Months[b] | 85 | 80 | 81 | 87 |
| Percent Reporting Breastfeeding Last-Born Child More than 12 Months[c] | 70 | 71 | 59 | 83 |
| Adjusted Percent Still Breastfeeding Last-Born Child Under 3 Years of Age[d] | 63 | 62 | 64 | 75 |

[a]For technique of calculation, see Knodel and Debavalya (1980).
[b]Women whose last-born child was less than 3 months old and was still being breastfed were assumed to breastfeed for at least 3 months.
[c]Based on women whose last birth occurred at least 12 months ago.
[d]Adjusted for number of years since most recent birth by Multiple Classification Analysis (MCA). Women who reported a duration of breastfeeding longer than the open birth interval were coded as still breastfeeding, even though they were not directly reported as such.

Source: SOFT.

entials may become more rather than less prominent in the future.

In short, there seems to be clear evidence that reproductive change has been quite pervasive in Thailand in terms of at least two fundamental social and economic dimensions--education and income. The same is not true, however, in terms of a basic cultural dimension, as represented by religion. The overall demographic impact of the lack of full participation of Moslems in the process of fertility transition is minimal given their small share of the total population. The implications for an understanding of this process, however, may be considerably greater. A search for explanations of the decline of Thai fertility beyond the proximate determinants framework would undoubtedly profit from a fuller understanding of the contrasting paths taken so far by Buddhists and Moslems.

NOTES

[1]In each study, women were classified into four educational categories: no schooling, primary education, secondary education, and university education. The categories of primary and secondary education are not the same. In the 1960 study, primary education included women with 1-4 years of schooling; in 1970, primary education included women with 1-7 years of schooling with complementary differences reflected in the secondary education category. Nevertheless, the results seem to point clearly to an increasing differential by educational attainment. For example, the mean number of children ever born to ever-married women aged 20-44 standardized for age using the 1970 age distribution for all women as the standard, shows the following differentials: If the number of children ever born to women with no schooling is indexed as 100, those with primary, secondary, and university education are, respectively, 99, 82, and 60 in 1960; and 95, 58, and 44 in 1970.

[2]Sharp differentials may also characterize other ethnic minorities, but their small numbers and exclusion from survey coverage generally prevent analysis. Hill tribes in particular may be characterized by considerably higher fertility at present than most of the Thai population, but relatively little reliable information is available for them. Moreover, they are less integrated into the mainstream of Thai society and polity than are the Moslems.

# CHAPTER 9

## SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Thailand is among a growing number of developing countries that have moved in recent years from an early stage of demographic transition characterized by falling mortality in the presence of high, relatively stable fertility to a later stage in which fertility has also started to decline. In Thailand this progression has been both recent and rapid. Although reliable statistics on mortality and fertility for earlier periods are lacking, the evidence available suggests that mortality has been declining since the early decades of this century with a probable interruption associated with the events of the Second World War. It is also difficult to date the onset of the fall in fertility with precision. Most evidence indicates that the fertility decline started to gain momentum only during the 1960s and, for the rural population, probably dates largely from the latter part of that decade.

A decomposition of changes in the crude birth rate between the mid-1960s and mid-1970s suggests that changes in the age structure and in the proportion married among women in the reproductive ages probably acted in counterbalancing ways and that neither was an important contributor to the changes in the crude birth rate. A modest increase in the proportions remaining single among women in the younger reproductive ages seems probable and thus helped to lower the birth rate; minor changes in the age structure probably had the opposite influence. Thus the recent decline of fertility in Thailand is predominantly a matter of reduced childbearing within marriage.

Between the late 1960s and the early 1980s, survey evidence indicates that marital fertility fell by almost 40 percent, representing one of the most rapid fertility transitions in the developing world. This reduction in

marital fertility is supported by data showing decreases in the percentage of women who are currently pregnant and increases in the average length of the open birth interval. Reductions in the expected number of children during the last decade both reflect the continuing fertility decline and, especially among younger married women, imply continuation of the recent fertility trends, at least for the near future. By 1981, the average expected family size among married women under age 25 had fallen to levels closer to two children than to three children and is only about half as large as the average number of living children among women currently reaching the end of their childbearing years. Moreover, it is approximately one child or so less than implied by the current total fertility rate.

One of the most striking features of Thailand's recent fertility decline has been its pervasiveness. Almost all major divisions of Thai society have participated. During the last decade or so, fertility decline appears to be even more pronounced in rural than in urban areas, thus narrowing the former substantial rural-urban differential in fertility levels. While regional differences have been apparent in both the timing and extent of decline, all areas of Thailand had at least started to participate in the fertility transition by the early 1980's. Moreover, fertility differentials by educational attainment and family income are minimal, reflecting the full participation of the least educated women and the poorest couples in the move toward smaller families. One group, however, that appears to be relatively resistant to the changing reproductive patterns is the small Moslem minority, many of whom live in southern Thailand, the most laggard region in terms of fertility decline. Since Moslems constitute only a very small proportion of the total population, their impact on national trends is minimal. The fact that Thailand's reproductive revolution encompasses such a broad social and economic spectrum may be related to the relative cultural homogeneity of Thai society. The exception of the Thai Moslems tend to confirm the importance of cultural rather than socioeconomic barriers to reproductive change in the case of Thailand. A fuller understanding of the source of the religious differentials may help clarify those features of the dominant Buddhist population that have made it so receptive to reducing fertility. This is an area of investigation that deserves more attention.

The focus of much of this study has been the proximate determinants of fertility: those variables that directly link childbearing to all other influences, whether socio-economic, cultural, or environmental. In our review of the proximate determinants we have divided them into three sets: factors influencing exposure to intercourse, natural marital fertility factors, and deliberate marital fertility control factors.

In Thailand, exposure to intercourse is largely a matter of family formation and dissolution, since most reproduction occurs within the context of marriage. Only scattered evidence is available on the extent of premarital sexual activity and illegitimacy. In rural areas, at least, premarital intercourse can lead to pressure to marry, especially when discovered by the young woman's parents. Methodological problems, however, prevent accurate estimates of the extent of premarital pregnancy being drawn from survey data currently available. Even less is known about the extent of illegitimacy, but it seems safe to conclude that extramarital births are not an important contributor to fertility overall.

Entry into marriage occurs, on average, in the early twenties for women and two or three years later for men. Age of marriage apparently has been increasing slowly since the Second World War, although not all information is consistent in this respect. For both men and women, marriage is close to universal, with only a few percent remaining single throughout the reproductive age span. At the same time, marital dissolution as well as remarriage are fairly common. Thus, a substantial minority of both men and women are married to someone other than their first spouse by the time they reach the end of the reproductive ages. Because remarriage is common and rapid, only a small amount of exposure time to childbearing is lost by women as a result of marital dissolution during the reproductive span. Some exposure time is also lost through the separation of spouses due to temporary migration, but again this is unlikely to be an important influence on fertility except perhaps in some special local circumstances.

Exposure to sexual intercourse is relevant to fertility, of course, only during the ages when men and women are biologically capable of reproducing. Thus some attention has been given in the present study to determine the biological age limits of reproduction. A review of studies with information on the onset of the menarche suggests that it is probably later in Thailand than in

most of the more developed countries. At least until recently the mean age has been perhaps as late as between 15 and 16 for large segments of the population. There is some limited evidence suggesting that the average age of menarche has declined in recent decades and also that an inverse association exists between socioeconomic status and age at menarche.

Less information is available on menopause in Thailand. One study of questionable quality suggests that it increased over the last few decades. Prior to the widespread practice of contraception, the mean age at last birth among women past the childbearing age was in the late thirties, which is within the usual range for natural fertility populations.

Other factors examined that could affect marital fertility independent of deliberate efforts at birth control were primary sterility, coital frequency and lactational infecundability. Primary sterility appears to be quite low: only a few percent of ever-married women at the end of the reproductive ages reported themselves as childless.

A variety of studies have collected information on coital frequency, but often the samples are quite specialized and the questions and methodology not comparable. As might be expected, these studies indicate an inverse association with age. The mean frequency of intercourse indicated by these studies ranges from slightly over one to close to three times per week.

Breastfeeding in Thailand is practiced close to universally, especially in rural areas. During the last decade or so, a moderate decline in the average duration has taken place, although still more than half of Thai women breastfeed for over one year. Supplemental food is introduced at an early age and probably reduces the potential inhibiting effect of the relatively long durations of breastfeeding on fertility. The median duration of postpartum amenorrhea, and hence the post-partum nonsusceptible period, is currently estimated at just under five months. Presumably, the decline in the duration of breastfeeding has operated against the prevailing trends toward lower marital fertility.

The most important proximate determinants responsible for the recent decline in Thai fertility have been those associated with deliberate marital fertility control, particularly contraception. There exists substantial information to document the relative absence of knowledge of effective birth control methods in the past, with the

possible exception of traditional techniques of abortion. However, contraceptive knowledge has increased rapidly in recent years to a point where it is now close to universal among married women. The practice of contraception has increased dramatically as well. At the end of the 1960s, less than 15 percent of married women in reproductive ages reported using some method of contraception; by 1981, this had increased to close to 60 percent. As with fertility decline, the increase in contraceptive use has been pervasive. Rural-urban, educational, or income differentials in contraceptive use are small at present. Moslem women are among the few identifiable groups that have lagged noticeably behind in their adoption of modern methods of birth control.

Only limited information is available on the practice of induced abortion. The scattered evidence that does exist suggests that it is relatively common despite the fact that many Thais express an overt disapproval of abortion, which they view as contrary to the precepts of Buddhism. The very scarce evidence also suggests that the practice of abortion has increased during much of the same period that contraceptive use has been on the rise. Most likely, both abortion and contraception have been used by Thais in meeting their increased desires to limit family size.

We have applied an analytical accounting scheme developed by John Bongaarts to data for Thailand in order to estimate the contribution of four principal proximate variables--proportions married, contraception, abortion, and lactational infecundability--to the level and change in Thai fertility during the recent period of fertility decline. The results indicate that the most important inhibitor of potential fertility during the late 1960s was the marital structure of the population. Lactational infecundability was the second most important factor, and contraception and induced abortion were relatively unimportant. By the end of the 1970s, however, contraception had clearly emerged as the most important inhibitor of potential fertility, followed by the marital structure, with more modest contributions being made by lactational infecundability and induced abortion. A decomposition of the fertility decline during the intervening decade indicated that reduced breastfeeding would have led to a 20-percent increase in total fertility had changes in the other proximate determinants not counteracted it. In contrast, changes in the proportion of women married and in induced abortion has contributed

modestly to the reduction in total fertility. By far the major factor accounting for the fertility decline has been the rise in contraceptive practice. Its contribution to fertility change during this period has been far greater than all other proximate determinants combined.

Why the fertility transition occurs where and when it does is a question that has intrigued social scientists and policy makers for decades. In the present study, we have made no systematic attempts to analyze the causes underlying the fertility decline in Thailand outside of the proximate determinants framework. We have pointed to evidence suggesting that the National Family Planning Program sponsored by the government has probably facilitated the rapid changes that have taken place. The development of an active program corresponds closely with the timing of the fertility decline in rural areas, a vast majority of Thai women report receiving their contraceptive supplies or services through the program and the analysis of service statistics indicates that the number of estimated births averted through the program can account for most of the observed fertility decline during the period under observation.

Regardless of how much of an impact the program has had on facilitating the fertility decline, a broader question arises as to why such a large proportion of Thai couples have been so receptive to adopting contraception and reducing their fertility in such a short period of time. The answer does not seem to be on the level of socioeconomic development, at least as conventionally defined, since even now the Thai population is overwhelmingly rural and agricultural. The full participation of couples with widely different socioeconomic backgrounds also suggests that the link to socioeconomic variables may be relatively weak. We suspect the pace of change is related to the cultural context in which it is occurring and to the rapid expansion of the communication and transportation network that now permeates virtually the entire country.

The rapid expansion of communication and mass transportation in recent decades is dramatic. Transistor radios are virtually a universal possession and televisions are becoming increasingly common even in the countryside. Minibuses and the extended road systems have also played a significant part in reducing the isolation of village life. Rural and urban Thais, the lesser and the better educated, the poor and the rich are all now exposed to a wide range of modern fashions,

consumer goods, and lifestyles. In response, aspirations, tastes, and attitudes have probably changed in a way that is incompatible with uncontrolled, high fertility. Coupled with an increased awareness that childbearing can be a matter of deliberate choice and with increasing local availability of contraception and perhaps abortion, these changes have led to rapid fertility decline. This occurred without large portions of the population moving to urban areas or working in the modern sector. Moreover, those shifts in socioeconomic structure that did occur surely further reinforced the newly emerging reproductive attitudes and behavior.

We also suspect the pace of decline has been facilitated by certain aspects of the Thai cultural context, in particular the Buddhist outlook on life and the position of women in Thai society. Buddhism as practiced in Thailand emphasizes that each individual is responsible for his or her own salvation and undoubtedly contributes to the general tolerance often associated with Thai culture. Religious opposition to contraception is virtually nonexistent. Attitudinal data clearly point to a widespread acceptance of the concept of birth control and family limitation. The permissiveness of Buddhist culture may well contribute to the relative ease with which modern tastes, attitudes, and behavior, including the modernization of reproductive patterns, are taking hold. Moreover, women in Thailand have traditionally experienced relative social and economic freedom. As a result, they are linked along with Thai men to the modern communication networks. Thus in various and increasing ways, even women in the rural hinterlands are exposed to the ideas and lifestyles that characterize urban centers and the world beyond. Since most of the contraceptive practices that have been responsible for the reduction of fertility in Thailand are female methods, and since the physical burden of childbearing and much of the burden of childrearing is borne by women, their exposure to the modernizing forces that are at work can and probably did have a strong impact on fertility.

There is substantial evidence to suggest that the fertility decline in Thailand is still in process. Declining family size preferences and expectations reinforce the impression that Thailand's fertility transition will continue for at least some years to come. The modal desired family size is now two children; the majority indicate a preference for a two-child family. Since very few Thais indicate a desired family

size of less than two, this may well set a limit on the extent to which fertility will decline in the intermediate future. In addition, the dominant preference for at least one child of each sex may also contribute to establishing a lower limit to the present fertility transition. Nevertheless, there is still considerable room for fertility to fall before these constraints will become major influences.

# APPENDIX

## DESCRIPTION OF SURVEYS AND SAMPLES

Much of the analysis of the present study relies on results from a series of national sample surveys conducted between 1969 and 1982. In this appendix, a brief description is provided for the surveys that served most frequently as data sources.

### The National Longitudinal Study of Social, Economic, and Demographic Change (LS1 and LS2)

The Longitudinal Study, as it is usually referred to, was conducted by the Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University. It actually consisted of a total of four separate surveys done in two rounds. Interviews were conducted in a sample of rural households in April and May, 1969 and in a sample of urban households a year later. These two surveys make up the first round of the study and are referred to jointly in the present study as LS1. The second round of the study consisted of reinterviews as well as additional new interviews for the rural sample in April and May, 1972 and for the urban sample a year later. Together they comprise LS2. Both ever-married women and household heads (predominantly male) were interviewed in both rounds.

Sampling procedures and characteristics of the sample have been described in detail elsewhere (Prachuabmoh et al., 1973; Prachuabmoh et al., 1972; Institute of Population Studies, 1971). In both rounds of the Longitudinal Study, the urban population was defined as living within officially designated municipal areas and the rural population was defined as living outside these areas. The rural sample included 45 villages in 15 districts. The urban survey included 32 sample blocks in Bangkok-

Thonburi (the capital and only metropolitan area) and 24 sample blocks in provincial towns. This reflects the fact that well over half of the urban population resides in the capital. The villages and city blocks covered were identical for both rounds with the exception of three villages that had to be dropped from the rural sample because of antigovernment activities. In order to preserve the cross-sectional nature of the second round, these villages were replaced by three other villages in another district in the same province. For all other villages or blocks, houses selected in the first round sample were retained in the second round. In addition, a selection of new respondents was also interviewed to compensate for loss to follow-up and growth in the number of households between the two rounds. Thus the second round samples were designed not only to allow for longitudinal analysis but also to preserve the cross-sectional nature of the samples.

Results for the country as a whole can be approximated by combining the results of the rural and urban phases of each round. Since different sampling fractions were used to select the rural and urban samples, it is necessary to appropriately weigh the results of each sample when combining them. This is accomplished by assigning the urban sample a weight of one and the rural sample a weight of seven. No account is taken of the fact that for each round the rural and urban phases occurred one year apart, but this should be borne in mind when interpreting the results.

## Survey of Fertility in Thailand (SOFT)

In 1975 the Survey of Fertility in Thailand (SOFT) was conducted under the auspices of the World Fertility Survey. Responsibility for the survey was shared jointly by the Institute of Population Studies at Chulalongkorn University and the National Statistical Office. Both ever-married women and household heads (mainly male) were interviewed. The bulk of the interviewing of SOFT took place during April and May, 1975. The sample consisted of over 4,000 households in both rural (nonmunicipal) and urban (municipal) areas selected from 267 clusters (234 villages in 78 districts of 34 provinces, 4 rural districts that are part of the Bangkok metropolis, and 29 urban blocks, 14 of which were in Bangkok). The result was approximately an equal probability national sample.

In the processing of results from SOFT for the present report, sample clusters were weighted to compensate for small original deviations from equal probability and also for differential nonresponse. A detailed description of the sample design and survey is available from the first country report (Institute of Population Studies and National Statistical Office, 1977).

## The Contraceptive Prevalence Surveys (CPS1 and CPS2)

The National Institute of Development Administration (NIDA), in collaboration with the Family Health Division of the Ministry of Public Health in Thailand, conducted two Contraceptive Prevalence Surveys under contract with Westinghouse Health Systems. Fieldwork for the first survey, CPS1, took place November, 1978 through January, 1979. A detailed description of the sample and methods is provided in the final report of the results (Suvanajata and Kamnuansilpa, 1979). The simple, straightforward questionnaire used was designed to provide information that would assist family planning program administrators in determining the progress of family planning efforts. It thus differed in purpose and to some extent in content from the other surveys due to its more "applied" orientation. In addition, unlike the other surveys, single as well as ever-married women were interviewed. The total sample consisted of 4,025 women (including 1,032 single women). The rural portion of the sample was selected by procedures parallel to those used to draw the SOFT sample. A major concern in drawing the rural sample was to increase conparability with SOFT. Thus the provinces selected for the CPS sample were drawn from the list of 34 provinces included in the SOFT rural sample (excluding Bangkok). From each of the selected provinces, one district was drawn from those included in SOFT and the other was independently and randomly selected from the districts not included in SOFT. The final rural sample consisted of women from 136 villages located in 34 districts of 17 provinces.

The urban portion of the CPS sample was drawn entirely from the Bangkok metropolitan area. It thus differs in two ways from the urban samples of the other surveys. First, it excludes provincial urban areas from the sample. Second, it treats the entire Bangkok metropolitan area as urban while in the other surveys parts of this area are considered rural and are included in the rural portion of

their samples (since officially, some parts of the Bangkok metropolitan area are classified as nonmunicipal areas). The proportion of the total CPS sample that comes from the Bangkok metropolitan area is approximately equal to the proportion of Thailand's population that live in areas officially classified as urban (including provincial urban areas). Examination of results suggests that the use of a sample from the Bangkok metropolitan area in CPS to represent the entire urban population of Thailand has little effect on the representativeness of the sample on the national level. Comparison of results from the urban sample of CPS with those from the urban samples of the other surveys, however, is more hazardous and potential incomparability should be borne in mind when interpreting findings.

The second Contraceptive Prevalence Survey (CPS2) was conducted in 1981 from March through June with interviewing concentrated in April and May. The sampling procedures employed in CPS2 were designed to yield a self-weighting nationally and regionally representative sample. As with CPS1, the questionnaire had a more "applied" orientation so that the information collected would be more directly useful for the National Family Planning Program. Unlike CPS1, the sample of CPS2 covered only ever-married women. A detailed description of the sample and methods is provided in the country report (Kamnuansilpa and Chamratrithirong, 1982).

The total sample of CPS2 comprised 7,038 ever-married women aged 15-49. Multistage sample techniques were employed to select both rural and urban sample phases. The procedures used to select the rural portion of CPS2 sample paralleled those in CPS1 (which in turn was drawn from the list of 34 sample provinces in SOFT). In addition to the 17 provinces covered in CPS1, seven more provinces were randomly selected with probability proportional to size from the remaining provinces. Two districts were selected from each of the sample provinces. One of the two districts in each of the 17 provinces covered in CPS1 was randomly selected from the two districts covered in the first round, while the other was randomly selected from the remaining districts. Next, in each selected district, two sub-districts were drawn. Again, in the provinces which were also selected in CPS1, one of the two sub-districts was the same as the first round. In the new provinces, each sub-district was new. In the next step, two villages were randomly selected from each sub-district drawn in the previous stage. In

the sub-district which was selected in the first round, the two villages were the same as in the first round. The final rural sample of CPS2 consisted of 5,823 ever-married women from 192 villages of 96 sub-districts, 48 districts, and 24 provinces.

The urban sample of CPS2 was drawn from the Bangkok metropolitan area and provincial municipal areas separately. Thus, the urban portion of CPS2 unlike that of CPS1, is representative of all of urban Thailand and not just the Bangkok metropolitan area. Interviewing yielded a total of 765 respondents in the Bangkok metropolitan area and 450 in provincal urban areas.

## The National Survey of Family Planning Practices, Fertility and Mortality (NS)

The National Survey was conducted in 1979 by the Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University, with interviewing concentrated in April and May. A description of the sample and methods is available in the summary report (Institute of Population Studies, 1981). The definition of rural and urban in the NS was in terms of municipal and nonmunicipal areas. The sample was somewhat unusual in design as it attempted to draw part of its respondents from the villages or city blocks included in the earlier LS2 samples and part of the respondents from new sample areas. In those LS2 sample areas selected, an attempt was made to reinterview former respondents from the previous survey. Some, but not all, of the villages and blocks, that had been part of the LS2 sample, as well as a number of new villages and blocks, were included. In the LS villages, lists of LS2 households were used in order to locate households with previous respondents. The sample design was such that in most LS villages all of the LS2 households should have been interviewed but attrition through death and migration had reduced the number, and these households were replaced through the sampling of reserve LS villages in different districts or provinces. The NS sample design also called for interviewing a number of new households in some of the LS villages, plus the new households interviewed in the new sample areas selected for the NS. In the urban LS areas the sampling fraction was much smaller than that used in LS2, with the result that only a relatively small proportion of the former LS households was selected for reinterview. For this reason, there was no need to select

new households in the urban LS areas and the small number recorded in this category was comprised of new households living in houses formerly occupied by LS2 households.

As a substantial portion of the sample is made up of households purposely selected because they took part in LS2, the NS sample does not provide a representative cross-section of the current national population. One result of the sampling procedure is a skewed age distribution, as members of LS2 households tended to be older than the average. Thus, among ever-married women in the reproductive ages, those at older reproductive ages are somewhat overrepresented relative to younger women.

The total NS sample consisted of 2,579 households: 2,144 in rural areas and 435 in urban areas. The sample covers 60 rural villages in 21 districts of 18 provinces (8 villages, while officially rural, are within the boundaries of the Bangkok metropolis). The urban portion of the sample derives from 56 blocks of which 32 are located in Bangkok and the remainder in 13 provincial towns. The rural and urban portions of the sample were self-weighting. Both household heads and ever-married women were interviewed.

## The Accelerated Family Planning and Health Project Baseline Survey (AFPH)

Unlike the other surveys described so far, the AFPH survey was undertaken in conjunction with an action project and intended specifically to provide baseline information to be used as part of an effort to evaluate the impact of the project. Results are to be compared with those from a second survey in order to make a "before and after" type comparison. The project being evaluated is the Accelerated Family Planning and Health Project sponsored by the World Bank. The project is designed to accelerate the expansion of family planning and rural health services in 20 selected provinces that are characterized by low-to-moderate family planning acceptance, high population densities, and poor health facililty coverage and thus believed to require special attention.

Since the sample was drawn only from these 20 provinces, it clearly is not representative of all of provincial Thailand. Nevertheless, a sufficient number of provinces were covered to make it of interest. To help gauge how the 20 provinces differed from the total number of provinces, the table below presents a

comparison of the unweighted average of a selected number of indicators for the 20 provinces and for all provinces excluding Bangkok.

| Mean of the Selected Provincial Measures | 20 Provinces | All Provinces Except Bangkok |
|---|---|---|
| Percent of population in metropolitan areas, 1979 | 6.5 | 8.7 |
| Electric consumption per capita | 15.1 | 15.2 |
| Percent of women aged 15-29 with 5+ years of school, 1970 | 7.7 | 10.8 |
| Female literacy rate, 1970 | 74.2 | 72.4 |
| Gross provincial product per capita, 1975-79 at 1972 constant prices (in baht) | 3,980 | 5,463 |
| Estimated continuing contraceptive users from National Program per 100 married women in reproductive ages, 1978-80 | 39.7 | 44.5 |
| Percent of households with a radio, mid-1970s | 66.6 | 65.7 |
| Percent of households with a TV, mid-1970s | 2.3 | 3.6 |

Currently married women in the reproductive ages (almost exclusively under 45) were interviewed in urban and rural areas of all 20 provinces. Fieldwork took place in October and November, 1979. A total of 750 urban women and 2,239 rural women were included. Since different sampling fractions were used to select the urban and rural samples, results presented for the total sample in this study have been weighted appropriately.

## CONCLUDING COMMENTS ON SAMPLES

Because of the unusual age distribution of the NS sample and, to a lesser extent, because of differences in the age distribution of women in reproductive ages included in the other samples (see Debavalya and Knodel, 1978), it is useful to control for age when comparing results across surveys. This is done in the present study through age-standardization, using the age distribution of women as reported in the 1970 census for the whole country as the standard.

Several additional points regarding the samples should be stressed, as they bear on the comparability of results across surveys. In LS1, LS2, and NS, some districts were excluded from the sampling universe for various reasons. The excluded areas encompassed the four predominantly Moslem provinces of the south of Thailand and some districts in politically sensitive areas when it was judged that the safety of the interview teams might be in jeopardy. The areas excluded contain around 20 percent of the rural population and around 5 percent of the urban population. Their exclusion may affect some of the study results and their compatibility with the results from SOFT, CPS1, and CPS2, because the excluded rural areas are generally more isolated than the included areas and thus less exposed to the forces of modernization currently at work in Thailand. An even more serious problem exists for comparisons between the AFPH results and those of other surveys for the reasons discussed above.

A second point concerns sample size. Since the data from the surveys are derived from samples, the results necessarily incorporate some degree of sampling error and only approximate national parameters. Particular note should be taken of the fact that the size of the urban parts of the SOFT, CPS, and NS samples are considerably smaller than either the rural parts of those surveys or the rural and urban samples of the LS. In the latter, a

much larger sampling fraction was used for the urban sample than for the rural sample to compensate for the fact that less than 20 percent of the Thai population lives in municipal areas. There was no similar compensation in the other samples.

## REFERENCES


Agarwala, S. N. (1962) Age at Marriage in India. Allahabad, India: Kitab Mahal Private, Ltd.

Arnold, F., and Chintana Pejaranonda (1977) Economic Factors in Family Size Decisions in Thailand. SOFT/WFS Report No. 3. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University, Population Survey Division of National Statistical Office, and East-West Population Institute.

Back, K. W. (1967) New frontiers in demography and social psychology. Demography 4(1):90-97.

Baker, J., and J. Clinton (1981) Abortion in Thailand: A Review of the Literature. Bangkok: The Population Council Regional Office for South and East Asia.

Bhumipadhi, Thanomrudee (1965) Menstruation among Thai medical students. Siriraj Hospital Gazette 17(9):519-528.

Blanchard, W., ed. (1958) Thailand: Its People, Its Society, Its Culture. New Haven, Conn.: Human Relations Area File Press.

Bongaarts, J. (1978) A framework for the proximate determinants of fertility. Population and Development Review 4:105-132.

Bongaarts, J. (1980a) Does malnutrition affect fecundity? Science 208(9):564-569.

Bongaarts, J. (1980b) The Fertility-Inhibiting Effects of the Intermediate Fertility Variables. Working Paper No. 57. The Population Council, New York.

Bongaarts, J. (1982) The proximate determinants of natural marital fertility. Forthcoming in Deteriminants of Fertility in Developing Countries: A Summary of Knowledge. National Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C.

Bongaarts, J., and R. Potter (forthcoming) Biology and Fertility Behavior: An Analysis of the Proximate Determinants. New York: Academic Press.

Bullough, V. L. (1981) Age at menarche: A misunderstanding. Science 23:365-366.

Bumpass, L. L., and E. K. Mburugu (1977) Age at marriage and completed family size. Social Biology 24(1):31-37.

Bunge, F., ed. (1981) Thailand: A Country Study. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

Burnight, R. G., and B. Leoprapai (1975) Attitudes of Rural Thai Women Toward Induced Abortion. Working Paper No. 7. Bangkok: Institute for Population and Social Research, Mahidol University.

Chamratrithirong, A. (1976) Fertility, Nuptiality and Migration in Thailand. 1970 Census: The Multiphasic Response Theory. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Brown University.

Chamratrithirong, A. (1980) Nuptiality in Thailand: A Cross-Sectional Analysis of the 1970 Census. Paper No. 69. Honolulu: East-West Population Institute.

Chamratrithirong, A. (1982) Female Status and Family Institution in Thailand. Bangkok: Institute for Population and Social Research, Mahidol University. Forthcoming (in Thai).

Chamratrithirong, A., and S. Boonpratuang (1977) Fertility. Subject Report No. 3. 1970 Population and Housing Census. Bangkok: National Statistical Office, Office of the Prime Minister.

Chamratrithirong, A., N. Debavalya, and J. Knodel (1978) Age Reporting in Thailand: Age at Last Birthday Versus Age at Next Birthday. Paper No. 25. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University.

Cho, L.-J., and R. Retherford (1973) Comparative analyses of recent fertility trends in East Asia. Pp. 163-178 in International Population Conference, Liege, 1973, Vol. 2. Liege: International Union for the Scientific Study of Population.

Coale, A. J. (1969) The decline of fertility in Europe from the French Revolution to World War II. In S. J. Behrman, L. Corsa, Jr., and R. Freedman, eds., Fertility and Family Planning. Ann Arbor, Mich.: University of Michigan Press.

Coale, A. J., and T. J. Trussell (1974) Model fertility schedules: Variations in the age structure of childbearing in human populations. Population Index 40:185-258. (See also Erratum, Population Index 41:572).

Coale, A. J., and T. J. Trussell (1978) Technical note: Finding the two parameters that specify a model schedule of marital fertility. Population Index 44:203-213.

Cochrane, S., and Kalpana Nandwani (1981) The Determinants of Fertility in 22 Villages in Northern Thailand. Population and Human Resource Division, Discussion Papers No. 81-59. World Bank, Washington, D.C.

Cowgill, D. O., K. Keovichit, R. Burnight, C. Vamarat, and J. R. Udry (1969) Family Planning in Bangkhen, Thailand. Bangkok: Institute for Population and Social Research, Mahidol University.

Davis, K. (1955) Institutional patterns favoring high fertility in underdeveloped areas. Eugenics Quarterly 2:33-39.

Davis, K., and J. Blake (1956) Social structure and fertility: An analytic framework. Economic Development and Cultural Change 4:211-235.

Debavalya, Nibhon (1981) Patterns of Fertility Decline in Asia with a Special Reference in the Case of Thailand. Paper presented at a meeting of the International Union of the Scientific Study of Population, Manila.

Debavalya, Nibhon, and J. Knodel (1978) Fertility Transition in Thailand: A Comparative Analysis of Survey Data. Report No. 3. World Fertility Survey, Survey of Fertility in Thailand, Bangkok.

Deemar Company, Ltd. (1975) Rural Population Survey Thailand 1975, Vol. 1. Prepared for Westinghouse Population Center, Westinghouse Health Systems. Bangkok: Deemar Company, Ltd.

de Young, J. (1955) Village Life in Modern Thailand. Berkeley and Los Angeles: University of California Press.

Durch, J. (1980) Nuptiality Patterns in Developing Countries: Implications for Fertility. Reports on the World Fertility Survey. Washington, D.C.: Population Reference Bureau.

Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (ESCAP) (1976) Population of Thailand. ESCAP Country Monograph Series No. 3. Bangkok: Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific.

El-Badry, M. A. (1969) Higher female than male mortality in some countries of South Asia: A digest. Journal of the American Statistical Association 64:1234-1244.

Foster, B. L. (1975) Continuity and change in rural Thai family structure. Journal of Anthropological Research 31:34-50.

Foster, B. L. (1978) Socioeconomic consequences of stem family composition in a Thai village. Ethnology 17:139-156.

Freedman, R., and L. C. Coombs (1974) Cross-Cultual Comparisons: Data on Two Factors in Fertility Behavior. New York: The Population Council.

Freedman, R., L. C. Coombs, M.-C. Chang, and T.-H. Sun (1974) Trends in fertility, family size preferences and practice of family planning: Taiwan, 1965-1973. Studies in Family Planning 5:270-288.

Friedlander, D., Z. Eisenbach, and C. Goldscheider (1980) Family size limitation and birth spacing: The fertility transition of African and Asian immigrants in Israel. Population and Development Review 6:581-593.

Gaither International (1980) A Study of Infant Feeding in Thailand (Bangkok/Thonburi Metropolitan Area and Rural Villages of the Central Region). Unpublished summary of findings. Prepared for Bristol-Myers, Inc., Ross Laboratories, and Wyeth International, Ltd.

Goldman, N., and C. F. Westoff (1981) Can fertility be estimated from current pregnancy data? Population Studies 34:535-550.

Goldstein, S. (1970) Religious fertility differentials in Thailand, 1960. Population Studies 24:325-337.

Goldstein, S., and A. Goldstein (1978) Thailand's urban population reconsidered. Demography 15(Aug):235-258.

Goldstein, S., A. Goldstein, and Penporn Tirasawat (1972) The Influence of Labor Force Participation and Education on Fertility in Thailand. Research Report No. 9. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University.

Goldstein, S., A. Goldstein, and Sauvaluck Piampiti (1973) The Effect of Broken Marriage on Fertility Levels in Thailand. Paper No. 4. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University.

Grandstaff, T. (1980) Family planning in the NERAD areas. Unpublished report, USAID/Thailand.

Gray, R. H. (1976) The menopause--epidemiological and demographic considerations. Pp. 25-49 in R. J. Deard, ed., The Menopause. A Guide to Current Research and Practice. Lancaster, England: MTP Press.

Gray, R. H. (1979a) Biological factors other than nutrition and lactation which may influence natural fertility: A review. Chapter 10 in H. Leridon and J. Menken, eds., Natural Fertility. Patterns and Determinants of Natural Fertility: Proceedings of a Seminar on Natural Fertility. Liege: Ordina Editions.

Gray, R. H. (1979b) Fertility in middle-age: Biological and social interactions in the determination of the fecundity. Journal of Biosocial Science (Supplement) 6:97-115.

Gray, R. H. (1982) Factors affecting natural fertility components: Health and nutrition. Forthcoming in Determinants of Fertility in Developing Countries: A Summary of Knowledge. National Academy of Sciences. Washington, D.C.

Hajnal, J. (1965) European marriage patterns in perspective. In D. V. Glass and D. E. C. Eversley, eds., Population in History. London: Edward Arnold.

Hanks, L., Jr., and J. R. Hanks (1963) Thailand: Equality between the sexes. In B. Ward, ed., Women in New Asia. Paris: UNESCO.

Hauck, H. M. (1956) Aspects of Health, Sanitation and Nutritional Status in a Siamese Rice Village. Southeast Asia Program Data Paper No. 22. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University.

Hawley, A. H., and Visid Prachuabmoh (1971a) Eight-month program effects: 1965. Chapter V in The Potharam Study. Reserach Report No. 4. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University.

Hawley, A. H., and Visid Prachuabmoh (1971b) Fertility before the program began: 1964. Chapter II in The Potharam Study. Research Report No. 4. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University.

Henderson, J. (1971) Area Handbook for Thailand. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

Henry, L. (1961) Some data on natural fertility. Eugenics Quarterly 8:81-91.

Hirschman, D., and R. Rindfuss (1981) The Sequence and Timing of Family Formation Events in Asia. Unpublished manuscript.

Institute of Population Studies (1971) The Methodology of the Longitudinal Study of Social, Economic and Demographic Change. Research Report No. 6. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University.

Institute of Population Studies (1979) Population Data Sheet 1979. Bangkok: Chulalongkorn University.

Institute of Population Studies (1981) National Survey Report. Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok.

Institute of Population Studies and National Statistical Office (1977) The Survey of Fertility in Thailand: County Report, Volumes I and II. Bangkok: Allied Printers.

Joint Thai/U.S. Evaluation Team (1979) Thailand National Family Planning Program Evaluation. Washington, D.C.: American Public Health Association.

Jones, G., and J. Rachapaetayakom (1970) Fertility and Contraception in the Rural North of Thailand. Bangkok: Manpower Planning Division, National Economic Development Board.

Jones, G., and Yanee Soonthornthum (1971) Fertility and Contraception in the Rural South of Thailand. Bangkok: Manpower Planning Division, National Economic Development Board.

Kamnuansilpa, Peerasit, and A. Chamratrithirong (1982) A New Decade of Fertility and Family Planning in Thailand: 1981 Contraceptive Prevalence Survey. Bangkok: Research Center, National Institute of Development Administration.

Kamnuansilpa, Peerasit, A. Chamratrithirong, and J. Knodel (1982) Thailand's continuing reproductive revolution: An update. International Family Planning Perspectives. Forthcoming.

Kanchanasinith, K., W. Kolsartsenee, and A. Bennett (1980) Attitudes of Religious Leaders Toward Family Planning and Abortion. Bangkok: National Family Planning Program, Ministry of Public Health.

Kaufman, H. K. (1976) Bangkhuad: A Community Study in Thailand. Tokyo: Charles E. Tuttle Company.

Kemp, J. H. (1970) Initial marriage residence in rural Thailand. In T. Bunnag and M. Smilkies, eds., Memorian Phya Anuman Rajdhon. Bangkok: Siam Society.

Khoo, S. E. (1979) Measuring the Thai family planning program's impact on fertility rates: A comparison of computer models. Studies in Family Planning 10:137-145.

Kingshill, K. (1960) Ku Daeng, The Red Tomb: A Village Study in Northern Thailand. Chiangmai: The Prince Royal College.

Knodel, J. (1977) Family limitation and the fertility transition: Evidence from the age patterns of fertility in Europe and Asia. Population Studies 31:219-249.

Knodel, J. (1979) From natural fertility to family limitation: The onset of fertility transition in a sample of German villages. Demography 16:493-521.

Knodel, J. (1981) Espacement des naissances et planification familiale: une critique de la methode Dupaquier-Lachiver. Annales Economies Societes Civilisations 36(3):479-494.

Knodel, J. (1982) Natural fertility: Age patterns, levels and trends. Forthcoming in Determinants of Fertility in Developing Countries: A Summary of Knowledge. National Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C.

Knodel, J., and A. Chamratrithirong (1978) Infant and Child Mortality in Thailand: Levels, Trends, and Differentials as Derived Through Indirect Estimation Techniques. Paper No. 57. Honolulu: East-West Population Institute.

Knodel, J., and Nibhon Debavalya (1978) Thailand's reproductive revolution. International Family Planning Perspectives and Digest 4:34-49.

Knodel, J., and Nibhon Debavalya (1980) Breastfeeding in Thailand: Trends and differentials 1969-1979. Studies in Family Planning 11:355-377.

Knodel, J., and Pichit Pitaktepsombati (1973) Thailand: Fertility and family planning among rural and urban women. Studies in Family Planning 4:229-255.

Knodel, J., and Pichit Pitaktepsombati (1975) Fertility and family planning in Thailand: Results from two rounds of a national study. Studies in Family Planning 6:402-413.

Knodel, J., and Sauvaluck Piampiti (1977) Response reliability in a longitudinal survey in Thailand. Studies in Family Planning 8:55-66.

Knodel, J., and Sauvaluck Piampiti (1978) Revised estimates of age-specific fertility rates from the Survey of Fertility in Thailand. Supplement to World Fertility Survey, Survey of Fertility in Thailand, Report No. 1, Vol. 1. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies and National Statistical Office.

Knodel, J., and Visid Prachuabmoh (1973) Desired family size in Thailand: Are the responses meaningful? Demography 10:619-637.

Knodel, J., and Visid Prachuabmoh (1974) Demographic aspects of fertility in Thailand. Population Studies 28:423-448.

Knodel, J., and Visid Prachuabmoh (1976) Preferences for sex of children in Thailand: A comparison of

husbands' and wives' attitudes. Studies in Family Planning 7:137-143.

Knodel, J., Nibhon Debavalya, and Peerasit Kamnuansilpa (1980) Thailand's continuing reproductive revolution. International Family Planning Perspectives 6(3):84-96.

Knodel, J., Peersit Kamnuansilpa, and A. Chamratrithirong (1982) Breastfeeding in Thailand: Data from the 1981 Contraceptive Prevalence Survey. Ann Arbor, Mich.: Population Studies Center, University of Michigan.

Koetsawang, S., ed. (1980) Facts About Abortion in Thailand. (In Thai). Bangkok: Thira. Karn Pim.

Kuo, E. (1980) Boy or Girl: A Comparative Study of Gender Preference of Parents. Unpublished manuscript, East-West Population Institute, Honolulu.

Lauro, D. (1979) The Demography of a Thai Village. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation. Research School of Social Sciences, Australian National University, Canberra, Australia.

Lesthaeghe, R. (1982) Lactation and Lactation-Related Variables, Contraception and Fertility: An Overview of Data Problems and World Trends. Paper prepared for the World Health Organization and U.S. National Academy of Sciences Seminar on Breastfeeding and Fertility Population, Geneva.

Lightfoot, P., and T. D. Fuller (1981) Circular-Rural-Urban Migration: A Study of Six Villages in Northeast Thailand. Unpublished paper, National Institute of Development Administration, Bangkok.

Limanonda, Bhassorn (1979) Mate Selection and Post-Nuptial Residence in Thailand. Paper No. 28. Bangkok: Institute for Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University.

Limanonda, Bhassorn, and Sunanta Suwannodom (1979) Surveys on Reproductive Health of Adolescents: Educational and Service Aspects. Occasional Paper No. 4. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University.

Ling, T. O. (1969) Buddhist factors in population growth and control: A survey based on Thailand and Ceylon. Population Studies 23(1):53-60.

McCann, M. F., L. S. Liskin, P. T. Piotrow, W. Rinehart, and G. Fox (1981) Breastfeeding, fertility, and family planning. Population Reports 1(24).

McClelland, G. H. (1979) Determining the impact of sex preferences on fertility: A consideration of parity progression ratio, dominance and stopping rule measures. Demography 16(3):377-388.

Mougne, C. (1974) The Social and Economic Correlations of Demographic Change in a Northern Thai Village. Papers I-III (unpublished).

Mougne, C. (1978) An ethnography of reproduction--changing pattern of fertility in a northern Thai village. Pp. 68-106 in P. A. Scott, ed., Nature and Man in South East Asia. London: School of Oriental African Studies, University of London.

Muangman, Debhanom (1979) A Study of Adolescent Fertility in Thailand. Bangkok: Faculty of Public Health, Mahidol University.

Muangman, Debhanom, and Anek Hirunraks (1980) Report on a Study on Knowledge, Attitudes and Practices on Family Planning of Buddhist Monks in Thailand. UNFPA Grant No. THA/76/P05. Bangkok: Faculty of Public Health, Mahidol University.

Muangman, Debhanom, and Somsak Nanta (1980) Report on A.K.A.P. Study of 1,000 Thai Masseuses Concerning Family Planning, Pregnancy and Abortion, Venereal Disease Infections, and Narcotic Addiction. UNPA Project No. THA/76/P05/E22-01. Bangkok: Faculty of Public Health, Mahidol University.

Muangman, Debhanom, R. G. Burnight, and P. J. Donaldson (1973) Contraception and coital frequency. Asian Journal of Medicine 9:127-128.

Nag, M. (1982) Factors affecting natural fertility components: Socio-cultural determinants. Forthcoming in Determinants of Fertility in Developing Countries: A Summary of Knowledge. National Academy of Sciences, Washington, D.C.

Narkavonnakit, Tongplaew, and A. Bennett (1981) Health consequences of induced abortion in rural Northeast Thailand. Studies in Family Planning 12(2):58-65.

National Research Council (1980) Fertility and Mortality Changes in Thailand, 1950-1975. Panel on Thailand, Committee on Population and Demography. Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences.

Page, H. J., R. J. Lesthaeghe, and I. H. Shah (forthcoming) Breastfeeding in Pakistan: An illustrative analysis. WFS Scientific Reports. The Hague: International Statistical Institute.

Pardthaisong, Tieng (1978) The Recent Fertility Decline in the Chiang Mai Area of Thailand. Paper No. 47. Honolulu: East-West Population Institute.

Placek, P. J., and G. E. Hendershot (1981) Introduction. Pp. 3-11 in Predicting Fertility. Lexington, Mass.: D.C. Heath and Company.

Popuang, Chirapat (1980) Demographic and Sexual Aspects of Thai Vasectomized Men. Unpublished Masters thesis, Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok.

Population Crisis Committee (1979) World abortion trends. Population No. 9.

Porapakkham, Yawarat, and Somjai Serikajornkitjarean (1981) Religious Fertility Differentials: A Case Study in Jana District, Thailand 1980. Bangkok: Department of Biostatistics, Mahidol University.

Porapakkham, Yawarat, and A. Bennett (1978) Family Planning/Health and Hygiene Project: A Report on the Baseline Survey. Bangkok.

Potter, J. M. (1976) Thai Peasant Social Structure. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Potter, S. (1977) Family Life in a Northern Thai Village. Berkeley, Calif.: University of California Press.

Prachuabmoh, Visid, J. Knodel, Suchart Prasithrathsin, and Nibhon Debavalya (1972) The Rural and Urban Population of Thailand: Comparative Profiles. Research Report No. 8. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University.

Prachuabmoh, Visid, J. Knodel, and Pichit Pitaktepsombati (1973) The Longitudinal Study of Social, Economic, and Demographic Change in Thailand: The Second Rounds. Paper No. 3. Bangkok: Institute of Population Studies, Chulalongkorn University.

Prachuabmoh, Visid, J. Knodel, and J. O. Alers (1974) Preference for sons, desire for additional children, and family planning in Thailand. Journal of Marriage and the Family (Aug):601-644.

Rauyajin, Oratai (1979) Induced Abortion: Facts and Prospects in Thailand. Mimeographed manuscript, Faculty of Social Sciences and Humanities, Mahidol University, Bangkok.

Research and Evaluation Unit, National Family Planning Program (1979) Rural Abortion in Thailand: A National Survey of Practitioners. Bangkok: Ministry of Public Health.

Riley, J. N. (1972) Family Organization and Population Dynamics in a Central Thai Village. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Anthropology, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill.

Robinson, W. C., and Chupensri Wongbuddha (1980) A revised set of urban population estimates for Thailand. In W. C. Robinson, ed., Studies in Thai Demographic-Economic Planning. Bangkok: Population

and Manpower Division, National Economic and Social Development Board.

Rosenfield, A. G., Winich Asavasena, and Jumroon Mikhonorn (1973) Person-to-person communication in Thailand. Studies in Family Planning 4:145.

Rosenfield, A. G., A. Bennett, Somsok Varakamin, and D. Lauro (1982) Thailand's family planning program: an Asian success story. International Family Planning Perspectives 8(2): 43-51.

Ross, J. A., and K. S. Koh (1977) Transition to the small family: A comparison of 1964-1975 time trends in Korea and Taiwan. In Y. Chang and P. J. Donaldson, eds., Population Change in the Pacific Region. Thirteenth Pacific Science Congress. Vancouver.

Sermsri, Santhat (1980) Differentials in Urban-Rural Demographic Behavior and Events in Thailand. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Sociology, Brown University.

Sethaput, Chanya, and Boonlert Leoprapai (1977) A Follow-Up Study of Vasectomized Men in Thailand. Bangkok: Institute for Population and Social Research, Mahidol University.

Shevasunt, Somphong, and D. Hogan (1979) Fertility and Family Planning in Rural Northern Thailand. Chicago: The Community and Family Study Center, University of Chicago.

Siddiqui, Mohammad (1979) The Initiation of Contraception in Taiwan. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Sociology, University of Michigan.

Smith, D. P. (1981) Illustrative analyses: Marriage dissolution and remarriage in Sri Lanka and Thailand. WFS Scientific Report No. 17. Voorburg, The Netherlands: International Statistical Institute.

Smith, H., D. Bernier, F. Bunge, F. Rintnz, R.-S. Shinn, and S. Teleki (1968) Area Handbook for Thailand. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.

Smith, P. C. (1978) Indexes of nuptiality: Asia and the Pacific. Asian and Pacific Census Forum 5(2):9-12.

Smith, P. C. (1980) Asian marriage patterns in transition. Journal of Family History 5:58-97.

Sudham, Pira (1980) Life in a Buddhist temple. Sawadee, July-August.

Suvanajata, Titaya, and Peerasit Kamnuansilpa (1979) Thailand Contraceptive Prevalence Survey: Country Report 1979. Bangkok: Research Center, National Institute of Development Administration.

Thailand, National Economic and Social Development Board (1977) Thailand: Social Indicators 1975. Bangkok: National Economic and Social Development Board.

Thailand, National Economic and Social Development Board (1978) Report on the Survey of Fertility Behavior in the Context of Demographic and Socio-Economic Development of Muslim Societies in Thailand. Bangkok: Population Planning Sector, Population and Manpower Planning Division, National Economic and Social Development Board.

Thailand, National Statistical Office (1978) Report on the Survey of Population Change 1974-1976. Bangkok: National Statistical Office.

Thitsa, Khin (1980) Providence and prostitution--image and reality for women in Buddhist Thailand. In Change. International Reports No. 2. London: Calvert's North Star Press.

Thornton, A. (1978) Marital dissolution, remarriage, and childbearing. Demography 15:361-380.

Trisiripisarn, Vipa, Supatra Aoucharoen, Pramuan Veerusaen, Virat Wongsaengnark, and Saowanee Prompongsa (1974) Preliminary report of the study of age at menarche and menopause of Thai women at present. Chulalongkorn Medical Journal 19:92.

Trussell, J. (1980) Illustrative analyses: Age at first marriage in Sri Lanka and Thailand. WFS Scientific Reports. The Hague: International Statistical Institute.

Udry, J. R., F. R. Deven, and S. J. Coleman (1982) A cross-national comparison of the relative influence of male and female age on the frequency of marital intercourse. Journal of Biosocial Science 14:1-6.

United Nations (1956) Demographic Yearbook. New York: United Nations.

United Nations (1979) National Experience in the Formulation and Implementation of Population Policy, 1960-1978. ST/ESA/SER.R/31. New York: United Nations.

United Nations (1982) Indirect Techniques for Demographic Estimation. New York: United Nations.

United Nations Fund for Population Activities (1979) Thailand, Report of Mission on Needs Assessment for Population Assistance. Report No. 13. New York: UNFPA.

Vallin, J. (1976) La Population de la Thailand. Population 31:153-174.

van de Walle, E. (1973) Age at marriage and fertility. IPPF Medical Bulletin 7(3):1-2.

van de Walle, E., and J. Knodel (1980) Europe's fertility transition: New evidence and lessons for today's developing world. Population Bulletin 34(6).

Van Ginneken, J. K. (1974) Prolonged breastfeeding as a birth spacing method. Studies in Family Planning 5:201-205.

Van Ginneken, J. K. (1978) The impact of prolonged breastfeeding on birth intervals and on postpartum amenorrhea. Pp. 179-198 in W. H. Mosley, ed., Nutrition and Human Reproduction. New York: Plenum Press.

World Bank (1980a) Thailand: Toward a Development Strategy of Full Participation. A World Bank Country Study. Washington, D.C.: East Asia and Pacific Regional Office, The World Bank.

World Bank (1980b) World Development Report, 1980. New York: Oxford University Press.

World Bank (1980c) World Tables, 2nd ed. Baltimore, Md.: The Johns Hopkins University Press.

Wyshak, G., and R. Frisch (1982) Evidence for a secular trend in age at menarche. New England Journal of Medicine 306:1033-1035.

Yoddumnern, Bencha (1981) Premarital Use of Family Planning: Effects on Age at Marriage. IPSR Publication No. 48. Bangkok: Institute for Population and Social Research, Mahidol University.

Zimmerman, C. C. (1931) Siam: Rural Economic Survey 1930-31. Bangkok: The Bangkok Times Press.

**Reports and Workshop Proceedings of the Committee on Population and Demography**

| | |
|---|---|
| Report No. 1 | *Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in the Republic of Korea (1980)* |
| Report No. 2 | *Fertility and Mortality Changes in Thailand, 1950-1975 (1980)* |
| Report No. 3 | *Fertility and Mortality Changes in Honduras, 1950-1974 (1980)* |
| Report No. 4 | *Age Misreporting and Age-Selective Underenumeration: Sources, Patterns, and Consequences for Demographic Analysis (1981)* |
| Report No. 5 | *Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Bangladesh (1981)* |
| Report No. 6 | *Collecting Data for the Estimation of Fertility and Mortality (1981)* |
| Report No. 7 | *Data Collection: A Statement for Administrators (1981)* |
| Report No. 8 | *Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Turkey, 1935-1975 (1982)* |
| Report No. 9 | *The Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Egypt (1982)* |
| Report No. 10 | *Indirect Techniques for Demographic Estimation (1981)** |
| Report No. 11 | *Computer Programs for Demographic Estimation: A User's Guide (1981)* |
| *Research on the Population of China: Proceedings of a Workshop (1981)* | |
| Report No. 12 | *Levels and Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Colombia (1982)* |
| Report No. 13 | *Fertility in Thailand: Trends, Differentials, and Proximate Determinants (1982)* |
| Report No. 14 | *The Determinants of Fertility in the Republic of Korea (1982)* |
| Report No. 15 | *Determinants of Fertility in Developing Countries: A Summary of Knowledge (1983)*** |
| Report No. 16 | *Determinants of Fertility in Developing Countries: An Overview and Research Agenda (1982)*** |
| Report No. 17 | *Socioeconomic Determinants of Fertility Behavior in Developing Nations: Theory and Initial Results (1982)* |
| Report No. 18 | *An Exploratory Study of the 'Synthesis Framework' of Fertility Determination With World Fertility Survey Data (1982)**** |
| Report No. 19 | *Statistics in Fertility Research: Value and Limitations (1983)* |
| Report No. 20. | *Fertility Decline in Indonesia: Analysis and Interpretation (1983)* |
| Report No. 21 | *Levels and Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Brazil (1983)* |

*Being published as manual X in the series of manuals of demographic analysis of the Population Division, Department of International Economic and Socal Affairs. United Nations (1982).

**Limited edition; being published by Academic Press, Inc. as part of *Determinants of Fertility in Developing Countries: A Summary of Knowledge.* © 1983 Academic Press, Inc.

***Published by World Fertility Survey, *Scientific Reports*, No. 40 November 1982.

5.11

COMMITTEE ON
POPULATION AND DEMOGRAPHY

Report No. 14

# The Determinants of Fertility in the Republic of Korea

Lee-Jay Cho
Fred Arnold
Tai Hwan Kwon

Panel on Fertility Determinants
Committee on Population and Demography
Commission on Behavioral and
Social Sciences and Education
National Research Council

NATIONAL ACADEMY PRESS
Washington, D.C. 1982

NOTICE: The project that is the subject of this report was approved by the Governing Board of the National Research Council, whose members are drawn from the councils of the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the Institute of Medicine. The members of the committee responsible for the report were chosen for their special competences and with regard for appropriate balance.

This report has been reviewed by a group other than the authors according to procedures approved by a Report Review Committee consisting of members of the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the Institute of Medicine.

The National Research Council was established by the National Academy of Sciences in 1916 to associate the broad community of science and technology with the Academy's purposes of furthering knowledge and of advising the federal government. The Council operates in accordance with general policies determined by the Academy under the authority of its congressional charter of 1863, which establishes the Academy as a private, nonprofit, self-governing membership corporation. The Council has become the principal operating agency of both the National Academy of Sciences and the National Academy of Engineering in the conduct of their services to the government, the public, and the scientific and engineering communities. It is administered jointly by both Academies and the Institute of Medicine. The National Academy of Engineering and the Institute of Medicine were established in 1964 and 1970, respectively, under the charter of the National Academy of Sciences.

Available from

NATIONAL ACADEMY PRESS
2101 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20418

Printed in the United States of America

PANEL ON FERTILITY DETERMINANTS

W. PARKER MAULDIN (Chair), The Rockefeller Foundation, New York
ELZA BERQUO, Centro Brasileiro de Analise e Planejamento, Sao Paulo, Brazil
WILLIAM BRASS, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine
DAVID R. BRILLINGER, Department of Statistics, University of California, Berkeley
V.C. CHIDAMBARAM, World Fertility Survey, London
JULIE DAVANZO, Rand Corporation, Santa Monica
RICHARD A. EASTERLIN, Department of Economics, University of Southern California, Los Angeles
JAMES T. FAWCETT, East-West Population Institute, East-West Center, Honolulu
RONALD FREEDMAN, Population Studies Center, University of Michigan
DAVID GOLDBERG, Population Studies Center, University of Michigan
RONALD GRAY, School of Hygiene and Public Health, The Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore
PAULA B. HOLLERBACH, Center for Policy Studies, The Population Council, New York
RONALD LEE, Graduate Group in Demography, University of California, Berkeley
ROBERT A. LEVINE, Graduate School of Education, Harvard University
SUSAN C.M. SCRIMSHAW, School of Public Health, University of California, Los Angeles
ROBERT WILLIS, Department of Economics, State University of New York, Stony Brook

ROBERT J. LAPHAM, Study Director

COMMITTEE ON POPULATION AND DEMOGRAPHY

ANSLEY J. COALE (Chair), Office of Population Research, Princeton University
WILLIAM BRASS, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine
LEE-JAY CHO, East-West Population Institute, East-West Center, Honolulu
RONALD FREEDMAN, Population Studies Center, University of Michigan
NATHAN KEYFITZ, Department of Sociology, Harvard University
LESLIE KISH, Institute for Social Research, University of Michigan
W. PARKER MAULDIN, Population Division, The Rockefeller Foundation, New York
JANE MENKEN, Office of Population Research, Princeton University
SAMUEL PRESTON, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania
WILLIAM SELTZER, Statistical Office, United Nations
CONRAD TAEUBER, Kennedy Institute, Center for Population Research, Georgetown University
ETIENNE VAN DE WALLE, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania

ROBERT J. LAPHAM, Study Director

NOTE: Members of the Committee and its panels and working groups participated in this project in their individual capacities; the listing of their organizational affiliation is for identification purposes only, and the views and designations used in this report are not necessarily those of the organizations mentioned.

CONTENTS

LIST OF TABLES ix

LIST OF FIGURES xi

PREFACE xiii

SUMMARY 1

Family Planning, 5
Induced Abortion, 6
Age at Marriage, 7
Other Determinants of Fertility, 8
Prospects for Future Fertility Trends, 10

1 INTRODUCTION 13

Background, 14
Organization of the Report, 18

Korea's Demographic History, 18
Data Sources, 24

2 FERTILITY LEVELS AND TRENDS 32

Fertility Levels and Trends, 34
Local Area Fertility Differentials, 41
Demographic Analysis of Fertility Decline, 44
Natural Fertility, 50
Fecundity, 51
Breastfeeding, 54

3 SOCIOECONOMIC CONDITIONS AND FERTILITY 58

Urbanization and Migration, 59
Socioeconomic Status, 61
Female Employment, 63
Infant and Child Mortality, 64
Community and Ecological Factors, 65

Type of Subsistence Economy, 67
Demand for Labor, 69
The Work Cycle, 70
Other Ecological Factors, 71
Ecological Versus Sociocultural Factors, 72

Notes, 73

4 MARRIAGE, THE FAMILY, AND FERTILITY 75

Proportions Currently Married, 75
Nuptiality and Fertility, 76
Proportions Divorced and Widowed, 79
Universality of Marriage, 81
Timing of Marriage, 84
Divorce Norms and Practices, 88
Remarriage of Divorced and Widowed Persons, 89
The Family and Fertility, 92
The Family System, 93
Familism, 96
Husband-Wife Relations, 98
Kinship, 99
Notes, 100

5 THE DEMAND FOR CHILDREN 101

Family-Size Desires, 101
The Value of Children, 106

The Productive Utility of Children, 106
The Security Utility of Children, 107
The Consumption Utility of Children, 109
Other Values of Children, 109
Direct Costs of Children, 110
The Opportunity Costs of Children, 112
Other Costs of Children, 112
Parity-Specific Values, 113

Son Preference, 115

Historical Supports for Son Preference, 115
Measures of Son Preference, 117
The Value of Sons and Daughters, 121
The Effect of Son Preference on Fertility and Family Planning, 122

Notes, 125

6 FAMILY PLANNING AND ABORTION 126

Development of the National Family Planning Program, 126
Mothers Clubs, 129
Trends in Contraceptive Practice, 131
Use of Different Contraceptive Methods, 135
Induced Abortion, 139
The Prevalence of Induced Abortion, 140
Patterns and Differentials of Abortion, 143
Abortion and the Practice of Family Planning, 145
Effects of Abortion on Fertility, 146

REFERENCES 149

LIST OF TABLES


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Selected Socioeconomic Indices | 16 |
| 2 | Households and Population, 1672-1920 | 19 |
| 3 | Population and Intercensal Growth Rates: All Korea, 1925-44 and Republic of Korea, 1949-80 | 21 |
| 4 | Estimated Completeness of Birth and Death Registration in Korea, 1910-65 | 22 |
| 5 | National Fertility Surveys, 1965-78 | 30 |
| 6 | Summary Indices of Fertility | 35 |
| 7 | Age-Specific Birth Rates, 1960-80 | 38 |
| 8 | Mean Number of Children Ever Born, 1960-75 | 40 |
| 9 | Ever-Married Total Fertility Rates by Province, 1966-70 to 1976-80 | 41 |
| 10 | Simple Percent Decomposition of the Change in the Total Fertility Rate | 45 |
| 11 | Elaborated Percent Decomposition of the Change in the Total Fertility Rate | 47 |
| 12 | Selected Measures of Fertility, 1925-60 | 51 |
| 13 | Percentage of Couples Reported as Definitely Fecund, 1968-76 | 53 |
| 14 | Own-Children Estimates of Total Fertility Rates per Woman, 1960, 1966, 1970, and 1975 | 60 |
| 15 | Marital Status Distribution of Women by Age Group, 1935-75 | 77 |
| 16 | Indices of Overall Fertility ($I_f$), Marital Fertility ($I_g$), and Proportion Married ($I_m$), by Urban and Rural Area, 1925-75 | 79 |
| 17 | Proportions of Ever-Married Women by Status of First Marriage, 1974 | 82 |
| 18 | Mean Age of Women at Dissolution of First Marriage by Reason, 1974 | 83 |
| 19 | Singulate Mean Age at First Marriage by Sex, 1925-75 | 84 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 20 | Rate of Remarriage (in percent) by Reason, for Women Whose First Marriage was Dissolved, 1974 | 90 |
| 21 | Average Number of Children Considered Ideal | 102 |
| 22 | Proportion of Women Who Want No More Children | 104 |
| 23 | Expected Economic Support After Parents' Retirement | 108 |
| 24 | Values Attached to the Next Child | 114 |
| 25 | Desired Sex of Next Child Among Currently Married, Fecund, Nonpregnant Women Who Want a Future Birth, 1974 | 119 |
| 26 | Percent of Currently Married, Fecund, Nonpregnant Women Who Want No More Children, by Number of Living Daughters and Sons, 1974 | 123 |
| 27 | Contraceptive Practice Rates by Woman's Age and Residence (percent of currently married women), 1966-79 | 132 |
| 28 | Contraceptive Practice Rates by Women's Education and Residence (percent of currently married women aged 15-44), 1966-79 | 134 |
| 29 | Contraceptive Practice Rates by Method of Contraception and Residence (percent of currently married women aged 15-44), 1966-79 | 135 |
| 30 | Percent of Ever-Married Women Who Have Experienced an Induced Abortion | 141 |
| 31 | Total Induced Abortion Rates (per 1,000) by Type of Area, 1960-76 | 142 |

LIST OF FIGURES


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Estimated Total Fertility Rates, 1960-74 | 36 |
| 2 | Age-Specific Fertility Rates (per 1,000 women), 1971-75 | 37 |
| 3 | Coale's Index of Marital Fertility (Ig) for Countries, 1960 | 42 |
| 4 | Decrease in Coale's Index of Marital Fertility (Ig) for Counties, 1960-70 | 43 |
| 5 | Age-Specific Fertility Rates for Korea, 1925-30 to 1980 | 52 |
| 6 | Percent of Women Who Breastfed for More Than 9, 12, 18, and 24 Months after First Birth, by Year of First Birth | 56 |
| 7 | Indices of Overall Fertility ($I_f$), Marital Fertility ($I_g$), and Proportion Married ($I_m$), by Urban and Rural Area, 1925-75 | 80 |
| 8 | Contraceptive Practice Rates by Women's Age | 133 |

# PREFACE

The Committee on Population and Demography was established in April 1977 by the National Research Council in response to a request by the Agency for International Development (AID) of the U.S. Department of State. It was widely felt by those concerned that the time was ripe for a detailed review of levels and trends of fertility and mortality in the developing world. Although most people in the demographic community agree that mortality has declined in almost all developing countries during the last 30 years, there is uncertainty about more recent changes in mortality in some countries, about current levels of fertility, about the existence and extent of recent changes in fertility, and about the factors determining reductions in fertility.

In 1963, a Panel on Population Problems of the Committee on Science and Public Policy of the National Academy of Sciences published a report entitled The Growth of World Population. The appointment of that panel and the publication of its report were expressions of the concern then felt by scientists, as well as by other informed persons in many countries, about the implications of population trends. At that time, the most consequential trend was the pronounced and long-continued acceleration in the rate of increase of the population of the world, and especially of the population of the poorer countries. It was estimated in 1963 that the annual rate of increase of the global population had reached 2 percent, a rate that, if continued, would cause the total to double every 35 years. The disproportionate contribution of low-income areas to that acceleration was caused by rapid declines in mortality combined with high fertility that remained almost unchanged: the birth rate was nearly fixed or declined more modestly than the death rate.

Since the earlier report, however, the peak rate of growth in the world's population has apparently been passed. A dramatic decline in the birth rate in almost all the more developed countries has lowered their aggregate annual rate of increase to well below 1 percent, and the peak rate of increase has also apparently been passed in the less-developed parts of the world as a whole. A sharp decline in fertility in many low-income areas has more than offset the generally continued reduction in the death rate, although the rate of population increase remains high in almost all less-developed countries.

The causes of the reductions in fertility--whether they are the effect primarily of such general changes as lowered infant mortality, increasing education, urban rather than rural residence, and improving status of women, or of such particular changes as spreading knowledge of and access to efficient methods of contraception or abortion--are strongly debated. There are also divergent views of the appropriate national and international policies on population in the face of these changing trends. The differences in opinion extend to different beliefs and assertions about what the population trends really are in many of the less-developed countries. Because births and deaths are recorded very incompletely in much of Africa, Asia, and Latin America, levels and trends of fertility and mortality must be estimated, and disagreement has arisen in some instances about the most reliable estimates of those levels and trends.

It was to examine these questions that the Committee on Population and Demography was established within the Commission on Behavioral and Social Sciences and Education of the National Research Council. It was funded for a period of five and one-half years by AID under Contract No. AID/pha-C-1161 and Grant No. AID/DSPE-G-0061. Chaired by Ansley J. Coale, the committee has undertaken three major tasks:

1. To evaluate available evidence and prepare estimates of levels and trends of fertility and mortality in selected developing nations;
2. To improve the technologies for estimating fertility and mortality when only incomplete or inadequate data exist (including techniques of data collection);
3. To evaluate the factors determining the changes in birth rates in less-developed nations.

Given the magnitude of these tasks, the committee decided to concentrate its initial efforts on the first two tasks; it initiated work on the third task in October 1979 when the Panel on Fertility Determinants was established.

As of early 1982, 168 population specialists, including 94 from developing countries, have been involved in the work of the committee as members of panels or working groups. The committee, the commission, and the National Research Council are grateful for the unpaid time and effort these experts have been willing to give.

The committee approaches the first task through careful assessment, by internal and external comparison, and through analysis, by application of the most reliable methods known, of all the data sources available. Each of the country studies therefore consists of the application of a range of methods to a number of data sets. Estimates of levels and recent trends judged to be the best that are feasible with available resources are then developed on the grounds of their consistency and plausibility and the robustness of the individual methods from which they were derived.

The committee's second task, refinement of methodology, is seen as a by-product of achieving the first. The application of particular methods to many different data sets from different countries and referring to different time periods will inevitably provide valuable information about the practical functioning of the methods themselves. Particular data sets might also require the development of new methodology or the refinement of existing techniques.

The third task of the committee, evaluation of factors determining birth rates, is the most difficult. Research on the determinants of fertility change has been carried out by scholars from several disciplines, and there is no comprehensive accepted theory of fertility change to guide the evaluation. Because of this state of knowledge of the causes of reductions in fertility and the difficulty of the task, the committee and the Commission on Behavioral and Social Sciences and Education established the separately funded Panel on Fertility Determinants, which includes scholars from anthropology, demography, economics, epidemiology, psychology, sociology, and statistics. Three committee members serve on the panel.

This report is one of the panel's country studies. It has been prepared by Lee-Jay Cho, director, East-West Population Institute, East-West Center; Fred Arnold,

assistant director for Professional Education, East-West Population Institute; and Tai Hwan Kwon, director, Population and Development Studies Center, College of Social Sciences, Seoul National University.

Much of the work on this study was carried out at the East-West Population Institute. Tai Hwon Kwon visited the Institute for two extended periods during 1981 to work on the study. In addition, work on the study was conducted at the Population and Development Studies Center, Seoul National University. The panel and the committee are grateful to these institutions for logistical support provided to the authors.

The authors, panel, and committee would like to thank Jae-Young Park, Soon Choi, Hee-Pyo Lee, and Nam-Il Kim for their assistance and suggestions; Jane Menken and John Knodel for comments on an earlier draft of this report; Robert Hearn for editorial assistance; and Kathy Martinez for typing the draft manuscript. The draft report was discussed at a country studies workshop organized by the panel in January, 1982, with financial assistance from the Rockefeller Foundation. Authors of the several panel country studies provided ideas and commented on the Korea study at that workshop. Finally, panel and committee reviewers provided advice and suggestions.

Several members of the panel and committee staff assisted in the preparation of this report. Appreciation is expressed to Carole Turley and Irene Martinez, who helped type the text and tables, and to Rona Briere, who edited the report. Elaine McGarraugh handled the production editing details with her usual precision and alacrity.

W. PARKER MAULDIN, Chair
Panel on Fertility Determinants

## SUMMARY

Until the turn of the century, Korea was basically a traditional agricultural society, maintaining political and social stability with virtually no external contact, and frequently referred to as a "hermit kingdom." From the perspective of the demographic transition, this period (characterized by high mortality and fertility levels resulting in almost negligible growth) was the pre-transitional stage. Historical records show that from the sixteenth to the nineteenth century the population fluctuated between 5 and 7 million.

The beginning of the demographic transition in Korea may be considered as covering the several decades prior to the end of World War II. The level of mortality slowly declined with the benefit of Western medical technology and the introduction of public health measures under Japanese colonial rule. This moderate reduction in the death rate and the continued high birth rate contributed to significant population growth. In 1944, toward the end of the Japanese occupation, the size of the population in the Korean peninsula was approximately 25 million.

The period from the partition in 1945, which divided Korea along the thirty-eighth parallel, to 1955, when the first simplified census was conducted, embraced post-World War II political and social unrest and confusion, heavy return migration from abroad, the destruction and disruption caused by the Korean War, and the consequent dislocation and movement of the population. This period may be regarded as a "dark age" in the availability of population data. Although Korea's vital registration statistics are still incomplete and deficient, demographers have recently developed, refined and generated other types of demographic statistics, based

largely on census and survey data, that have permitted adequate fertility and mortality measurements. A series of censuses, taken almost regularly every five years from 1955, has provided a sufficient basis for refining own-children fertility estimates; numerous KAP and specialized demographic surveys conducted in the 1960s and 1970s have served as a useful check on these census estimates, and have also provided a rich source of information on fertility determinants. The high quality of age data from Korean censuses, combined with this intense technical demographic analysis of census, survey, and vital registration data, has permitted accurate estimates of fertility and of its differentials over time.

The present examination of available fertility data has shown that the TFR changed little from 1930 to 1960; due to balancing trends in the proportions married among women of childbearing ages and marital fertility. The rather low level of marital fertility during the 1930s, which was only 54 percent of Hutterite fertility, increased by almost 25 percent by 1960; apparently changing breastfeeding practices, in particular the abandonment of very long nursing, contributed to reducing long birth intervals and hence to increasing marital fertility. During the same period, the proportion married as measured by Coale's $I_m$ index declined by 21 percent. The Korean War years (1950-1953) witnessed a slightly lower birth rate, which continued until 1957. Fertility then increased in the late 1950s, reaching its highest level around 1960 with a TFR of about 6, which is equivalent to the level observed for the pre-World War period of 1925-1945. After the Korean War the level of mortality, especially infant and child mortality, declined precipitously, and population growth peaked at an explosive rate of 2.7 percent during the intercensal period of 1955-1960. By 1960, the population of the Republic of Korea had increased to 25 million.

Between 1960 and 1980, a major demographic transition took place in the midst of rapid social and economic change. After 1960, fertility took a dramatic downturn; despite this decline, however, by 1980 the population had increased to 38 million, representing a growth of 52 percent in 20 years. The rapid fertility decline continued until 1967 and then slackened for the next five years; there was another sharp decline in the period 1972-75, but for the most recent intercensal period of 1975-80, the decline has been less rapid. The resulting 1980 TFR of 2.9 and CBR of 22 were both about half their respective levels in 1960.

Roughly paralleling these fertility declines, ideal family size has been cut in half in slightly more than two decades. The ideal range of three to five children common in the 1960s has now dropped to a norm of only two to three; more than three fourths of women who already have two children do not want any more. Moreover, women now prefer to have their children in rather quick succession after marriage and to complete childbearing at a relatively young age.

During the latter half of the 1960s, first, second, and third birth intervals decreased sharply. Estimates of fertility by duration since first marriage indicate that birth rates rose sharply at shorter durations and fell precipitously at higher durations during the 1960s and the first half of the 1970s.

The decline of cohort fertility has been less dramatic than that of either period fertility or ideal family size. For real cohorts of women who reached aged 45-49 in 1975, the peak childbearing years below age 30 occurred before 1960, when marital fertility was still very high and had not yet begun to decline. Therefore, completed family size at ages 45-49 for real cohorts, based on census data on children ever born, did not decrease nearly as dramatically as the TFR based on period fertility measures. The figures on children ever born show considerable inertia since they embody, particularly for older women, a good deal of high-fertility experience that occurred prior to the onset of the marital fertility decline in the 1960s.

In examining areal differentials, the present study found that although fertility declines occurred in all localities, these were only slight in some places, particularly in the least modernized part of the country along the east coast and in the rural areas of the less-developed southwestern regions. In the 1960s, both socioeconomic factors and IUD acceptance had a negative impact on marital fertility in rural areas; however, the effect of socioeconomic status is not discernible among younger women; and IUD acceptance had a greater negative impact on fertililty in communities with relatively low levels of socoeconomic development.

Applying a decomposition procedure, this study has examined the two principal components of change in the TFR from 1960 to 1975: changes in population composition by marital status and changes in marital fertility. The results show that the decline in marital fertility after age 30 accounts for most of the change in the TFR; for

the period 1966-70, a rise in marital fertility at ages below 30 acted to increase the TFR. Changes in the proportions married were responsible for about one fourth of the fertility decline over the period 1960-75. It is interesting to note that decreases in the proportions married at ages below 30 contributed to the TFR reduction, while increases in the proportions married at ages 30 and over acted in the opposite direction over the entire period. The fact that most of the decline in the TFR since 1960 is accounted for by the reduction of marital fertility is consistent with the fact that age at marriage was already quite late by 1960 and increased only moderately after that time.

When the variables of education and residence were added in the decomposition of the TFR change from 1960 to 1975, it was found that the reduction in marital fertility contributed heavily to the TFR decline (73 percent), and that most of the remaining decline was due to education. Place of residence was less important than education, and changes in marital status had a negligible contribution. Much of the explanatory weight of changing marital status shifted to education; this is plausible since the rise in educational levels resulting from longer schooling tends to delay age at first marriage.

Many factors have been suggested as influencing Korea's fertility decline over the last two decades. These include rapid urbanization, socioeconomic development, declining infant and child mortality, the changing status of women, increasing female labor force participation, rising educational attainment (especially of women), high educational aspirations for children, a rise in consumer aspirations, improved transportation and commmunication, increasing family nucleation, rising age at marriage, the diffusion of modern contraceptives, the easy availability of abortions, a decrease in the value of children as productive agents and sources of old age security, and the high cost of raising children. Since massive economic, social, and demographic changes have been occurring simultaneously in Korea, it is not easy to sort out clearly which of these factors have been most influential in the country's rapid decrease in fertility levels. In the present study, it was found that among the proximate determinants of fertility, family planning, abortion and, to a lesser extent, rising age at marriage share substantial responsibility for Korea's fertility decline, although social and economic changes have also contributed

to the fertility decline. These three primary factors are discussed below.

## FAMILY PLANNING

The national family planning program was first established in 1962, and the government set a target of reducing the annual rate of population growth from 2.8 to 2.0 percent by 1970. The program initially concentrated on motivation and a "massive enlightenment" campaign and subsequently developed a national network of family planning field workers to promote program acceptance. The predominant method used at first was the IUD because it was the only effective method known to the program administrators, because it was relatively simple to administer, and because its acceptance marked a serious decision by the individual to control births, hence initiating an important behavioral change. By 1967, over one million loops had been inserted, and the annual number of IUD acceptors had risen to 229,000. Distribution of oral contraceptives began in 1968 when the IUD drop-out rate was rising and there was an increasing need for alternative methods; women who discontinued the IUD were eligible to receive the pill after three months. Pill acceptance increased, and by the end of 1970, 276,000 women were using this method. The upsurge in sterilization, which was particularly marked in urban areas, occurred only after 1972. A dramatic surge occurred in female sterilizations during the period 1975-77, when the sterilization rate rose fom 11 to 53 tubal ligations per 1,000 ever-married women aged 20-39; this increase can be atttributed to the introduction of laparoscopy in the government program and a tripling of government payments to physicians performing the procedure.

From 1968 to 1978, the Planned Parenthood Federation of Korea established and operated "Mothers Clubs" in the rural areas, basically to overcome traditional resistance to smaller families and to encourage modern contraceptive practice. Specifically, the Mothers Clubs facilitated family planning communication, recruited acceptors, provided better access to contraceptives, created a favorable community climate for the acceptance of contraception, and assisted in the work of family planning field workers. When actively functioning, these clubs played an important role in the successful implementation of the national family planning program, especially in rural areas.

The contraceptive practice rate for currently married women increased 2.7 times (from 20 percent to 54 percent) from 1966 to 1979. During this same period, a rapid urban-rural convergence in contraceptive practice was taking place; currently, there is virtually no urban-rural differentiation in contraceptive practice rates. The dramatic increase in family planning practice in rural areas is largely due to the fact that the national program was oriented toward the traditionally high-fertility rural areas. There has also been a gradual disappearance over time of educational differentials in contraceptive practice in both urban and rural areas.

By 1978, among currently married fecund women who wanted no more births, 26 percent were sterilized, another 29 percent were using other efficient methods such as the pill and the IUD, and the remaining 45 percent were either using inefficient methods or not using contraception at all. Many women in the last group had an abortion to prevent the birth of an unwanted child, as discussed below.

## INDUCED ABORTION

Induced abortion has been a very important factor in Korea's fertility transition, at least since 1960; before the national family planning program in 1962, abortion was the only effective method of fertility control, but was rarely practiced. Induced abortion has contributed to the fertility decline in two ways: it has been practiced as a direct means of avoiding unwanted births, and it has been used as the final resort when other contraceptive methods failed. The success of the Korean family planning program has been due significantly to easy access and the absence of cultural and social barriers to induced abortion. Abortion has been particularly effective in conjunction with contraceptive practice. In fact, the increasing acceptance of induced abortion in the face of rising contraceptive use suggests that abortion is highly compatible with other means of fertility control. This study found that the patterns of abortion practice among various age and socioeconomic groups are distinct from those of contraceptive use and sterilization: abortion has occurred in a wider range of ages, but has been more selective in terms of the couple's socioeconomic status. Moreover, although contraception and abortion are compatible, a considerable proportion of

women rely entirely on abortion to limit their family size.

The contribution of induced abortion to Korea's fertility decline was most pronounced in the early 1960s; since that time, family planning has had more of an impact. One estimate indicates that impact of induced abortion on fertility reduction was equivalent to 3 percent of the actual TFR in 1960, 14 percent in 1965, and 18 percent in 1970, and that the impact was greater in urban than in rural areas.

## AGE AT MARRIAGE

With modernization and the mortality transition, the marital composition of the Korean population has changed substantially. The proportion of curently married women (as well as men) has decreased rapidly in the early reproductive ages (up to age 24) due exclusively to the postponement of marriage, and has increased substantially at later ages as a result of a continuous reduction in the spouse's risk of dying. Both of these changes have implications for fertility, although the impact of the former is far more significant.

On the other hand, there is evidence that this postponement of marriage has caused an increase in fecundability in the early years of marriage. In addition, the transition of early to late marriage has been accompanied by a growing incidence of premarital pregnancy. These two forces have tended to counteract the depressing influence of a rising age at marriage on the level of fertility in Korea.

Changes in basic marriage institutions, aside from the timing of marriage have been very minor. In traditional Korea, "familism," derived mostly from the neo-Confucian principles of Chu-shi, governed every aspect of social life. Universal marriage is still strongly endorsed and the extent of divorce and remarriage has changed little during the last twenty years of the fertility transition in Korea. The Korean family is still characterized by a patriarchal, patrilineal and patrilocal system, and strong solidarity among family or kinship members. These characteristics have in turn generated a strong son preference and orientation toward large families. Among sons, the first son is most valued since he alone can fulfill most of the son's customary functions. The rapid shift in family-size and fertility attitudes in Korea

without concomitant changes in son preference may be explained by the fact that only one or two sons are necessary to ensure the fulfillment of these functions and that daughters are often considered unessential.

## OTHER DETERMINANTS OF FERTILITY

Rapid urbanization has played an important role in Korea's fertility decline, but will probably be less important in the future. As in many other countries, fertility declined more rapidly in urban areas in the early stages of the fertility transition; more recently, however, rural fertility has declined at a considerably faster pace. As noted above, rural-urban fertility differentials have been converging over time, and contraceptive use rates for both areas are now nearly identical. Although educational attainment exhibits the usual strong inverse relationship with fertility, there has been some convergence in these differentials as well. Income does not seem to have much of an effect on fertility once other factors are controlled.

Mortality appears to have had a substantial impact on fertility in the past, although direct empirical evidence is generally lacking. The rapid decline in infant and child mortality has undoubtedly contributed to the fertility decline, although further changes in mortality are unlikely to have much effect; infant mortality has now reached such a low level (less than 40 per 1,000) that the fear of child mortality is no longer a major factor in childbearing decisions.

Female labor force participation rates are rising, and Korean women work longer hours on average than women in any other country in the world. The effect of women's work on fertility, however, is somewhat inconclusive. The kind of work a woman engages in and the degree of compatibility between her work and childrearing are more important than whether she works or not. Although women have often been able to rely on their extended family or hired domestic help to care for children while they work, the increasing nucleation of Korean families and the high cost of maids in urban areas are beginning to limit these options.

The productive utility of children as workers for the family farm or business or as family income producers is declining in Korea. Although parents still expect a moderate amount of economic and practical help from their

children, this is generally viewed as a normal concomitant of raising children rather than a reason for having them. The security utility of children, particularly for support in old age, is still strong but declining; children are often expected to provide supplemental help rather than total support.

On the cost side, parents are acutely aware of the high costs of raising children (particularly the educational costs) and these can be an important factor in fertility decisions. The urban poor seem particularly vulnerable in this respect because of their low incomes and the high cost of living in the cities. Although the opportunity costs of raising children are not large, these will probably increase over time. Parents often mention the emotional and physical burdens that they would have to cope with if they had more children; however, there is evidence that these burdens are not entirely anticipated before couples have begun childbearing.

In addition to the many factors discussed above, this study has also explored some countervailing forces that may have kept fertility from falling even more rapidly and that may make future declines more difficult to attain. During the last several decades, there have been significant changes in breastfeeding practices. The abandonment of very long breastfeeding apparently began early in the fertility transition; presently, only a small proportion of women continue very prolonged nursing, although the majority continue to nurse for moderately long periods of nine months or more. Associated with this phenomenon is the fact that birth intervals at early parities have become substantially shorter as more educated and higher-income couples have accepted bottle feeding. It is expected that declines in either the incidence or length of breastfeeding in the future would tend to increase fertility rates.

The likely effect of continued son preference is more ambiguous. Fertility has declined precipitously in Korea in the face of no more than a gradual decrease in this traditional attitude. Some speculate that there is no reason for son preference to provide a drag on further fertility declines; others feel that the greatest effect of boy preference will be at the second and third parities (i.e., in decisions about whether to have a third or fourth child), and that additional fertility declines are therefore unlikely.

Evidence on the influence of community and ecological factors is mixed. Studies adding community-level

variables to individual records on survey data files have been unable to prove a link between these variables and fertility, although flaws in the design of these studies may be responsible for this result. Aggregate- level analyses relating areal characteristics to areal fertility levels have been more successful. The most significant results have been derived from an anthropological study that highlighted structural and institutional factors in comparing different communities.

## PROSPECTS FOR FUTURE FERTILITY TRENDS

A rapid fertility transition has been observed in a number of Asian countries in addition to Korea, including Japan, Taiwan, China, Hong Kong, Singapore, and the Chinese population in Malaysia. All of these populations share the so-called Chinese cultural influence. Japan, an industrial state, has completed its demographic transition, while the newly industrializing countries of Korea, Taiwan, Hong Kong, and Singapore have all experienced rapidly falling levels of fertility along with rapid economic and social development. It is basically a matter of time before these countries also complete their demographic transitions. Although it is extremely difficult to isolate the cultural factors that have contributed to this common pattern of fertility change, such shared characteristics as the absence of barriers to ready acceptance of abortion and sterilization and the universality of marriage might be highlighted. Other shared characteristics include cultural homogeneity in ethnicity, language, and religious tradition, and geographic and political unity. These characteristics in turn promote social integration in the form of efficient communication and shared values, norms, and institutions. In this way, Korea meets the conditions proposed by Retherford (1981) as conducive to a sudden and rapid fertility decline.

In general, economic and social development results in lower mortality and in the reduced productive and security utility of children. These changes are accompanied by a smaller desired family size, creating the conditions for fertility decline even in the absence of a national family planning program; thus economic and social development may be the fundamental cause of fertility transition. However, although this developmental change has facilitated Korea's fertility decline, the family planning

program has expedited the process. Korea's national family planning program was initially very effective in legitimizing family planning, and consequently in reducing the "normative costs" of birth control in a short period of time; family planning leaders subsequently worked successfully to diffuse birth control throughout the country.

Prospects for future fertility trends are uncertain. All of the variables examined in this report indicate favorable conditions for further fertility decline, except for three factors: (1) the universality of marriage, (2) the reduction of the incidence and duration of breast-feeding, and (3) the continued strength of son preference. The impact of these three factors can be expected to be significant, especially in the fertility transition from a TFR of three to the replacement level; however, this impact will probably be insufficient to entirely curtail the fertility decline. The course of fertility in the last two decades has not been uniform: there was a sudden fall in the early 1960s, followed by a temporary slackening in the late 1960s, another rapid decline in the early 1970s and a moderate decline in the last few years. Korean fertility will complete its transition to the replacement level in the years to come, although, because of the three factors mentioned above, further declines are not likely to be achieved without some temporary setbacks.

# CHAPTER 1

# INTRODUCTION

In the last several decades, Korea has experienced great political, economic, and social changes. It has also witnessed one of the fastest fertility transitions in the world. Research on Korea's rapidly changing fertility has proliferated during the last two decades. This study will review the relevant research and organize the data in such a way as to (1) put this fertility transition into a proper perspective; (2) shed light on some of the important questions that remain unanswered; (3) examine, at both the micro and macro levels, various determinants of fertility and factors contributing to rapid fertility change; and (4) make some generalizations about the past and provide some speculation and perspective on Korea's future fertility trends. The following are some of the questions addressed in this report:

1. What was Korea's fertility level in the past, and what is that level today?
2. How fast has the fertility change occurred?
3. What factors have determined or are associated with past and current levels of fertility?
4. What are the explanations for the observed changes in fertility?
5. What are the prospects for fertility change in the future?
6. Has the observed demographic change been independent of economic and social changes?
7. Can fertility change be induced?

BACKGROUND

Korea, a small peninsula off Manchuria, China, in Northeast Asia, has a national history going back thousands of years. Located among the major historical powers in Asia, the country has on several occasions suffered from foreign invasion and domination; nevertheless, it has succeeded in maintaining and preserving its culture, language, values, and traditions. Its people are ethnically, culturally, and linguistically homogeneous.

The Yi dynasty began at the end of the fourteenth century and ended when Japan succeeded in annexing the Korean peninsula in 1909. Japan's occupation lasted 36

years and ended with the defeat of the imperial forces in World War II. At that time, the Soviet Union occupied the country north of the 38th parallel, and the ideological struggle emerged that finally led to the political division of the peninsula. In 1950, the Korean War broke out and destroyed what was left of the colonial industrial base developed by Japan.

The devastation of the war during the years 1950-53 left the nation on the edge of survival. By 1961, recovery had still been modest and per capita income stood at U.S. $82 (see Table 1). Demands of minimum living standards left little room for investment out of this small income, and fixed capital formation averaged a mere 10 to 12 percent of the GNP, levels about as low as those in the poorest nations of the world (Korea, Economic Planning Board, 1980). In less than five years, however, the economy began a spiral of rapid growth that continued until 1979. By 1968, nearly a quarter of the Korean GNP was being channeled into a massive program of capital expansion and modernization. The result has been growth in productivity averaging 6.1 percent per year. This increase in productivity, combined with a labor force increasing at 3.6 percent annually and the gradual reduction of unemployment, has produced an annual growth rate in real GNP of over 10 percent, a rate that rivals even that of booming, prosperous Japan.

A number of indicators provide evidence of the profound changes that took place during the last two decades (see Table 1). The population increased by 50 percent between 1960 and 1980, with the average annual intercensal growth rates declining substantially from 2.7 percent during 1960-66 to 1.5 percent during the 1975-80 period. Despite this substantial population growth, the country has experienced rapid modernization and improvement in living standards. Improvements in medical and public health facilities contributed greatly to a dramatic reduction in infant and chilhood mortality and a substantial increase in life expectancy. Female life expectancy, already quite high at 61 years in 1960, increased to 69 by 1978-79.

The urban population in Korea rose from 28 percent in 1960 to 57 percent in 1980. Rising urban demand for farm products, coupled with modern farming methods and government support for agricultural prices, has now raised farm income to levels comparable to those in the city. Still, the movement of people from rural to urban areas continues at a rapid rate even today.

TABLE 1 Selected Socioeconomic Indices: Republic of Korea

| Index | 1960 | 1966 | 1970 | 1975 | 1980 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Population (millions) | 25.0 | 29.2 | 31.4 | 34.7 | 37.4 |
| Average annual population growth rate since previous census (percent) | -- | 2.7 | 1.8 | 2.0 | 1.5 |
| Density (per km2) | | | | | |
| Overall | 256 | 299 | 327 | 357 | 385 |
| Arable land | 1,166 | 1,262 | 1,339 | 1,477 | 1,592 |
| Female life expectancy (years) | 61 | 64 | 67 | 70 | 69[a] |
| Percent urban | 28 | 34 | 41 | 48 | 57 |
| Percent of women aged 15-49 who have more than a primary education | 12 | 21 | 30 | 42 | -- |
| Percent of children aged 6-11 who attend school | | | | | |
| Urban | 80 | 88 | 87 | 89 | -- |
| Rural | 72 | 84 | 88 | 90 | -- |
| Per capita income (U.S. $) | | | | | |
| Current prices | 82[b] | 125 | 243 | 574 | 1,597[a] |
| 1975 prices | 241[b] | 307 | 408 | 574 | 810[a] |
| Percent of employed population working in secondary and tertiary industry | 37[c] | 42 | 50 | 54 | 66 |
| Electric power (KWH) per person | 69[b] | 132 | 284 | 562 | 946[a] |
| Radios per 1,000 households | 121[b] | 214[d] | 525 | 857[e] | -- |
| TV sets per 1,000 households | 5[b] | 9 | 65 | 259 | 850 |
| Telephones per 1,000 households | 28[b] | 61 | 93 | 173 | 242 |

[a]Value is for 1979 instead of 1980.
[b]Value is for 1961 instead of 1960.
[c]Value is for 1963 instead of 1960.
[d]Value is for 1965 instead of 1966.
[e]Value is for 1974 instead of 1975.

Source: Cho and Retherford (1981).

Traditionally, Koreans have placed a high value on education and literacy. They are also noted for their work ethic. Since almost everybody has a basic education, the vocational skills and professional training needed by a growing economy are easily acquired. During the last three decades, there has been great progress in the education of the population. The proportion of women in reproductive ages with more than a primary education (six years) increased from 12 percent in 1960 to 42 percent in 1975. The proportion of children age 6-11 attending school increased from 72 percent in rural areas and 80 percent in urban areas in 1960 to about 90 percent in both areas in 1975. Girls had much lower attendance rates than boys in 1960, but this sex difference had virtually disappeared by 1975.

Despite the growing population during this transition period, the increase in productivity has kept output per person expanding at a phenomenal 8.3 percent per year. Real per capita income more than tripled between 1960 and 1979. Today, per capita GNP stands at over U.S. $1500. Rapid economic growth has contributed to rising real incomes at all levels. The real monthly earnings of manufacturing workers, for example, rose at a rate of 4.3 percent annually, and overall income has been more equally distributed among families than in other nations of equivalent income.

The proportion of employed persons working in secondary and tertiary industries increased from 37 percent in 1963 to 66 percent in 1980. From 1961 to 1979, per capita electric power consumption increased more than 13-fold; per capita radio ownership more than 7-fold, to almost one radio per household in 1974; per capita television ownership more than 170-fold, to almost one set per household in 1980; and per capita telephones more than 8-fold, to almost one telephone for every four households in 1980.

The female work force has also contributed to Korea's development. The overall female labor force participation rate rose from 38 to 42 percent in the ten years between 1968 and 1978; the rate for farm females rose from 45 to 51 percent, and for nonfarm females rose from 30 to 36 percent. The participation rate for males remained constant at 76 percent (Korean Institute for Family Planning, 1978:255-256).

Korea has one of the highest population densities in the world. Population density on arable land increased from 1,166 per square kilometer in 1960 to 1,592 in 1980

(see Table 1). By way of comparison, density on arable land was about 50 in the United States and 793 in Bangladesh in 1974 (United Nations, Food and Agricultural Organization, 1975). These figures indicate the strong population pressure on Korea's agricultural resources.

## ORGANIZATION OF THE REPORT

The remainder of this Introduction provides a brief demographic history of the country, followed by a review of available sources of population data. Chapter 2 focuses on estimates of fertility levels and trends during the last two decades and the decomposition of fertility change into its components. Chapter 3 brings together the information contained in the first two chapters to examine the relationship between changing socioeconomic conditions and changes in fertility attitudes and behavior. The importance of changes in family structure and marriage patterns is explored in Chapter 4, and the changing value of children and the influence of son preference on fertility are discussed in Chapter 5. Chapter 6 outlines the development of Korea's family planning program, highlighting changes in family planning practices and the use of abortion services. The summary at the beginning of this report discusses what is known about the determinants of fertility and speculates about the future course of fertility trends in Korea.

### Korea's Demographic History

Korea's early historical records indicate that some form of registration of households and population was carried out for purposes of taxation and military conscription. Evidence of more systematic, census-like registration is available for the Yi dynasty, beginning in the fourteenth century. It is obvious that early in this period, household registration covered only part of the country and was subject to a great number of omissions and evasions, largely due to efforts to avoid taxation and conscription.

Apparently, by 1672 registration had become countrywide and considerably more complete. The census in that year counted 1,205,000 households and a population of 4,720,000, or 3.9 persons per household (Eisuke, 1925). As shown in Table 2, the population trend was consistent over numerous census periods from 1672 up to the turn of

TABLE 2 Households and Population, 1672-1920

| Year | Households | Population | Male and Female Population | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1672 | 1,205,866 | 4,720,815 | | |
| 1681 | 1,376,842 | 6,218,342 | | |
| 1690 | 1,514,000 | 6,952,907 | | |
| 1699 | 1,333,330 | 5,774,739 | | |
| 1708 | 1,406,610 | 6,206,554 | | |
| 1717 | 1,560,734 | 6,788,789 | | |
| 1726 | 1,614,598 | 6,995,400 | | |
| 1738 | 1,672,184 | 7,096,565 | | |
| 1747 | 1,759,692 | 7,340,318 | | |
| 1756 | 1,771,349 | 7,318,359 | | |
| 1765 | 1,675,267 | 6,974,642 | | |
| 1774 | 1,703,030 | 7,098,441 | | |
| 1783 | 1,733,757 | 7,316,924 | males: | 3,563,685 |
| | | | females: | 3,753,239 |
| 1807 | 1,764,504 | 7,561,403 | | |
| 1864 | 1,703,450 | 6,828,521 | | |
| 1910 (end of year) | 2,804,103 | 13,313,017 | males: | 7,057,458 |
| | | | females: | 6,255,559 |
| 1915 (end of year) | 3,117,692 | 16,278,389 | males: | 8,370,940 |
| | | | females: | 7,907,449 |
| 1920 (end of year) | 3,297,126 | 17,264,119 | males: | 8,903,000 |
| | | | females: | 8,361,119 |

Source: Eisuke (1925).

this century, although the quality of the last few censuses must have deteriorated considerably because of the domestic and international political turmoil. Over this roughly 200-year period the Korean population showed a very low rate of growth--0.25 percent per annum. In 1777, the census counted males and females separately for the first time, enumerating 3,537,786 males and 3,700,737 females (a sex ratio of 95.6); this low ratio may well be attributable to census evasion on the part of younger men who feared military conscription.

From the historical records, there is no way to determine the levels of fertility and mortality prior to the first modern census in 1925. It is known from the Yi dynasty household registration that the average household size fluctuated between 3.9 and 4.6, which is lower than today's level. It is also known that marriage was nearly universal, and that age at marriage for both males and females was very young. As mentioned earlier, population

growth was insignificant during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. Based on these facts it may be speculated that the fertility level was quite high, but that the level of mortality was also high, resulting in virtually no population growth. A large collection of Yi dynasty household registration records is available, showing household relationships, age, and sex. Historical demographic analysis of the Korean data, such as that done by Hanley (1979), has shed some light on the levels of fertility, family size, and mortality during this period.

In 1909, subsequent to Japanese annexation, the colonial authority made a year-end population count that showed a population of 12.9 million; this is a substantially higher figure than the last count of the Yi dynasty, especially considering the fairly large exodus of migrants out of Korea into China, Russia, and other places. From 1910 to 1923, the year-end population counts showed population growth in the range of 13.3 million to 17.9 million. The year-end count is not a census, but an administrative count based on the canvassing of households and also on police and civil registration records (Choe, 1967:29-30). Although these counts did not achieve complete coverage (in the period 1911-25, coverage varied from 92 to 97 percent), they have provided a sufficient basis for estimating trends in population size and growth.

By 1925, when the first modern census was conducted by the Japanese colonial government, the population in the Korean peninsula was 19 million. Even with substantial migration out of Korea in the two decades following the 1925 census, the Koreans in the peninsula increased their number, and by 1944, according to the last colonial census conducted, the population was 25.1 million. From 1925 to 1944, the Korean population showed only moderate growth (1.4 percent), as indicated in Table 3.

Estimates of fertility have been made for the colonial period from the censuses of 1925 through 1940 by Chang (1966) and also by Kwon (1977: Chapters 5 and 7). The level of fertility was very high: the crude birth rate was estimated to be 46 per thousand during 1926-30, declining gradually over the next 15 years to 42 (see Table 4). During the colonial period, there was virtually no change in the total fertility rate (TFR), only a slight decline from 6.2 to about 6.1. An examination of estimated age-specific fertility rates reveals that women in all age groups except the youngest (15-19) maintained the same high fertility level during

TABLE 3 Population and Intercensal Growth Rates: All Korea, 1925-44 and Republic of Korea, 1949-80

| Year | Population | Intercensal Growth Rate (percent) |
|---|---|---|
| All Korea | | |
| 1925 (October 1) | 19,020,030 | |
| | | 1.44 |
| 1930 (October 1) | 20,438,108 | |
| | | 1.66 |
| 1935 (October 1) | 22,208,102 | |
| | | 1.17 |
| 1940 (October 1) | 23,547,465 | |
| | | 1.41 |
| 1944 (May 1) | 25,120,174 | |
| Republic of Korea | | |
| 1949 (May 1) | 20,166,756 | |
| | | 1.20 |
| 1955 (September 1) | 21,502,386 | |
| | | 2.70 |
| 1960 (December 1) | 24,954,290 | |
| | | 2.49 |
| 1966 (October 1) | 29,159,640 | |
| | | 2.16 |
| 1970 (October 1) | 31,438,768 | |
| | | 1.96 |
| 1975 (October 1) | 34,678,000 | |
| | | 1.54 |
| 1980 (November 1) | 37,500,000 | |

Sources: Cho (1973); and calculations based on the 1975 and 1980 census reports from the National Bureau of Statistics, Economic Planning Board, Seoul.

the four intercensal periods. Thus the minor decline in the birth rate can be attributed to the gradual rise in the age at marriage during this period. In traditional Korea, marriage took place at very young ages; between 1925 and 1940, mean age at first marriage for females rose from 16.6 to 17.8, while the proportion of females single in the age group 15-19 increased from 27 percent in 1925 to 37 percent in 1935.

TABLE 4 Estimated Completeness of Birth and Death Registration, 1910-65: Korea

| Period | Birth Rate | | Completeness of Birth Registration | Death Rate | | Completeness of Death Registration | Natural Increase (per 1,000) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Recorded Rate | Estimated Rate | | Recorded Rate | Estimated Rate | | |
| 1910-15 | 24.6 | 45.3 | 54.3 | 15.7 | 33.7 | 46.6 | 11.6 |
| 1916-20 | 31.5 | 47.5 | 66.3 | 24.7 | 31.6 | 78.2 | 15.9 |
| 1921-25 | 36.3 | 48.0 | 75.6 | 20.8 | 29.5 | 70.5 | 18.5 |
| 1926-30 | 35.9 | 45.9 | 78.2 | 21.6 | 26.4 | 81.8 | 19.5 |
| 1931-35 | 30.9 | 45.5 | 69.9 | 20.3 | 23.3 | 87.1 | 22.2 |
| 1936-40 | 32.6 | 43.3 | 75.3 | 18.4 | 21.4 | 86.0 | 21.9 |
| 1941-45 | 35.3 | 42.1 | 83.9 | 19.2 | 19.5 | 98.5 | 22.6 |
| 1946-50 | 18.9 | 39.9 | 47.4 | 10.1 | 15.8 | 63.9 | 24.1 |
| 1951-55 | 23.9 | 41.0 | 58.3 | 7.3 | 14.3 | 51.0 | 26.7 |
| 1956-60 | 31.1 | 43.0 | 72.3 | 6.9 | 12.8 | 53.9 | 30.2 |
| 1961-65 | 30.9 | 39.5 | 78.2 | 7.5 | 10.5 | 71.4 | 29.0 |

Note: Data for 1910-45 are for all Korea; data for subsequent years are for South Korea only.

Source: Choe (1967).

The three colonial censuses of 1925, 1930, and 1935 for which data on marital status are available illustrate a remarkable phenomenon of universal marriage. By age 20 almost all females were married--only between 1 and 3 percent remained single--and beyond age 30 the proportion of women unmarried was insignificant. Koreans have traditionally placed a high value on marriage and family formation, both for men and women; remaining single beyond the so-called marriageable age has been greatly frowned upon and considered a great disservice to parents and family.

World War II and the end of Japanese colonial rule in 1945 brought about a great deal of change, including a substantial volume of migration across the new national boundaries. The Korean War (1950-53) caused further destruction, chaos, and social change. Because of the paucity of useful demographic or other relevant quantitative data, very little is known about social and demographic change during the years 1945 to 1954. In addition, since 1945, when Korea was divided along the thirty-eighth parallel, it has not been possible to follow population trends of the entire peninsula. For South Korea, the population increased between the 1944 and 1949 censuses from 16.2 to 20.2 million, indicating an annual growth rate of 4.4 percent. This unusually high growth rate was largely due to the return of Koreans from Japan and Manchuria following World War II and to heavy migration from the North during the period. The 1955 census, however, indicated only a slight increase in population size from 20.2 to 21.5 million, representing an average growth rate of 1 percent per year from 1949 to 1955. This period overlaps the Korean War, during which mortality was extremely high and there was a large volume of migration from the North to the South; the lower growth rate may also be due to lower fertility during the war.

The 1960 census enumerated 25.0 million persons; based on figures from the 1955 and 1960 censuses that have been adjusted for underenumeration, the estimated annual rate of intercensal population growth was 2.7 percent. The 1966 census enumerated 29.2 million; based on adjusted figures for both 1960 and 1966, the annual intercensal growth rate for the six-year period was 2.5 percent. The population grew to 31.4 million by 1970, with an intercensal growth rate, again using adjusted figures, of 2.2 percent. The 1975 census and the recent 1980 census enumerated 34.7 million and 37.5 million, respectively, implying intercensal growth rates of 1.96 and 1.54 percent for 1970-75 and 1975-80.

## Data Sources

In Korea, there are basically three types of data available for the measurement and analysis of fertility: vital statistics derived from the registration system; indirect measurements of fertility from census data; and specialized fertility surveys and other surveys to which questions on fertility have been added.

### *Vital Statistics*

As briefly mentioned earlier in this chapter, Korea has had some form of population registration from the earliest historical times; however, this was mostly confined to simply canvassing households and counting population for purposes of taxation and military conscription. The modern civil registration system and the collection of data on vital events date back only to 1910, and until 1937, vital statistics were compiled only as a by-product of the civil registration system. This statistical information covered only the number of vital events; the detailed vital statistics on births, deaths, and marriages that are available today were not collected.

Although a modern system of vital statistics was established in 1938 by the Japanese colonial government, it did not function as completely as the system in Taiwan under the same colonial rule. As shown in Table 4, birth registration was far from complete. During the ten years prior to the end of World War II, birth registration was relatively more complete: 75 percent in 1936-40, and 84 percent in 1941-45. Death registration was even better: 86 percent and 99 percent during the same periods.

After the liberation in 1945 and subsequent partition of the country, political and social instability prevented the new government from improving vital statistics. In fact, during the years 1946-50, the system deteriorated substantially; it is estimated that less than 50 percent of births and 64 percent of deaths were recorded in this period. During the Korean War, from 1950 to 1953, the system remained woefully inadequate and incomplete. Death registration further deteriorated during the postwar period. Although a number of factors contributed to incomplete vital registration, three that deserve mention are delayed registration of vital events, problems associated with the general use of the lunar calendar, and the inconvenience of obtaining certification of cause of death from a medical doctor.

The vital registration system gradually improved over the two decades from 1960 to 1980. Delayed registration of births and deaths became much less frequent, and the general public became more cooperative. Nevertheless, except for the last few years, birth and death statistics are not sufficiently complete and reliable to permit adequate fertility analysis. However, data for the 1980s should be sufficiently complete to serve as a basis for the measurement and analysis of Korean fertility and mortality.

*Censuses*

The first modern Korean census was conducted in 1925 under Japanese rule. From 1925 to the end of World War II in 1945, five censuses covering all of Korea were taken at intervals of five years, except for the last one, which was taken after four years. These censuses were of high quality and were consistent over the regular census intervals, and provide valuable data for demographic analysis. Two types of censuses were administered by Japan: a simplified census conducted in quinquennial years (those ending in a five), and a full census taken in years ending in zero. The former was limited to collection of basic demographic information such as age, sex, marital status, and nationality, while the full census covered additional socioeconomic characteristics such as education, occupation, and industry.

The census data on age in the colonial period were unusually accurate for a fascinating reason: Korea followed the Chinese dating system, using the lunar calendar--a 12-year cycle of 12 different animals--to determine age, and traditionally placed great significance on the date and time of birth. The Western solar calendar was introduced with the Japanese colonial occupation in the early part of this century; it has gradually been replacing the lunar system, but still has not done so completely because of cultural resistance. The early assumption of Westerners that rural Koreans would not know their exact ages is wrong. Korean parents record their children's dates of birth (and in most cases the hour as well) for the following purposes:

(1) Sajoo (literally translated as "the four pillars of a person"), meaning that the time, day, month, and year of birth determine a child's future. In the past,

some mothers would try to postpone a birth until a propitious hour of the day, although this practice is rare today.

(2) Samchil (literally, "three-seven"), meaning that for 21 (three times seven) days after birth, visitors other than close relatives are not allowed in the house. This was probably meant to minimize the child's exposure to disease. Although not strictly observed in the cities at present, the practice is still generally observed in the rural areas.

(3) Paegil (literally, "the hundredth day"), meaning that on the hundredth day after birth, close relatives and friends are invited to share food and drinks to celebrate the birth and survival of the child.

(4) Tol (translated as "first birthday"), meaning that the child has survived a full year since birth, an event that calls for celebration. The first and sixtieth birthdays are the two most eventful birthdays celebrated.

(5) Gunghap, meaning that, for a happy marriage, the sajoo of the bride and groom should be matched to see whether the combination is favorable. This custom is still widely practiced.

(6) Hwangap, meaning that on one's sixtieth birthday a man or woman has completed five twelve-animal-year cycles. This occasion calls for a big celebration.

These customs require an accurate record of the age of each member of the family. As in Japan, age heaping--a kind of age misreporting in which certain ages (often those ending in a specific digit), such as 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, are overreported, while others, such as 19, 23, 37, are underreported--is probably less common in Korea than in the United States.

There are, however, some complications involved in the Korean age-recording system. First, according to both the Koreans and the Chinese, a child is one year old at the time of birth (implying that the nine-month gestation period is one year of life). Furthermore, age in Korea is not reckoned from the individual's last birthday, but from the New Year (January 1). Thus, if a child is born on January 1, 1970, he will be considered two years old on January 1, 1971, exactly one year after birth. Therefore, if one simply asks how old a person is, the information obtained will be substantially different from the age in completed years at last birthday. In the extreme case, a child born on December 31, 1969, would be two years old on January 1, 1970 (the child is one day

old in age in completed years). A further complication in calculating age statistics with a lunar calendar is that the length of the year varies depending on whether it is a normal or a leap year. A normal lunar year has 12 months consisting of 354 days. The lunar calendar is kept in phase with the evolution of solar years by the insertion at irregular intervals of a leap year with an additional lunar month. If vital events such as births and deaths are evenly distributed over time, lunar leap years contain 13/12 as many events as normal years, or 8.33 percent more events. One leap year is usually followed by two normal years.

During the colonial period, census enumerators canvassed households and collected dates of birth, virtually all of which were expressed according to the lunar calendar. Ages were then derived from these birth dates. With proper conversion and adjustments, sufficiently accurate age distributions from all five colonial censuses can be obtained, and from these both the birth and death rates can be estimated. Yun-Shik Chang and Tai-Hwan Kwon have used these census data to provide plausible estimates of fertility and mortality for these periods (Chang, 1966; Kwon, 1977).

The situation became more complex after the war because of the gradual shift to the Western calendar. There are no data available on the changing proportion of the population reporting their birth dates using the Western calendar.

The Republic of Korea was established in the south in 1948, and from that time to the present the government has conducted seven censuses (in 1949, 1955, 1960, 1966, 1970, 1975, and 1980). The returns of the 1949 census were totally destroyed during the Korean War, leaving only a limited set of data on population (unfortunately, a detailed age-sex distribution is not available). The 1955 census was the first complete enumeration of the population after the Korean War. The single-year age distribution is available for geographic and administrative divisions of the country; in addition, marital status, employment and industry, occupation, and education cross-classified by age and sex are available for different areal subdivisions, as are data on refugee status from the North.

A comparison of the data from the 1955 and 1960 censuses reveals that the former considerably underenumerated the population (Cho, 1971). The National Bureau of Statistics at the time was not equipped with

the technical or financial resources to execute a high-quality census. In 1960, a major effort was made to conduct a large-scale census. Foreign technical assistance was enlisted. Many aspects of the census operation were modernized: pretests, postenumeration surveys, and modern data processing equipment were introduced; the quality of the operation improved substantially over the previous censuses, and the enumeration was more complete. The 1960 census for the first time incorporated items on age at first marriage and children ever born, items which subsequent censuses have continued to carry.

Unfortunately, however, foreign technical input in the design of the 1960 census resulted in a major technical blunder. Instead of following the well-established practice of computing age from birth dates, the foreign advisors introduced the U.S. census question simply asking the age of each person. The result, revealed by the postenumeration survey, was that over 75 percent of the population indicated age according to the lunar system. This left a negligible number in the age category under one year, and redistributed the numbers in the other categories. Various efforts have been made to convert the lunar age into age in completed years, but none has so far produced satisfactory results for refined demographic analysis.

Because of budgetary problems in 1965, no census was conducted in that year, but a simplified census was conducted in 1966. Proper caution was used in the section dealing with age determination. For the first time in the history of the Korean census, respondents were given the choice of indicating their birth dates by either the lunar or the Western calendar. In addition, respondents could indicate their "animal" of the 12-year zodiac for their birth year. The coding staff at the central office, using a conversion table, then computed the exact age in completed years. In addition to asking for children ever born, the 1966 census asked for the first time the number of children surviving. According to Cho (1971), the 1966 census was one of the better censuses in recent decades.

Similar census procedures were repeated for the 1970, 1975, and, most recently, 1980 censuses. In Korea, the data from these censuses serve as the principal basis for measuring and analyzing fertility and mortality in the absence of complete and reliable vital statistics. These data are amenable to refined demographic procedures that can help detect and measure changes in fertility and

mortality levels and age distribution over time. The existence of six census counts of the population in 25 years enhances the detection of errors, especially in age distributions, through demographic analysis; experience with other populations has shown that if the same enumeration procedures are used, similar patterns of overstatement and understatement of numbers at different ages will occur over consecutive censuses (Coale, 1955; Coale and Zelnick, 1963; Coale et al., 1979).

*Surveys*

Specialized population surveys were not conducted in Korea until the 1960s. With the introduction of family planning in 1960, and the beginning of the national program in 1962, the need for statistical information on attitudes toward and knowledge and use of family planning greatly increased. The earliest family planning survey was begun in 1961 in Koyang by the Family Planning and Population Center of Yonsei University (see Yang et al., 1965); in 1964, an interesting study of differential fertility was conducted in the town of Ichon (see H.-Y. Lee, 1965). Both of these surveys covered only small areas of the country. The first National Survey on Family Planning was conducted in 1965. Since then, nationwide surveys have been conducted every year or two (a partial listing appears in Table 5). These national surveys have been characterized by large (generally 4,000 to 8,000) samples of currently or ever-married women in their childbearing years. Their scope has included questions on cumulative fertility; complete pregnancy histories; family planning knowledge, attitudes, and practices; and specific experience with IUDs, oral pills, and abortion. Several contained questions that followed up on earlier surveys.

As a part of the 1966 census evaluation program, a postenumeration survey (PES) was planned by the Bureau of Statistics. To meet the growing need for demographic statistics, the scope of this survey was expanded to include questions designed to estimate not only current levels of fertility and mortality, attitudes on ideal family size, and the practice of contraception, but also population movement and migration. For this reason, the 1966 PES is also called the 1966 Special Demographic Survey. Extensive tabulations from this survey are available in Choe and Park (1969). Beginning in 1972,

TABLE 5 National Fertility Surveys, 1965-78: Republic of Korea

| Year | Survey | Sample |
|---|---|---|
| 1965 | National Survey on Family Planning | 4,000 currently married women aged 15-44 |
| 1966 | National Survey on Family Planning | 5,000 currently married women aged 15-44 |
| 1967 | National Family Planning KAP Survey | 5,000 ever-married women aged 15-49 |
| 1968 | National Family Planning and Fertility Survey | 7,477 ever-married women aged 15-49 |
| 1971 | National Fertility-Abortion Survey | 6,000 ever-married women aged 15-49 |
| 1973 | National Family Planning KAP and Fertility Survey | 2,400 ever-married women aged 15-49 |
| 1974 | Korean National Fertility Survey (WFS) | 5,417 ever-married women aged 15-49 |
| 1976 | Korean National Fertility and Family Planning Evaluation Survey | 6,000 ever-married women aged 15-49 |
| 1978 | National Family Planning KAP Survey | 8,000 ever-married women aged 15-49 |

Note: List is not exhaustive.

the Bureau of Statistics began conducting quarterly the Current Demographic Survey (CDS) covering a sample of about 22,000 households. The purpose of this survey is to estimate the number of births, deaths, and cases of migration; in its earlier years, it generally underestimated births and deaths. In 1974, the Bureau of Statistics conducted a major employment survey covering about 130,000 households. The principal objective was to provide various statistics on employment and the economically active population, using the labor utilization approach. The survey also contained some questions that can be used to derive basic demographic measures. In 1978, another major project on evaluation of vital statistics began in which the vital events enumerated by the CDS were matched with the vital events registered in the same survey areas. This project has been producing very useful results. Because of these efforts at the Bureau of Statistics, the CDSs in recent

years have improved substantially and have become an important source of vital statistics.

In 1979, the Korean Institute for Family Planning conducted a survey on contraceptive prevalence designed to assess the impact of the national family planning program (K.S. Koh et al., 1980b). The sample of 20,000 households was large enough to provide provincial-level data on contraceptive prevalence, fertility, and use-effectiveness. The Korean Institute for Research in the Behavioral Sciences conducted two surveys of the Value of Children (VOC), which also included information on fertility and family planning (Lee and Kim, 1979). A small pilot study with 378 respondents was completed in 1973; in 1976, a larger national sample of 2,050 married women and men was conducted which covered the entire country except for the province of Cheju Island. Cheju Island is, however, the geographical focus for an intensive study of fertility and family planning entitled the Korean Population Policy and Program Evaluation Study (C.B. Park et al., 1980). From 1975 to 1981, the study was jointly conducted by the East-West Population Institute, Korea's National Bureau of Statistics, and Dong-A University. This project has completed two large-scale benchmark surveys on Cheju's population of about 400,000, conducted simultaneously with the 1975 and 1980 censuses. In addition, one prevalence survey using only a small sample was conducted in 1978.

In conclusion, although Korea's registration of vital statistics has been incomplete and deficient, the country has in recent years developed other types of demographic statistics, such as census and survey data, from which both direct and indirect measurements of fertility can be made. As a result, there are now more than enough data to make analysis of fertility and family planning behavior possible; in fact, in some ways there may be more data than can be adequately analyzed.

# CHAPTER 2

## FERTILITY LEVELS AND TRENDS

This chapter presents estimates of fertility levels and trends during the last two decades and examines fertility changes; it also briefly discusses natural fertility and some of the factors influencing it. As suggested in Chapter 1, Korea's registration of vital events has been incomplete and insufficiently reliable for most of the period of interest; measurement of fertility must therefore be based on census or survey data. Recent population censuses conducted at fairly regular five-year intervals provide an extremely useful data base for indirect fertility and mortality estimation.

Application of the own-children method to the censuses of 1966, 1970, 1975, and 1980 has allowed the estimation of fertility for a period of nearly three decades, with multiple estimates for the years 1956-75. This method, when applied to a particular census, generates fertility estimates for each of the 15 preceding years; thus, when applied to censuses taken at five-year intervals, it produces more than one set of estimates for the overlapping periods. This is extremely important because these sets of fertility estimates for the same periods, derived from different censuses and subject to different biases, are largely independent and thus serve as a check on one another. The basic elements of the estimation method are outlined below.

The essence of the estimating procedure is reconstruction of the fertility experience of the women enumerated in a survey or census for the preceding period. Retrospective fertility estimates are usually made for the single-year cohorts of women aged 15-59 at the time of enumeration. By simply interpolating these estimates, and by translating the woman's age at the time of the census to that at the reference period, one can derive

the conventional period measures of age-specific fertility. The principal demographic adjustments needed are allowances for (a) mortality of children and their mothers, and (b) children not living with their mothers.

Applying this method, for most practical purposes, does not require that special questions be added to normal census schedules. All that is needed are simple tabulations of young children by the single-year age of the child and mother; these tabulations can be based on census or survey data on age and relationship to head of household. Because such information is usually coded as a part of regular census data processing, the work required to produce a basic tabulation of children simply entails locating the mother of the own children and transcribing the age of each child and mother. Other characteristics of the mother and father may be included for more detailed studies of differential fertility.

Since the own-children estimation of fertility involves reverse projection, estimation of mortality is an intrinsic part of the procedure. Census data on children ever born and children surviving, if sufficiently accurate, can be used to provide internally consistent adjustment factors for mortality of children. The own-children procedures were developed to estimate current fertility solely from census data without having to rely on independent mortality estimates from noncensus sources. The Brass procedure of estimating infant and childhood mortality from the proportion dead among children ever born recorded in censuses leads to an apparent underestimation; hence, for the present analysis, mortality estimates derived from the Survey of Fertility and Abortion were accepted and served as the basis for adjustments for later periods.

When census data are used, an additional adjustment must be made for the undercount of children and women; detailed discussion of the methodology necessary to make this adjustment is presented in other publications (Cho, 1973; Cho and Feeney, 1978; Cho and Retherford, 1978). Own-children fertility estimates cannot be more accurate than the census or survey data on which they are based. The most important requirement is the accuracy of age reporting for young children. Because of Korea's accurate age reporting, the own-children technique is particularly appropriate here. Although the resultant estimates from data from different sources are not perfectly consistent, they do provide an adequate basis for measuring and analyzing fertility levels and trends.

FERTILITY LEVELS AND TRENDS

Table 6 presents standard measures of fertility: the crude birth rate (CBR), or births per 1,000 population; the general fertility rate (GFR), or births per 1,000 women aged 15-49; and the total fertility rate (TFR), the number of children that would be born per woman reaching age 50 if women were subject to the age-specific fertility rates of the year in question.

Fertility estimates for the period 1955-75 presented in this table are from the National Academy of Sciences, Committee on Population and Demography, report on Korea (Coale et al., 1980), which was built upon much prior analysis of own-children data from Korean censuses done by Cho and others at the East-West Population Institute. The estimates for the 1976-80 period are from collaborative research conducted by the Korean Bureau of Statistics and the East-West Population Institute.

As discussed earlier in this report, the decade 1945-55 may be characterized as a demographic "dark age" in South Korea: not only was vital registration inadequate, but the 1949 census records were also destroyed in the course of the Korean War. The birth rate probably declined somewhat during the war, but the necessary data to support this inference are as yet unavailable. Contrary to the view of many demographers that a postwar baby boom began to take place in the South immediately after the cease-fire in 1953, it may be hypothesized that the lower birth rate continued until 1957, when most of the soldiers returned from the front. It should be remembered that, after the cease-fire in 1953, the South Korean army sent more of its own troops to the front to compensate for the withdrawal of United Nations and American forces. Officially, no members of the armed forces were discharged until 1957, although there were brief periods of leave for individuals after the cease-fire. This meant that normal family life for a large number of men in their twenties and thirties was disrupted from 1950 to 1957. Estimates of the fertility of this period are currently being derived from 1960, 1966, and 1970 census data.

Table 6 shows that there was an increase in fertility during the late 1950s, reaching the highest level around 1960 with a TFR of almost 6. This is equivalent to the level observed during the colonial period 1925-45. After 1960, a dramatic decline took place that continued until 1967, followed by a slackening until 1972. Another sharp decline is indicated for the period 1972-75. Between

TABLE 6 Summary Indices of Fertility: Republic of Korea

| Year | CBR[a] | GFR[b] | TFR[c] | SMGFR[d] | MAC[e] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1955 | 39.5 | 164 | 5.46[f] | | |
| 1956 | 38.2 | 160 | 5.33[f] | | |
| 1957 | 38.4 | 162 | 5.40 | | |
| 1958 | 41.9 | 178 | 5.94 | | |
| 1959 | 41.8 | 179 | 5.93 | | |
| 1960 | 42.1 | 182 | 5.98 | 251 | 30.5 |
| 1961 | 39.6 | 172 | 5.62 | | |
| 1962 | 38.1 | 166 | 5.41 | | |
| 1963 | 37.6 | 165 | 5.35 | | |
| 1964 | 34.0 | 150 | 4.86 | | |
| 1965 | 32.2 | 142 | 4.61 | | |
| 1966 | 31.9 | 141 | 4.59 | 198 | 30.2 |
| 1967 | 30.3 | 134 | 4.34 | | |
| 1968 | 31.2 | 137 | 4.42 | | |
| 1969 | 30.8 | 134 | 4.39 | | |
| 1970 | 29.8 | 129 | 4.24 | 185 | 29.8 |
| 1971 | 29.8 | 128 | 4.26 | | |
| 1972 | 29.3 | 124 | 4.18 | | |
| 1973 | 27.3 | 114 | 3.86 | | |
| 1974 | 25.9 | 107 | 3.62 | | |
| 1975 | 22.8 | 92 | 3.14 | 154 | 28.7 |
| 1976 | 23.1 | 90 | 3.1 | | |
| 1977 | 22.6 | 87 | 3.0 | | |
| 1978 | 21.8 | 83 | 2.8 | | |
| 1979 | 23.1 | 87 | 2.9 | | |
| 1980 | 22.4 | 84 | 2.7 | 151 | 27.4 |

Note: Fertility estimates for the last five years are based on unpublished own-children data from the 1980 census.

[a]The crude birth rate is calculated as the general fertility rate times the quantity (mid-year female population 15-49/mid-year total population) taken from uncorrected census data.

[b]GFR = (2,075 x female births)/female population 15-49.

[c]Calculation of TFRs is based on reported own-children schedules (see Coale et al., 1980).

[d]SMGFR denotes the standardized marital general fertility rate (calculated as $\Sigma P_x^{ms} \times F_x^m$ where $P_x^{ms}$ is the proportion aged x to x + 5 of married women aged 15-49 in a standard population, taken here as the 1975 census populations, $F_x^m$ is the observed age-specific marital birth rate in this same age group, and the summation ranges over ages 15-49). Values of SMGFR are taken from Retherford and Cho (1981).

[e]MAC is the mean age at childbearing calculated from the age-specific birth rates. Values of MAC are taken from Coale et al. (1980:3).

[f]TFRs for 1955 and 1956 estimated from trend in GFRs 1955-57.

1975 and 1980, the fertility level continued to drop but at a much slower pace, reaching a TFR of 2.7 and a CBR of 22 in 1980.

In Figure 1, the TFRs from 1960 to 1974 are compared with two sets of fertility estimates based on data from the Korean National Fertility Survey (KNFS) of 1974: own-children estimates from the household data, and estimates obtained from pregnancy histories collected in the survey. On the whole, the agreement is quite good, except for the somewhat higher levels of fertility from 1968 to 1972 indicated by the survey. Because of problems associated with the limited sample size and

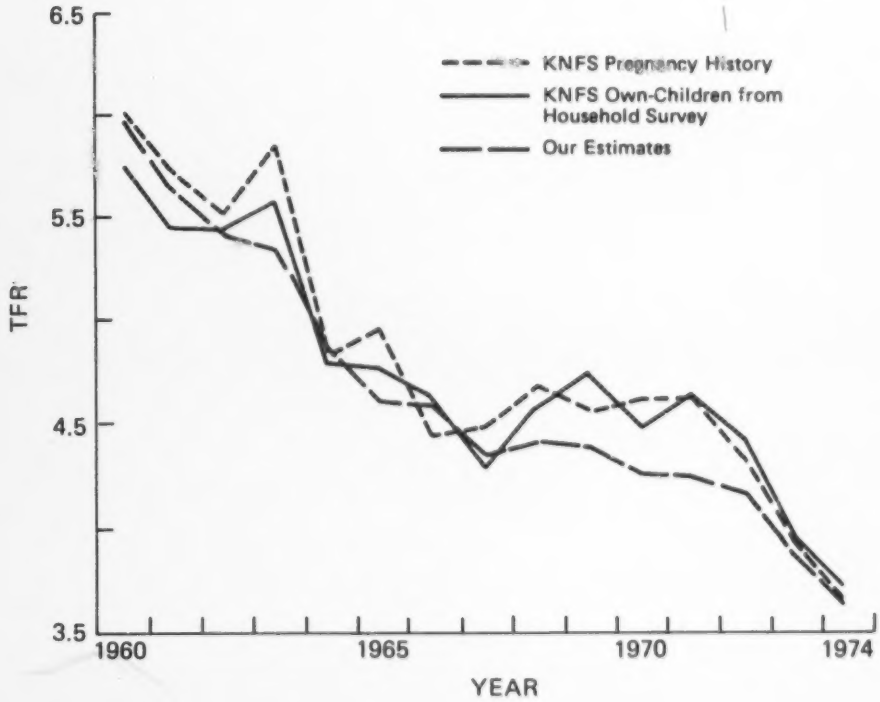



FIGURE 1 Estimated Total Fertility Rates, 1960-74: Republic of Korea

Note: KNFS pregnancy history and own-children tabulations are based on unpublished data from the Korean National Fertility Survey. Our estimates are adjusted census-based own-children estimates.

Source: Coale et al. (1980:6).

possible bias in the survey, the census estimates seem to be more robust. The most precise corroboration of the own-children fertility estimates is the validation of the average level and the average age pattern of fertility with estimates based on registered births adjusted for incomplete registration. As shown in Figure 2, the average age-specific fertility schedules for 1971-75 from these two independent sources are virtually identical. Because of the accurate age reporting in the Korean

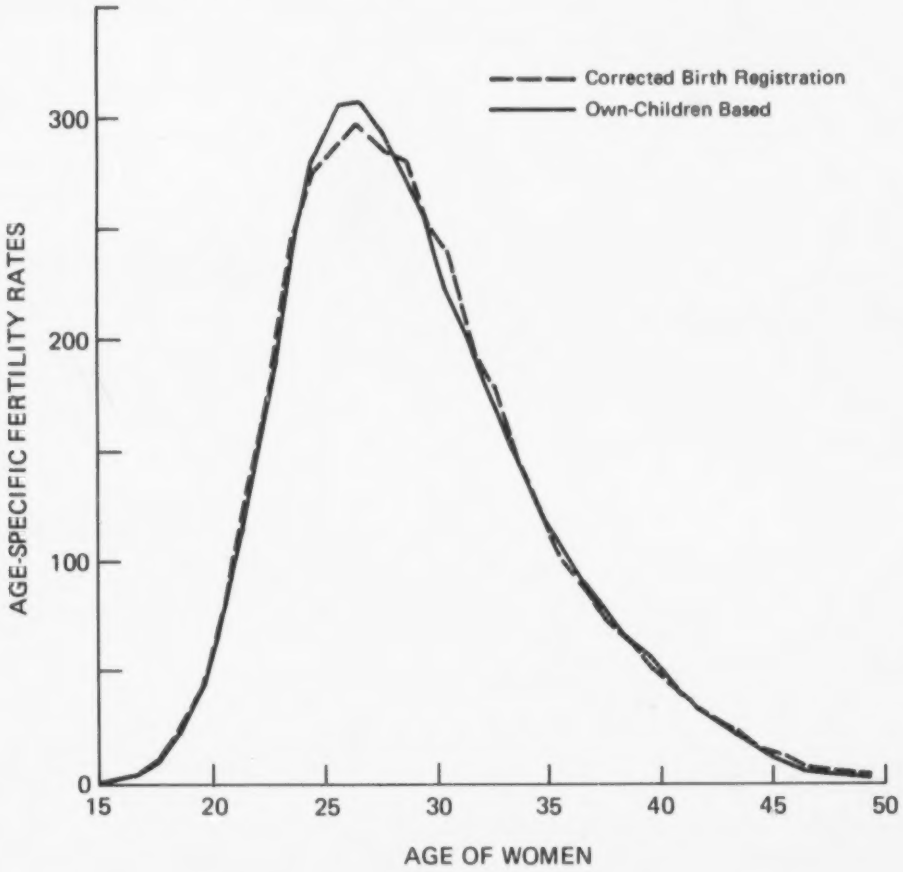



FIGURE 2 Age-Specific Fertility Rates (per 1,000 women), 1971-75: Republic of Korea

Note: Calculated from corrected birth registration and from own-children estimates.

Source: Coale et al. (1980:4)

censuses, the indication of a peak total fertility rate in 1960 and subsequent sharp decline can be accepted as genuine; these patterns are attested to by the differences in the number of children at the appropriate ages found in the censuses of 1966, 1970, and 1975. The summary of fertility rates presented in Table 6 and the changing age patterns of fertility in Table 7 are confirmed by estimates from independent sources.

From 1960, when fertility was at its highest, to 1980, the CBR, the TFR, and the GFR each fell by about 50 percent. The standardized marital general fertility rate (SMGFR), which effectively substracts out the effects of rising age at marriage, fell somewhat less drastically, by slightly less than 40 percent. The mean age at childbearing fell by more than three years during the

TABLE 7 Age-Specific Birth Rates, 1960-80: Republic of Korea

| Year | 15-19 | 20-24 | 25-29 | 30-34 | 35-39 | 40-44 | 45-49 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| All Women | | | | | | | |
| 1960 | 35 | 249 | 323 | 273 | 204 | 96 | 16 |
| 1966 | 19 | 193 | 290 | 207 | 131 | 61 | 17 |
| 1970 | 13 | 174 | 298 | 207 | 111 | 43 | 8 |
| 1975 | 12 | 153 | 256 | 131 | 55 | 18 | 3 |
| 1980 | 5 | 130 | 264 | 111 | 31 | 7 | 1 |
| Currently Married Women | | | | | | | |
| 1960 | 460 | 378 | 347 | 298 | 232 | 117 | 22 |
| 1966 | 500 | 405 | 323 | 220 | 147 | 74 | 23 |
| 1970 | 460 | 411 | 337 | 219 | 121 | 51 | 10 |
| 1975 | 460 | 411 | 295 | 139 | 59 | 20 | 4 |
| 1980 | [a] | 350 | 304 | 118 | 33 | 8 | 1 |

Note: Age-specific birth rates for all women for 1960, 1966, 1970, and 1975 are taken from Coale et al. (1980:3) and are consistent, to within rounding errors, with the TFRs in Table 2.1; birth rates for married women for the same years were estimated by dividing age-specific birth rates for all women by corresponding age-specific proportions currently married. Rates for the age group 15-19 for currently married women are accurate only to two significant figures and are thus rounded to the nearest multiple of ten. Rates for both all women and currently married women for 1980 are preliminary own-children estimates calculated from the 1980 census.

[a]The estimate for currently married women aged 15-19 in 1980 is based on too small a number of women to provide a reliable figure and, hence, it is not shown in the table.

same period, as childbearing became more concentrated at younger reproductive ages. Table 7 provides further detail by showing trends in age-specific birth rates, both for all women and for currently married women. The rates for all women in the upper panel of the table show substantial declines at all ages, with proportionate declines that are especially large at the youngest and oldest ages. The picture is somewhat different in the second panel of the table, which shows rates for currently married women only. Except in the last intercensal period, birth rates for these women remained virtually constant below age 25. The trend in fertility at ages 25-29 has been gradual and somewhat erratic. Birth rates for currently married women age 30 and over fell steadily throughout the period, with declines of about 90 percent in the three oldest age groups.

The reason birth rates at ages 15-19 and 20-24 fell for all women but remained relatively constant for currently married women is that age-specific proportions married fell at these ages. The proportions currently married fell substantially at ages 15-19 and 20-24, and moderately at ages 25-29 (see Chapter 4 for a more detailed description of trends in proportions married). Proportions married rose at ages above 30, however, mainly because of a reduction in widowhood associated with mortality decline. The influence of mortality and widowhood is also apparent in the age gradient of proportions currently married, which declines with age after age 30 as adult male mortality increases to significant levels.

The decline of cohort fertility has been less dramatic than that of period fertility. For the cohorts of women who reached ages 45-49 in 1975, the peak childbearing years below age 30 occurred before 1960, when marital fertility was still very high and had not yet begun to fall. Thus their completed family size at ages 45-49, based on the census question on children ever born, does not show nearly as dramatic a decline as the TFR based on current age-specific birth rates. The slower decline of children ever born is illustrated in Table 8, which shows the average number of children ever born for all women and for ever-married women. The number of children ever born actually rose at many ages, particularly in rural areas, between 1960 and 1966, before falling in subsequent years. The declines after 1966 are moderate compared with those in current fertility measures shown earlier in Tables 6 and 7. One could say that the

TABLE 8 Mean Number of Children Ever Born, 1960-75: Republic of Korea

| Age | Whole Country | | | | Urban | | | | Rural | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1975 | 1960 | 1966 | 1970 | 1975 | 1960 | 1966 | 1970 | 1975 | 1960 | 1966 | 1970 |
| **All Women** | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | 0.1 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.1 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.1 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 |
| 20-24 | 0.8 | 0.6 | 0.4 | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.3 | 0.3 | 0.3 | 0.8 | 0.7 | 0.6 | 0.5 |
| 25-29 | 2.3 | 2.2 | 2.0 | 1.9 | 2.1 | 1.8 | 1.6 | 1.7 | 2.4 | 2.5 | 2.3 | 2.1 |
| 30-34 | 3.8 | 3.8 | 3.5 | 3.2 | 3.5 | 3.3 | 3.0 | 2.8 | 3.9 | 4.1 | 3.9 | 3.6 |
| 35-39 | 4.8 | 4.7 | 4.5 | 4.1 | 4.4 | 4.1 | 3.9 | 3.6 | 5.0 | 5.0 | 5.0 | 4.6 |
| 40-44 | 5.4 | 5.5 | 5.3 | 4.8 | 5.0 | 4.9 | 4.6 | 4.2 | 5.6 | 5.8 | 5.7 | 5.2 |
| 45-49 | 5.5 | 6.1 | 5.6 | 5.2 | 5.2 | 5.5 | 5.0 | 4.7 | 5.6 | 6.3 | 6.0 | 5.6 |
| **Ever-Married Women** | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | 0.9 | 0.4 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.9 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.9 | 0.3 | 0.5 | 0.6 |
| 20-24 | 1.3 | 1.1 | 1.0 | 1.1 | 1.4 | 1.0 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 1.3 | 1.2 | 1.1 | 1.1 |
| 25-29 | 2.4 | 2.4 | 2.2 | 2.0 | 2.3 | 2.0 | 1.8 | 1.9 | 2.5 | 2.6 | 2.4 | 2.3 |
| 30-34 | 3.8 | 3.8 | 3.6 | 3.2 | 3.5 | 3.3 | 3.1 | 2.9 | 3.9 | 4.1 | 3.9 | 3.6 |
| 35-39 | 4.8 | 4.7 | 4.6 | 4.1 | 4.4 | 4.2 | 4.0 | 3.6 | 5.0 | 5.0 | 5.0 | 4.6 |
| 40-44 | 5.4 | 5.5 | 5.3 | 4.8 | 5.0 | 4.9 | 4.6 | 4.2 | 5.6 | 5.8 | 5.7 | 5.3 |
| 45-49 | 5.5 | 6.1 | 5.6 | 5.3 | 5.2 | 5.5 | 5.0 | 4.7 | 5.6 | 6.3 | 6.0 | 5.6 |

Source: Cho and Retherford (1981:4).

TABLE 9 Ever-Married Total Fertility Rates by Province, 1966-70 to 1976-80: Republic of Korea

| Province | 1966-70 | 1971-75 | 1976-80 | Percent Decrease 1966-70 to 1976-80 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Kyonggi Do | 4,851 | 4,269 | 3,013 | 37.9 |
| Kangwon Do | 5,854 | 5,025 | 3,747 | 36.0 |
| Chungchong Pukdo | 5,838 | 5,006 | 3,643 | 37.6 |
| Chungchong Namdo | 5,753 | 5,224 | 3,731 | 35.1 |
| Cholla Pukdo | 6,374 | 5,647 | 3,971 | 37.7 |
| Cholla Namdo | 6,486 | 5,683 | 4,043 | 37.7 |
| Kyongsang Pukdo | 5,468 | 4,713 | 3,285 | 39.9 |
| Kyongsang Namdo | 5,638 | 4,891 | 3,473 | 38.4 |
| Cheju Do | 5,954 | 5,206 | 3,516 | 40.9 |

Source: Retherford et al. (1982).

children ever born figures show a great deal of inertia, since they embody, for older women, a good deal of high-fertility experience that occurred prior to the onset of the marital fertility decline in the 1960s.

## LOCAL AREA FERTILITY DIFFERENTIALS

Table 9 shows recent estimates of ever married total fertility rates (EMTFRs) for all Korean provinces (excluding the metropolitan areas of Seoul and Pusan). In each of the three time periods shown, fertility differentials are apparent, with the lowest fertility province (Kyonggi Do) registering an EMTFR 25 percent below the highest fertility province (Cholla Namdo). These differentials appear to be related to the percentage of the population in each province living in rural areas (Retherford et al., 1982). The fertility declines over the ten-year period have been of the same magnitude in every province. It is possible to examine areal fertility trends in more detail by looking at county level data. Figure 3 shows the Coale index of marital fertility ($I_g$) for all counties in 1960 and Figure 4 shows the extent of the decline in $I_g$ between 1960 and 1970. The lowest fertility in 1960 was found in the urban centers, particularly in the metropolitan areas of Seoul in the north and Pusan in the south. High fertility was clustered in counties situated away from the major urban centers and in the mountainous interior section of the country. Counties with an intermediate

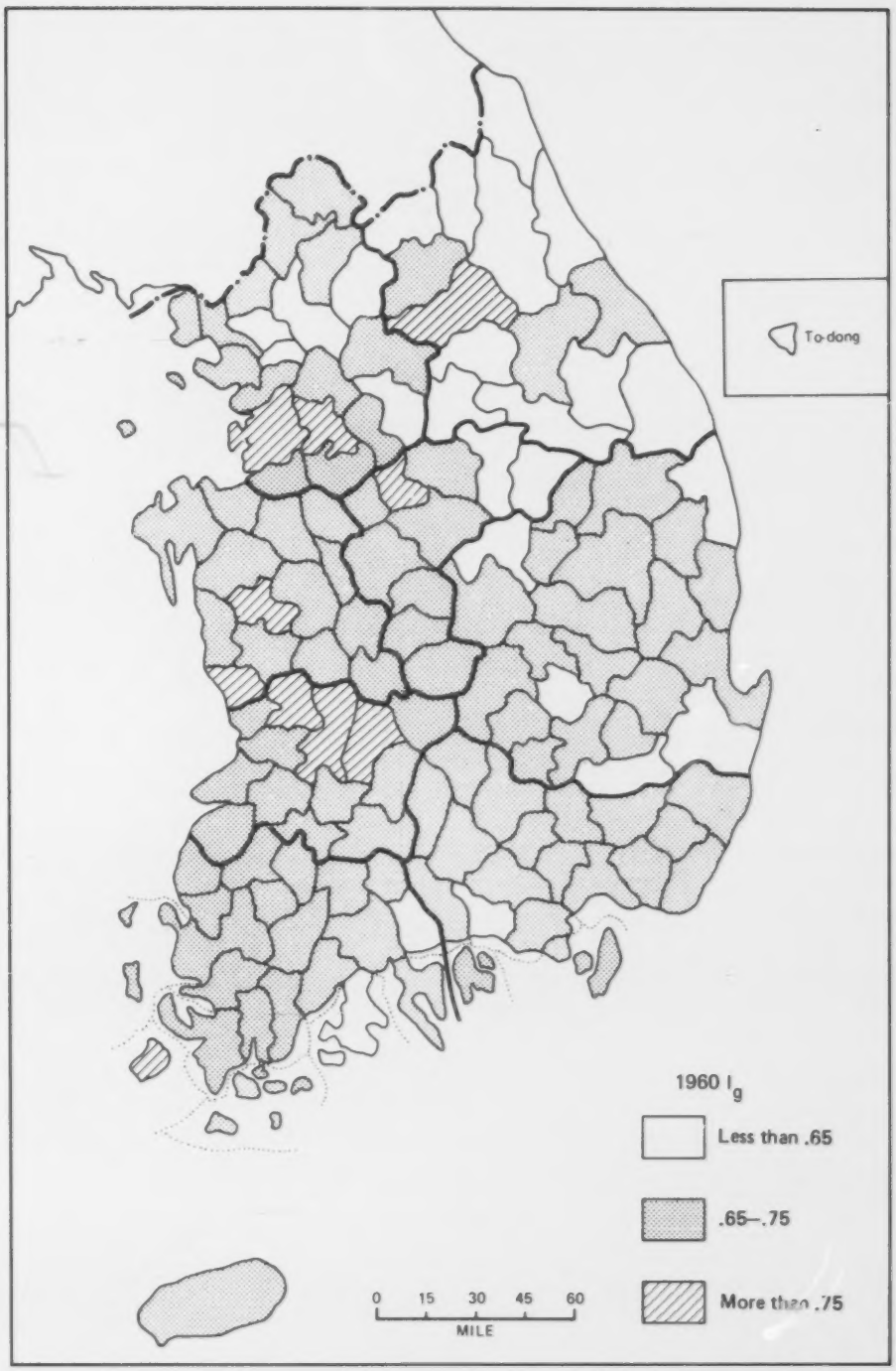



FIGURE 3 Coale's Index of Marital Fertility ($I_g$) for Counties, 1960: Republic of Korea

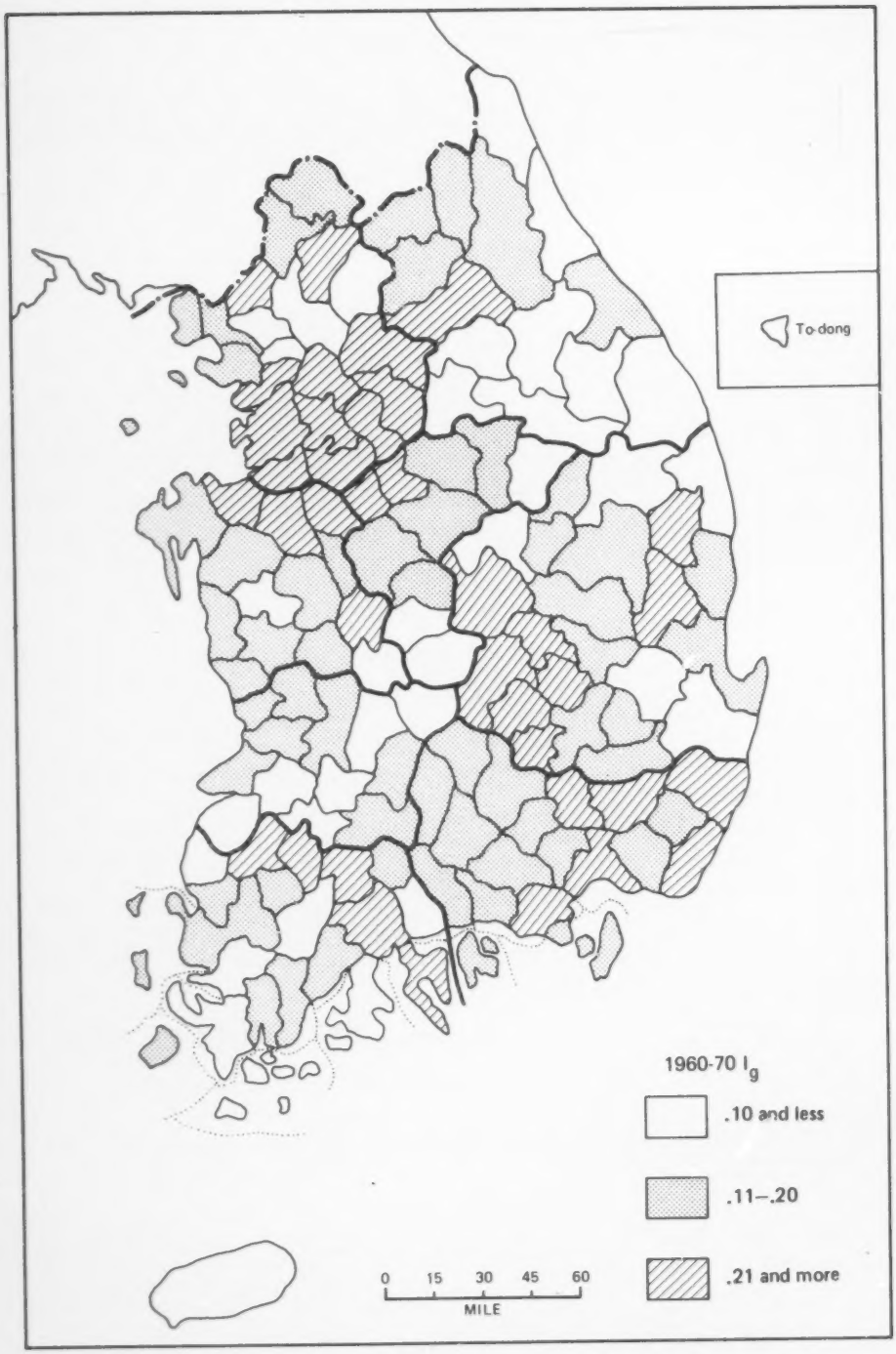



FIGURE 4 Decrease in Coale's Index of Marital Fertility ($I_g$) for Counties, 1960-70: Republic of Korea

level of fertility were found along the coast and near major transportation and communication lines (Retherford et al., 1982).

A majority of counties had a substantial reduction in fertility between 1960 and 1970, with the largest declines taking place in the major metropolitan areas of Seoul, Pusan, and Taegu. Nevertheless, every province had some areas that experienced little or no fertility decline. Counties with only slight fertility declines were largely in the least modernized part of the country along the east coast and in the rural areas of the less-developed southwestern provinces (Cho and Perry, 1979).

## DEMOGRAPHIC ANALYSIS OF FERTILITY DECLINE

The import of the detailed tabulations of total fertility rates, age-specific birth rates, and age-specific proportions married presented above can be analyzed more concisely by decomposing the change in the TFR into its components. The particular decomposition methodology used here has been described earlier by Cho and Retherford (1981), Retherford and Ogawa (1978), and Retherford and Cho (1981).

Table 10 shows decompositions that break down the change in the TFR into two principal components: changes in population composition by marital status and changes in marital fertility. Each of these two principal components is in turn broken down by age. The total change in the TFR, as computed from Table 6, is shown in parentheses at the lower right of each of the four panels in the table. The percent contribution to change is given in the body of each panel, with 100 percent corresponding to the total change in TFR shown in parentheses.

It is evident from Table 10 that the decline in marital fertility after age 30 accounts for most of the change in the TFR. In fact, for 1966-70, a rise in marital fertility at ages below 30 acted to increase the TFR. The contribution of changes in proportions married was also substantial in the 1960s, but relatively small in 1970-75. Decreases in proportions married at ages below 30 acted to reduce the TFR, while increases in proportions married at ages above 30 acted in the opposite direction during all three periods. The preponderance of marital fertility contributions to the decline in the TFR is consistent with the observation

TABLE 10 Simple Percent Decomposition of the Change in the Total Fertility Rate: Republic of Korea

| Period and Age | Marital Status | Marital Fertility | Total |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1960-66 | | | |
| 15-29 | 36.1 | 1.6 | 37.8 |
| 30-49 | -3.1 | 65.4 | 62.2 |
| Total | 33.0 | 67.0 | 100.0 |
| | | | (-1.39) |
| 1966-70 | | | |
| 15-29 | 49.2 | -22.6 | 26.6 |
| 30-49 | -10.7 | 84.1 | 73.4 |
| Total | 38.5 | 61.5 | 100.0 |
| | | | (-0.32) |
| 1970-75 | | | |
| 15-29 | 11.9 | 16.4 | 28.3 |
| 30-49 | -0.9 | 72.6 | 71.7 |
| Total | 11.0 | 89.0 | 100.0 |
| | | | (-1.13) |
| 1960-75 | | | |
| 15-29 | 27.6 | 5.2 | 32.7 |
| 30-49 | -3.2 | 70.5 | 67.3 |
| Total | 24.4 | 75.6 | 100.0 |
| | | | (-2.84) |

Note: Because of rounding errors, rows and columns do not always add precisely to marginal totals. Numbers in parentheses in the lower right of each panel indicate change per woman in the TFR over the period indicated.

Source: Cho and Retherford (1981:43).

made above that age at marriage was already quite late by 1960 and increased only moderately after that time.

As explained in Retherford and Ogawa (1978), the decomposition method can be extended to more variables. Because the results depend on the order in which variables are introduced, some caution is necessary in interpreting the results. For Table 11, the variables entered, in order, were education, residence, marital status, and marital fertility. Education consists of three categories (none, some primary, more than primary); residence of two (urban and rural); and marital status of two (currently married and not currently married). As before, it was assumed that all births occur within marriage, an acceptable assumption in view of Korea's low rate of illegitimacy.

The education component represents the contribution to changes in the TFR from changes in the educational composition of the population; the residence component represents the contribution from changes in residence composition within education categories; the marital status component represents the contribution from changes in marital status composition within education-residence groups; and the fertility component represents the contribution from changes in education-residence-marital status-specific birth rates. Over the period 1960-66, during which the TRF fell substantially (by about 1.4 children per woman), changes in educational composition accounted for 28 percent of the change in the TFR, as shown in the first panel of Table 11. With education controlled, changes in residence composition did not account for much additional change. With both education and residence controlled, changes in marital status composition acted to increase the TFR by 7 percent, thus reversing the sign of the marital status contribution in Table 10 and braking the overall TFR decline. Declines in education-residence-marital status-specific fertility accounted for more than three-fourths, or 79 percent, of the TFR decline; this contribution was concentrated at ages above 30, where major declines in age-specific fertility occurred.

The pattern for 1966-70, shown in the second panel of Table 11, is somewhat similar to that for 1960-66, except that compositional contributions were proportionately more important relative to the fertility contribution; this is not surprising, since the TFR declined much less during the last four years than during the first six years of the decade. During 1966-70, changes in

TABLE 11 Elaborated Percent Decomposition of the Change in the Total Fertility Rate: Republic of Korea

| Period and Age | Education | Residence | Marital Status | Marital Fertility | Total |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1960-66 | | | | | |
| 15-29 | 14.1 | 1.1 | -5.4 | 15.6 | 25.3 |
| 30-49 | 14.1 | -0.8 | -1.8 | 63.2 | 74.7 |
| Total | 28.1 | 0.3 | -7.2 | 78.8 | 100.0 |
| | | | | | (-1.38) |
| 1966-70 | | | | | |
| 15-29 | 31.1 | 10.1 | -6.9 | -21.5 | 12.8 |
| 30-49 | 39.5 | -2.5 | -13.9 | 64.1 | 87.1 |
| Total | 70.5 | 7.6 | -20.8 | 42.7 | 100.0 |
| | | | | | (-0.34) |
| 1970-75 | | | | | |
| 15-29 | 6.1 | 0.6 | 18.9 | 1.7 | 27.3 |
| 30-49 | 7.5 | 0.5 | -0.7 | 65.5 | 72.7 |
| Total | 13.6 | 1.1 | 18.1 | 67.2 | 100.0 |
| | | | | | (-1.05) |
| 1960-75 | | | | | |
| 15-29 | 11.2 | 2.3 | 4.5 | 6.7 | 24.5 |
| 30-49 | 12.9 | -0.2 | -3.3 | 65.9 | 75.5 |
| Total | 24.0 | 2.1 | 1.3 | 72.6 | 100.0 |
| | | | | | (-2.77) |

Notes: Results are based on own-children fertility estimates derived from a 10-percent sample from the 1960 census, a 1-percent sample from the 1966 census, a 10-percent sample from the 1970 census, and a 5-percent sample from the 1975 census. Because of rounding errors, rows and columns do not always add precisely to marginal totals. Numbers in parentheses in the lower right of each panel indicate change per woman in the TFR over the period indicated. Base data for 1960 were adjusted for errors arising from the way the 1960 census question on age was asked.

Results in Tables 10 and 11 must be interpreted cautiously. The two tables are not strictly comparable, because they are based on slightly different input data. Moreover, the reader should be aware that the percent contributions in the decompositions are sensitive to data errors, especially when the total change in the TFR is small, as during 1966-70. This sensitivity is evident in the age marginals in the right-most column of Tables 10 and 11, which show substantial disagreement between the two tables; the disagreement stems from the above-mentioned differences in input data.

Source: Cho and Retherford (1981:44).

educational composition accounted for 71 percent of the change in the TFR. Again, with education controlled, changes in residence composition contributed little. Changes in marital status composition acted to increase the TFR by 21 percent, reflecting a continued increase in proportions married within education-residence groups. Declines in education-residence-marital status-specific fertility during this period accounted for less than half, or 43 percent, of the TFR decline.

The third panel of Table 11 shows a rather different picture for 1970-75. During this more recent period, the education contribution was only 14 percent. The residence contribution was again small. Changes in marital status composition within education-residence subgroups contributed to, rather than subtracted from, the overall TFR decline; indeed, the marital status contribution of 18 percent (note its concentration at ages below 30) exceeded the education contribution. The fertility contribution was about two-thirds of the total. The fourth panel shows a summary decomposition over the entire period 1960-75.

When residence is introduced before education, the contribution of changes in education composition and residence composition are about evenly split instead of concentrated on the education side; the other contributions are virtually unchanged. This alternative decomposition is discussed in more detail in Retherford and Cho (1981). In interpreting the decompositions in Tables 10 and 11, the reader should be aware that the percent contributions are sensitive to errors in the input data, especially when the total TFR change to be analyzed is small, as between 1966 and 1970; therefore, too much significance should not be attached to precise numerical values.

Earlier, in Table 7, it was shown that age-specific marital birth rates rose at younger ages and fell at older ages between 1960 and 1975. This finding is reflected in the decompositions in Tables 10 and 11. Analysis of child spacing data indicates that the rise in marital fertility at younger ages was associated with a substantial decline in the interval between marriage and first birth during the 1960s and the first half of the 1970s (Rindfuss et al., 1982). Consistent with these changes, estimates of birth rates by duration since first marriage indicate that birth rates rose dramatically at short durations and fell sharply at long durations over the same period (Cho and Retherford, 1978).

The above-mentioned child spacing data, obtained from several national fertility surveys in Korea, indicate that first, second, and third birth intervals decreased sharply during the latter half of the 1960s, and that higher birth intervals, which increased in the early 1960s and the early 1970s, tended to plateau during the late 1960s. These findings are consistent with the census-based fertility estimates in Table 6, which also indicate a slowdown in fertility decline during the late 1960s, and with the decompositions in Tables 10 and 11. This consistency indicates that the slowdown of fertility decline during the late 1960s was real and cannot be attributed to estimation error.

Why did marital fertility increase at younger ages and shorter marriage durations, and why did lower-order birth intervals get shorter? Rindfuss et al. (1982) have demonstrated that the answer is not improved fecundity associated with better nutrition, nor is it improved fecundity resulting from age at first marriage rising out of the teen years when fecundity is lower. A major reason appears to be, instead, that a rapidly increasing proportion of first births within marriage were conceived before marriage. This is evident from the upward trend in the proportion of first births that occur within the first six to nine months of marriage. The deteriorating fit of Coale-Trussell model fertility schedules to the Korean data at younger ages since 1965 (Coale et al., 1979) supports this finding. Rindfuss et al.'s findings suggest also that some of the explanation of shorter birth intervals after the first birth lies in shorter breastfeeding. They find, moreover, that birth intervals of a given order are shorter when most of the previous children have been girls rather than boys; thus boy preference may result in consciously weaning girls earlier in order to try to get a boy sooner, although it is also possible that some birth control is used for spacing purposes, and that less spacing control is used when there is a shortage of boys. It is perhaps more important that among the younger generation of couples in general, a greater emphasis is placed on contracting birth intervals to enable the couples, especially the wives, to pursue career options beyond childbearing and childrearing.

NATURAL FERTILITY

Although fecundity is high in Korea, natural fertility appears to be low relative to other countries. There are indications, however, that natural fertility has been increasing, possibly in response to a change in breastfeeding practices, discussed below. Since most demographic research in Korea deals with the post-1960 period, information on natural fertility is very rare. Only two sets of fertility estimates are known to exist for earlier time periods when it can be safely assumed that reproductive behavior was not affected by any deliberate attempt to control family size (Kwon, 1977; Y. Kim, 1966). Since these two sets of estimates are in close agreement, only Kwon's are shown in Table 12. The relatively constant TFR between 1925 and 1960 is a consequence of age-specific fertility rates that rapidly decreased at ages 15-19 (because of a rising age at marriage) and increased at ages 25-49 (see Figure 5). Age-specific marital fertility rates, on the other hand, increased steadily throughout this period, in spite of extreme political upheavals, social unrest, and economic deterioration; in the ten years following 1945-50, these rates increased nearly 20 percent.

More recent fertility data are confounded by differing degrees of contraceptive use, although some suggestive information is available from the 1965 Ichon survey, which is regarded as the only reliable data relevant to the analysis of natural fertility in Korea. The mean number of children ever born to currently married women in Ichon was 1.2 at ages 20-24, 2.7 at ages 25-29, 4.3 at ages 30-34, 5.9 at ages 35-39, and 6.7 at ages 40-44. These averages were somewhat higher than 1966 census data for middle-sized towns because the census was subject to a greater degree of underreporting. Although the proportion of women who reported ever using contraception was fairly high for women aged 25-39 in Ichon, most such use was both ineffective and of short duration. The first effective family planning method to be introduced into the area, the IUD, was not available until early 1965, when the survey was conducted; therefore, its use could not have had any effect on cumulative fertility at that time. It is reasonable to assume, then, that the level of fertility for women aged 30 and over is a fair reflection of natural fertility in that area. The average completed family size of fewer than seven live births is relatively low, especially considering the

TABLE 12 Selected Measures of Fertility, 1925-60: Korea

| Measure | 1925-30 | 1935-40 | 1945-50 | 1955-60 |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Crude Birth Rate | 45 | 44 | 42 | 45 |
| Total Fertility Rate | 6.2 | 6.2 | 6.0 | 6.3 |
| Age-Specific Fertility Rates | | | | |
| 15-19 | 189 | 158 | 96 | 38 |
| 20-24 | 324 | 323 | 305 | 308 |
| 25-29 | 269 | 281 | 292 | 335 |
| 30-34 | 214 | 225 | 234 | 270 |
| 35-39 | 153 | 161 | 167 | 194 |
| 40-44 | 74 | 80 | 83 | 96 |
| 45-49 | 14 | 15 | 15 | 18 |
| Age-Specific Marital Fertility Rates[a] | | | | |
| 15-19 | 276 | 283 | 300 | 357 |
| 20-24 | 340 | 350 | 369 | 440 |
| 25-29 | 283 | 292 | 308 | 367 |
| 30-34 | 230 | 237 | 250 | 298 |
| 35-39 | 171 | 176 | 185 | 221 |
| 40-44 | 90 | 93 | 98 | 117 |
| 45-49 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 24 |

Note: Data for 1925-40 are for all Korea; data for subsequent years are for South Korea only.

[a]The changes in age-specific marital fertility rates over time are assumed to be equal for all age groups.

Source: Kwon (1977:125-139 and 346-353).

customs of early and universal marriage and the stability of Korean marriages. No fertility survey conducted in Korea since the mid-1960s has found any woman reporting more than 14 pregnancies or 12 live births. Therefore, even at its extreme, Korean natural fertility appears to be relatively low.

## FECUNDITY

Data on fecundity are often unreliable; however, according to all available data on both reported fecundity

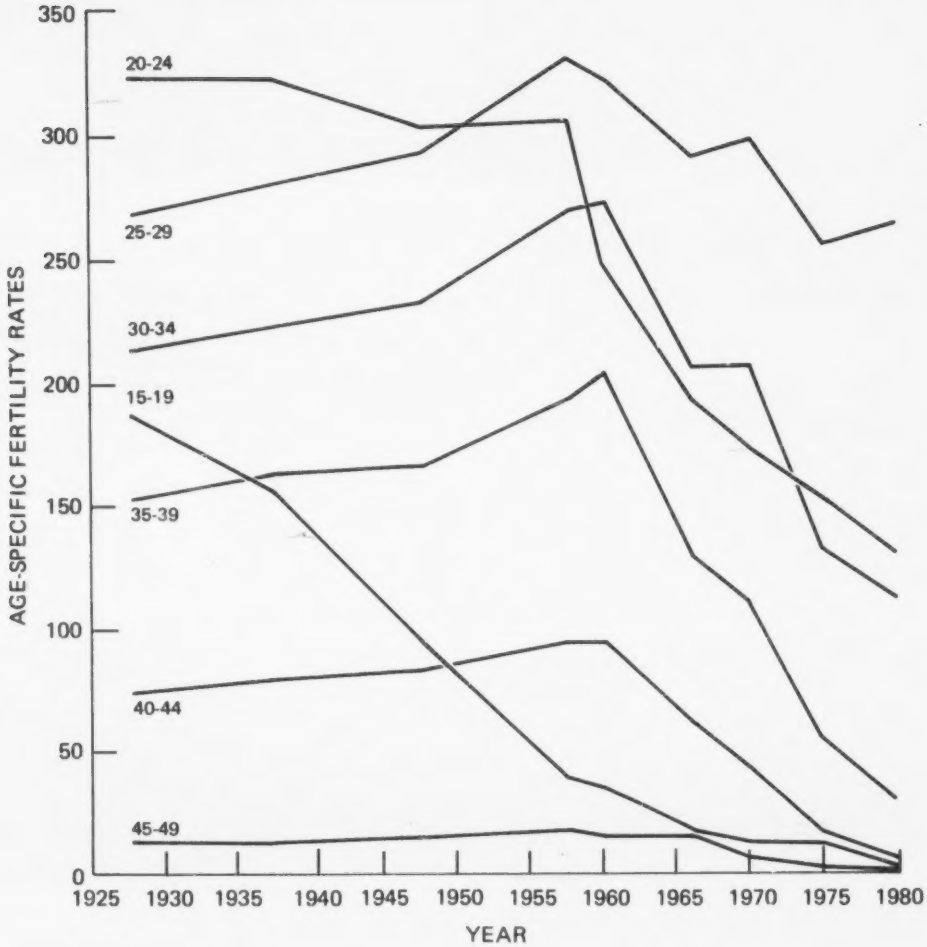



FIGURE 5 Age-Specific Fertility Rates, 1925-30 to 1980: Korea

impairments and the incidence of childlessness, the level of infecundity in Korea is quite low and has been decreasing over time in all age groups. Although early national surveys (1965-68) of married couples in which the wife was aged 15-44 found a nearly constant proportion of 86 to 88 percent who reported that they were fecund, this overall figure masks vast differences by age (see Table 13). In recent years, infecundity has rarely been reported by younger married women (under age 35). In 1976, the proportion reporting themselves to be fecund was still well above 90 percent in the 35-39 age

TABLE 13 Percentage of Couples Reported as Definitely Fecund, 1968-76: Republic of Korea

| Age of Woman | Year of Survey | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1968 | 1971[a] | 1971[b] | 1974[a] | 1974[b] | 1976[a] | 1976[b] |
| 25-29 | 97 | 99.0 | 98.9 | | | 99.4 | 99.3 |
| | | | | 98.0 | 97.8 | | |
| 30-34 | 92 | 96.8 | 96.2 | | | 98.8 | 98.5 |
| 35-39 | 83 | 93.0 | 87.5 | | | 94.5 | 93.7 |
| | | | | 84.6 | 83.9 | | |
| 40-44 | 66 | 55.3 | 48.7 | | | 85.1 | 84.2 |

[a]Those sterilized for contraceptive purposes are treated as fecund.
[b]Those sterilized for contraceptive purposes are proportionately distributed as fecund or sterile under the assumption that the proportion fecund among those who were sterilized is the same as among those who were not sterilized.

Sources: Koh and Smith (1970); Korean Institute for Family Planning (1973); B.T. Park et al. (1979); Korea, NBOS and KIFP (1977).

group and remained high, at about 85 percent, at ages 40-44 (although these reported figures are not likely to be a realistic appraisal of actual fecundity at these ages). Since the latter half of the 1960s, fecundity has increased in all age groups, but the gain has been most dramatic in the later reproductive ages.

This rapid increase in fecundity in the later reproductive ages has been attributed largely to a rising age at menopause, although this trend is not well documented. In the 1976 National Fertility and Family Planning Evaluation Survey, the proportion of women who had experienced menopause was reported to be 0.6 percent at ages 35-39, 3.5 percent at ages 40-44, and 27.9 percent at ages 45-49. At the other end of the spectrum, fecundity in the very early reproductive ages increased substantially between 1960 and 1980, as evidenced by the onset of menstruation at an earlier age in recent years.

The quality of the above data on fecundity impairments may be called into question for two reasons: (1) the self-reporting nature of the questions, and (2) the variable quality of the surveys in general. The basic results, however, can be corroborated with more reliable data on the incidence of childlessness in Korea. In less-developed countries, the incidence of childlessness can be used as a rough estimate of the incidence of

sterility, since voluntary childlessness is rare (Nag, 1980). According to the 1974 KNFS, "Involuntary childlessness, reflecting primary sterility, seems low in Korea: less than 3 percent of women in any duration of marriage category above 5 years have been without any children to date" (Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977:95). Furthermore, only 11 percent of women with no children reported any fecundity impairment. The 1974 survey indicated that only 1.3 percent of currently married women at the end of the childbearing years (ages 45-49) had not had a live birth, compared with 2.5 percent reported in the 1971 Fertility-Abortion Survey.

The proportion of couples with no live birth is even lower in the 35-44 age group, while it is somewhat higher at younger ages. In the earlier age groups, the probability of having married more recently is greater, so that many childless couples will eventually bear children. The older age groups are likely to include a larger proportion of remarried women with no children from their previous marriages; sterility of the husbands of remarried women is also likely to be high since the husbands are usually much older than their wives. Of course, it is possible that women without children are more likely to get divorced and not remarry (thereby artificially inflating the level of fecundity of currently married women), but reliable data on such a phenomenon are not available.

## BREASTFEEDING

Breastfeeding is still nearly universal in Korea, although differentials in both its incidence and length are beginning to appear. Except when physiologically incapable, nearly all women still breastfeed their babies (B.T. Park et al., 1979). The 1974 KNFS found that 94 percent of women reported breastfeeding their babies in the last closed birth interval (Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977:127). These calculations were based on women with a last closed birth interval of at least 33 months. The mean length of breastfeeding was 19.2 months, with most breastfeeding for 1 to 2 years; only 16 percent breastfed for more than 2 years, and only 12 percent reported weaning their babies in less than 1 year.

Bottle feeding has now become popular among educated women in urban areas. The overall proportion breastfeeding is somewhat lower among city residents and better

educated women, especially younger women who have fewer than four children. These women are also more likely to breastfeed their children for shorter periods of time. Shorter durations of breastfeeding have resulted in shorter postpartum nonsusceptible periods, which, together with general health improvements, have led to substantially shorter interbirth intervals, at least for early parities.

Figure 6 shows the proportion of women who nursed their first child for various durations. Around 1950, almost half of these women were breastfeeding for more than 24 months. This proportion dropped to about one third of women in the early 1960s and to less than 20 percent by 1970. The proportion breastfeeding more than 18 months followed a similar pattern, falling by 43 percent between 1956 and 1970. Very little change can be detected, however, in the proportion breastfeeding more than 9 months, except for a slight decline since 1964. In the case of breastfeeding more than 1 year, there is a slightly greater decline in more recent years. Apparently, the abandonment of very long breastfeeding began quite some time ago, and recently, only a small proportion of women have continued very prolonged nursing, although the large majority of women continue to nurse their children for moderately long periods of 9 months or so.

Before 1960, when the practice of family planning and abortion was very limited, these changes in breastfeeding apparently contributed to a reduction in the frequency of long interbirth intervals, and consequently to the rise in marital fertility from 62 percent to nearly 90 percent of standard natural fertility, the average of ten schedules listed by Henry (Coale et al., 1979). The effect of breastfeeding on fertility in Korea is, however, still open to question. Between 1960 and 1970, Bongaarts (1978:123) noted that the total natural fertility rate increased as a result of a decline in lactation. However, this small increase was more than offset by substantial increases in the use of contraception and induced abortion and a decline in the proportions married. The KNFS data showed that women who wanted no more children breastfed significantly longer than women who wanted more children (Nemeth, 1981). The same survey found a strong positive association between the length of breastfeeding and the length of the last closed birth interval for women who did not use contraception (Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977); however, the

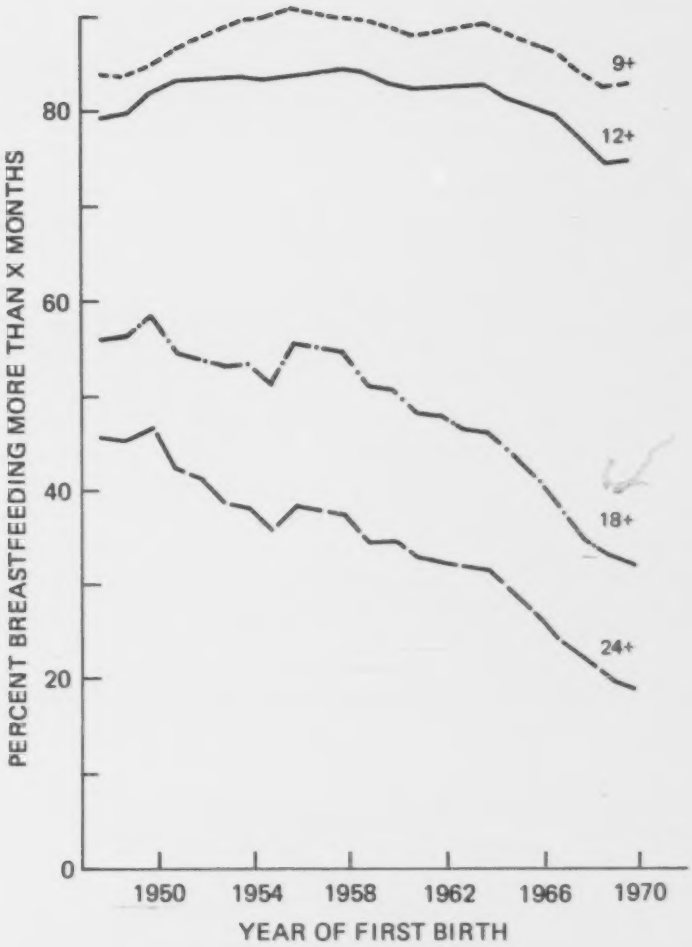



FIGURE 6 Percent of Women Who Breastfed for More Than 9, 12, 18, and 24 Months After First Birth, by Year of First Birth: Republic of Korea

Note: All values are five-year moving averages.

Source: Coale et al. (1979:20).

factors leading to that relationship are not entirely clear. Although there would appear to be some causal influence of breastfeeding on pregnancy, at least part of this influence is in the opposite direction since many women breastfeed their babies until they become

pregnant. In an earlier study in Ichon, the small differences between the average length of breastfeeding and the length of the interval between a birth and subsequent pregnancy for women in the older age groups were found to be due primarily to greater foetal wastage. Practically every woman in the Ichon survey area breastfed her children until the start of the next pregnancy, regardless of her age. In Korea today, if widespread breastfeeding practices have been one factor keeping fertility below its maximum level biologically, any changes in these practices will tend to work against further declines in fertility.

# CHAPTER 3

## SOCIOECONOMIC CONDITIONS AND FERTILITY

The previous two chapters dealt separately with rapidly changing economic and social conditions in Korea and the fertility transition. The present chapter examines the relationship between these changes. The methodology used encompasses several related approaches, including macro-, micro-, and community-level studies. The relatively large number of micro- and macro-level studies conducted in the last several years have shown clearly the impact of modernization and socioeconomic development on fertility levels in Korea: demand for children has been reduced by a decrease in their net utility (Cho et al., 1977); moreover, consumer aspirations have been raised by the variety of goods and recreational activities that are becoming available. This general rise in expectations, combined with a growing feeling of relative deprivation generated by rapid economic development and urbanization, has put growing pressure on large families (Kwon et al., 1975). While it is recognized that socioeconomic development in general can be instrumental in producing a fertility decline, it is more useful to examine the individual facets of that development. These include urbanization, declining infant and child mortality, rising educational attainment (especially for women) and educational aspirations for children, the changing status of women, increasing female labor force participation, a rise in consumer aspirations, and improved transportation and communications.

These various factors are discussed in relation to fertility in the subsections below. This is followed by a review of the mixed evidence on the fertility impact of community and ecological factors. Although some empirical studies have been unable to demonstrate this impact, the discussion below reviews a detailed anthropological study

and an areal analysis that found these factors to be of critical importance.

## URBANIZATION AND MIGRATION

Since the Korean War, Korea has been transformed from a heavily rural, agricultural society to one in which the majority of the population lives in urban areas (see Chapter 1). Although this rapid rate of urbanization has proven to be an important factor in the country's fertility decline (Moon, 1972; Kwon et al., 1975; C.B. Park, 1978), it may prove to be less important in the future. Rural women currently have considerably higher fertility than urban women; however, rural fertility has declined at a slightly faster rate than urban fertility and remains higher only because it started at a much higher level. In 1960, the TFR for rural women was 6.6 compared with a rate of 4.5 among urban women (see Table 14); by 1975, urban total fertility had dropped by 39 percent to 2.8, while rural total fertility had declined by 44 percent to 3.7. However, these declines were not uniform over this period. From 1960 to 1966, total fertility in urban areas declined by 30 percent, compared with a decline of 17 percent in rural areas. During the next decade, however, rural fertility fell almost three times as rapidly as urban fertility (declining by 32.4 percent in rural areas and 11.8 percent in urban areas).

Although contraceptive use rates have been consistently higher in urban than in rural areas throughout the history of the Korean family planning program, the most recent national survey shows virtually no difference in use rates (Koh et al., 1980b). Differentials in ideal family size between urban and rural areas have remained nearly constant for at least the last fifteen years (Stoeckel, 1975; Cheong et al., 1979). In recent surveys, rural women in Korea say they want about one half child more on average than women in large cities, although they actually expect to have about one child more on the average (Cheong et al., 1979; B.T. Park et al., 1979).

Rapid urbanization affects both those born in cities and those who move to cities from rural areas, but the effect on the migrant can be particularly profound. In describing urbanism as a way of life, Wirth (1957) observed that it is characterized by secularization, secondary-group relationships, voluntary association, increased segmentation of roles, and poorly defined

TABLE 14 Own-Children Estimates of Total Fertility Rates per Woman, 1960, 1966, 1970, and 1975: Republic of Korea

| Residence and Year | Education: None | Primary | More than Primary | Total |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Whole Country | | | | |
| 1960 | 6.72 | 5.45 | 3.96 | 5.98 |
| 1966 | 5.79 | 4.56 | 2.92 | 4.60 |
| 1970 | 5.17 | 4.38 | 3.49 | 4.26 |
| 1975 | 3.80 | 3.51 | 2.77 | 3.21 |
| Urban | | | | |
| 1960 | 5.27 | 4.51 | 3.53 | 4.50 |
| 1966 | 3.72 | 3.38 | 2.58 | 3.13 |
| 1970 | 3.84 | 3.80 | 3.36 | 3.58 |
| 1975 | 3.08 | 3.05 | 2.59 | 2.76 |
| Rural | | | | |
| 1960 | 7.00 | 6.15 | 5.24 | 6.60 |
| 1966 | 6.23 | 5.30 | 3.99 | 5.50 |
| 1970 | 5.57 | 4.79 | 4.02 | 4.81 |
| 1975 | 4.10 | 3.85 | 3.35 | 3.72 |

Source: Retherford and Cho (1981).

social norms. For Korea, Moon (1972) noted that urban life is accompanied by a decline in primary relationships and traditional kinship values because the migrant is removed from the traditional milieu of the agricultural population. While it is generally true that migrants have a smaller number of children than nonmigrants,[1] it is not clear to what extent this can be attributed to urban adaptation. Ro and Ahn (1977) feel that urban exposure does tend to reduce fertility, but that migrants also possess certain attitudes and motivations that predispose them to having fewer children. B.S. Lee et

al. (1981) constructed an autoregressive fertility model to control for selectivity of migrants and to test for adaptation. They found that migrants from rural areas to Seoul would have 2.9 fewer children than comparable rural stayers, those moving to other large cities would have 1.9 fewer children, and those moving to small cities would have 1.2 fewer children. Concluding that adaptation to urban life is significant in explaining the reduced fertility of rural-urban migrants, the authors estimated that rural-urban migration was responsible for averting 2.6 million births during the decade 1965-75.

## SOCIOECONOMIC STATUS

Although Cochrane (1979) has found that the traditional negative relationship between education and fertility is not as universal as previously thought, increases in education in Korea are without doubt one of the major causes of fertility decline (N.H. Cho et al., 1977; Moon, 1972). Fertility has been found to be negatively related to education (particularly wife's education) in both rural and urban areas and for all time periods for which data are available (S. Hong, 1978; Kwon et al., 1975; Cho and Retherford, 1981). This relationship generally holds for a variety of fertility-related variables (number of children ever born, TFR, ideal family size, and nonuse of contraception and abortion), even after controls are introduced for numerous other sociodemographic variables. However, this inverse relationship between education and fertility has shown some tendency to weaken over time, and there has been considerable convergence in contraceptive behavior between educational groups (Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977; Cho and Retherford, 1981). Own-children fertility estimates for 1960-1975 (Table 14) show that rapid fertility decline in both urban and rural areas started in all educational groups simultaneously. These estimates also confirm both the inverse relationship between education and fertility throughout this period and the convergence between educational groups over time.

This pattern is consistent with the transitional hypothesis of differential fertility (Cho et al., 1970:282-285), which states that a population in the early stage of its demographic transition begins to exhibit a sharp inverse relationship between fertility and educational attainment (as well as other components of social status). This relationship is the result of a

transformation of the traditional value of children as productive units to their new value as consumer goods. Since individuals of higher socioeconomic status are the first to adopt new life styles, their fertility begins to decline earlier than that of lower socioeconomic groups.

The KNFS reported that the TFR dropped monotonically from 4.8 for women with no schooling to 2.5 for women with a college education (Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977:91). Much of the educational differential, however, was due to differences in the proportion of women married at ages under 25. This is evidenced by the fact that the total marital fertility rate varied between only 5.3 and 4.4. Mason and Phananiramai (1981) used an elaborate economic-demographic model to examine marital fertility and found, quite surprisingly, that more education leads to higher marital fertility. Part of the explanation for this puzzling relationship is that more highly educated women of a given age have a shorter duration of marriage than those with less education. However, a significant positive relationship persisted even after controlling for marital duration. The authors do caution that women with higher education will not necessarily have higher completed fertility since they tend to marry later.

Although some of the impact of education on fertility is direct, there are also undoubtedly indirect effects through such intervening variables as educational aspirations for children, media exposure, female employment, breastfeeding, infant mortality, occupation, and income. Predictably, income does not appear to have much net effect on fertility (Mason and Phananiramai, 1981). Couples with higher income do express less dependence on their children for old age support, but the overall effect of income tends to wash out when other factors are introduced.

Occupation appears to have some impact on fertility, although its effect is also attenuated when controls are introduced. The KNFS found that, within education groups, women whose husbands worked in agriculture had the highest level of fertility (Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977). The same study found that professionals and managers were distinctive for their high level of contraceptive use, while farmers and manual laborers were distinctive for their low level of use. These findings would suggest that as Korea's economy continues its industrial transformation and Korean men and women shift to jobs with higher occupational prestige, continuing fertility decline will be favored.

FEMALE EMPLOYMENT

In the last two decades, there has been considerable improvement in the status of women in Korea, accompanied by an increasing propensity of women to join the labor force. Korean women also have a longer average work week (53.5 hours) than women in any other country in the world (according to a recent report of the International Labor Organization cited in the Honolulu Star-Bulletin, January 22, 1982). In a 1976 national survey, B.T. Park et al. (1979) found that the percentage of married women who had been employed before marriage decreased monotonically with age, from 44.5 percent for women under age 25 to 9.3 percent for women aged 45-49. Moreover, about 23 percent of women were working at the time of the survey (30 percent in large cities and 18 percent in rural areas). Although female labor force participation has been rising, it is not clear whether women's work per se has been partly responsible for Korea's fertility decline.

The KNFS found no clear pattern of association between women's work experience and either current contraceptive use or cumulative fertility (Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977; Koo, 1979). Data from the 1970 census indicate that employed women had higher fertility than nonemployed women in every age group (United Nations, ESCAP, 1975). However, in a more restricted sample of women aged 26-30 in 1970, Ro (1979) found that women's economic activity had the largest (negative) impact on the number of children ever born of any variable included in a multivariate model. In fact, women who were regularly employed had an average of .57 fewer children than those who were economically inactive, after controlling for education, literacy, migration status, occupation of household head, industry, and urban-rural residence.

As might be expected, the type of job seems to be more important in determining fertility than economic activity alone. Certain jobs are more compatible with raising children than others. Although S. Hong (1978) did not find much of a fertility differential between working and nonworking women, she found that women whose jobs were incompatible with housekeeping had much lower fertility than those whose jobs were compatible. Low fertility has also been found to be characteristic of women in professional and technical occupations and women with high opportunity costs of earnings (United Nations, ESCAP, 1975; S. Hong, 1979).

The mere act of working, therefore, seems unlikely to cause reduced fertility in a country where many jobs are entirely compatible with childrearing and alternatives to caring for children during the workday are readily available. However, the increasing nucleation of the family, the continuing evolution in the structure of job opportunities, and the changing status of women may all combine to facilitate a further reduction in fertility rates in the future.

## INFANT AND CHILD MORTALITY

One measure of socioeconomic conditions in a country is the state of health of the population in general, and the level of mortality in particular. Since the Korean War, mortality rates have declined precipitously in Korea: the infant mortality rate declined from 100 to 122 in 1955-60 to 37 in 1978-79 (Korea, Bureau of Statistics, Economic Planning Board, 1980; Cho and Feeney, 1976). In the past, infant mortality appears to have had a substantial influence on fertility rates, although there are almost no empirical studies to support this link (S. Hong, 1978); both changing attitudes toward family size and the country's overall fertility decline have been attributed to the decline in infant and child mortality (Kwon and Lee, 1976; N.H. Cho et al., 1977).

However, mortality has now reached such a low level that it is evidently no longer a major factor in childbearing decisions. In 1976, N.H. Cho et al. (1977) reported that only 13.1 percent of married women mentioned worry about child mortality as a disadvantage of a small family. In the same year, the Value of Children study found that not a single respondent (out of more than 2,000) spontaneously mentioned mortality risks as a reason why it is undesirable to have only one child (Bulatao, 1979:87). C.B. Park et al. (1979:564) estimate that at this point in time, the complete elimination of infant mortality would lead to only a one point reduction in the crude birth rate. The authors conclude that "the effect of infant mortality may be of micro-level concern but may not have much impact on the macro-level."

The above discussion indicates that changing socioeconomic conditions in Korea can take much of the credit for precipitating the recent fertility decline. Rapid urbanization, increasing educational attainment (particularly for women), the increasing availability to women of

jobs that are incompatible with childrearing, and the drastic decline in infant and child mortality have all contributed to the fertility transition. While the first three factors may be expected to put continuing pressure on the birth rate in the future, infant mortality is now so low that further reductions are unlikely to have much impact on fertility.

## COMMUNITY AND ECOLOGICAL FACTORS

There has been little research on the relationship between community factors and fertility behavior in Korea. Only four major studies are known to be available so far. The results of these studies seem to depend on the type of data and methodology used. Least successful in demonstrating an effect of community factors on fertility are studies that add community-level variables to individual records on survey data files. Aggregate-level analyses relating average areal fertility levels to other areal characteristics have met with some success. The type of research that has shown the strongest results is an anthropological study primarily based on field observation.

Cho and Perry (1979) conducted an areal analysis of the determinants of fertility in 140 rural counties in Korea. They found that both socioeconomic factors and IUD acceptance have a negative impact on marital fertility among rural women aged 30-44, but the effect of socioeconomic status is not discernible among younger women. Their study also demonstrated that IUD acceptance rates have a greater negative impact on fertility in areas with relatively low socioeconomic levels.

Using 1974 KNFS data, S.B. Lee et al. (1978b) examined the extent to which community differences in family planning practices are explained by community characteristics. They found that the differences were moderately associated with the aggregate socioeconomic levels of each village expressed as averages of the socioeconomic standings of individuals. The most important aggregate variables were almost identical to the variables that explained differences among individual couples. The relationship of community structure and environmental factors to the level of family planning practices in a community was found to be insignificant. S. Hong (1976:179), investigating the association between community development and the desired family size of

individuals in 53 villages in southeastern Korea, arrived at a similar conclusion,[2] but in her dismay at the results she stated the following:

> From my own personal experience, I am certain that the social environment affects individual behavior. In the research . . . , however, few effects are discernible. Perhaps the methodological and measurement suggestions just made (in the dissertation) will lead to improved studies of the community effects on individual behavior.

Such an improvement could be made by the adoption of a holistic approach based on intensive and prolonged field observation. The anthropological research of Han and others on "social, cultural, and ecological factors affecting population processes in Korea," which was carried out during a one-and-a-half-year period between 1975 and 1976 (Han and Kwon, 1981), is typical of this approach and provides many insights into the relationships between community factors and reproductive behavior. For comparative purposes, the research selected as its observation sites four ecologically and socioculturally distinctive communities in different parts of the country: a rice-farming village, a mountainous farming village, a fishing village, and a middle-sized town. The most important finding of this research is that ecological factors such as the type of subsistence economy, the pattern of labor participation, the seasonality of labor demand, and community mortality and health conditions are critical determinants of the marriage institution, the family system, and family-building behavior and attitudes, as described in more detail below.[3] The same kinds of relationships between socioeconomic background and individual fertility are confirmed as in other KAP (knowledge of, attitudes toward, and practice of contraception) types of surveys conducted in Korea; however, unlike other studies, this research discloses many striking features of community-level fertility differences and behavior.

When different types of communities are compared, no significant negative relationship is observed between the level of fertility and the average age at marriage. In the fishing village, the level of fertility was relatively low, while marriage took place at a comparatively young age; the reverse was true in the rice-farming village. Similar dissonance was seen between fertility behavior and attitudes: women in the fishing village revealed

very high family-size ideals, while their actual fertility was relatively low.

The pattern of seasonal variations in the level of births differed from one type of community to another. The mode of mate selection and meaning of marriage were distinctive in each type of community, even in the traditional setting. It is well documented that in traditional Korea, marriage was mostly arranged regardless of the opinion of those being married; though the consent of children was assumed, arranged marriage was both the preferred and dominant mode of mate selection, even in the early 1960s (J.S. Choi, 1966:438; Lee and Kwon, 1968). However, free marriage was common in the fishing village, which was most underdeveloped. Even in the case of an arranged marriage, the process of mate selection was entirely different in the farming and fishing villages: in the latter, there was hardly any significant family or community involvement in mate selection (unpublished research notes and Chun, 1977a). Marriage patterns in the town community were similar to those in the farming areas.

Patterns of fertility-related behavior therefore vary among the survey communities. The discussion that follows examines how different ecological or environmental factors have brought about these differentials.

## Type of Subsistence Economy

As is obvious, fishing constitutes the major industry in the fishing village. In addition, upland farming and sea-plant cultivation form a substantial part of the subsistence economy of the area. Fishing is exclusively assigned to adult males, while women work in upland farming; during the winter, the whole family, including children, is engaged in sea-plant cultivation. The farming and mountainous villages rely entirely on rice cultivation and dry-field farming; economically, the two villages are quite similar. The people in the town community, who are no better off economically than farmers, are mostly employed in the service sector.

The relatively low level of fertility and large family-size ideal in the fishing village can be explained primarily by the type of subsistence economy. Traditional sea fishing on a small boat involves considerable risk. The close relationship between high mortality and large desired family size is already well established. More-

over, high mortality among adult males frequently causes the discontinuation of marriage for women. In addition, because boat fishing itself results in separation of the couple, abstinence is frequently observed during the fishing season. These factors have contributed to the comparatively low fertility in the community. Similarly, the high fertility in the farming villages can partly be explained by the low risk of dying involved in agriculture, the concurrent stability of marriage, and the infrequent practice of voluntary abstinence.

The high mortality of adult men of reproductive age appears to have profound implications for the marriage and family system of the fishing village. There is little social resistance against the remarriage of women in the area. The survey reveals that about 90 percent of currently married women are in their second or third marriage; the equivalent proportions in the other communities are less than 10 percent. In the fishing village, family life is highly unstable: concubinage, desertion of spouses by either side, and separation of the couple are very common. In contrast, the rice-farming village, which is also a kin (or clan) village, manifests very strong family solidarity and stability. The type of family system seems to be associated directly with the degree of family involvement in mate selection; so-called "free marriage" is found mostly in the fishing village and least in the farming village.

The major meanings or functions of marriage also vary in accordance with the ecological setting of an area. The primary concerns of married people in the farming village closely agree with the alleged traditional functions postulated by the neo-Confucian ideology, which emphasizes the succession of family name, family unity, filial piety, and so forth. These are of only secondary importance in the fishing village, where dependence in old age and personal security are primary concerns. In the fishing village, the right and duty of ancestor worship can even be traded among those who have no kinship relations at all (Chun, 1977a).

Thus it seems clear that the type of subsistence economy is closely linked with the level of fertility, the meaning and practice of marriage, and the family system of an area. However, the differences in desired family size cannot be properly explained in the same way; for this purpose, labor demand and the importance of child labor in the community economic system must be examined.

Demand for Labor

In the town community, the economic value of children is minimal, while in the fishing village, it is of much greater importance. In general, the economic value of children is partly determined by the extent of women's labor force participation in the survey communities: the value is greater when the need for women's labor force participation increases. This observation is generally valid where a traditional industry or economic system is dominant; however, the reverse may be true in a modern system where the major goal of women's economic activity is self-realization or ability and career development.

The research discloses that the proportion of women in any kind of economic activity is very minor in the town community. In contrast, in the fishing village, farming is almost exclusively assigned to women. Men rarely work on the farm or help with household jobs, even if they stay home idle, and children usually prepare supper for the family and clean the house; in other words, women's prescribed economic activity can only be properly performed if children are present. In the farming village, women's work outside the house is largely confined to dry-field farming, and rice farming is the duty of men under ordinary circumstances.[4] In these villages, children have little economic value, but also do not constitute much of an economic burden. Older sisters and brothers usually take care of younger ones, and if not, the community provides the necessary care.

Another important observation is that in the fishing village, sea farming during the winter, which is then the most important income source, is extremely labor-intensive; the amount of farming is determined, year by year, by the number of household members available. Children who have migrated to the city and are marginally employed there often return to the village to help their family during this season. No evidence of circular migration for work is seen in the other communities (Chun, 1977a).

Such demand for both women's and children's labor in the traditional setting may explain to a significant extent community differences in desired family size. The town community exhibits both the smallest family-size ideal and the lowest demand for children's or women's labor for the household economy, with the fishing village at the other end of the spectrum. In fact, the range of differences in desired family size among the villages is

greater than that among age or major socioeconomic groups, suggesting the importance of community or ecological factors in attitudes toward family building.

## The Work Cycle

In the traditional economic sector, labor intensity, the work cycle, and the division of labor generally depend upon the types and sizes of subsistence economies. In the farming villages mentioned above, intensive labor input is needed from May to July and in September and October, while the period from November through February is a slack season. In the fishing village, labor input (particularly of women) is intense in May and June in connection with upland farming, and during the winter months from November to February because of off-shore sea-plant cultivation (or sea farming). The latter is most labor-intensive, and in this season all available hands except the very young and the very old are put to work from early in the morning until late at night. Similar, though slightly less, labor intensity is observed in farming during the busy seasons. On the other hand, no such distinctive work cycle is apparent in the town community.

The research reveals that the work cycle accounts for the seasonality of births and marriages, and points to problems in the family planning delivery system in the survey communities. Chun's analysis (1977b) shows that there are marked monthly differences in the frequency of births in the farming and fishing villages, and that these patterns coincide with the work cycle (that is, pregnancy takes place most frequently in the slack season, while the rate falls abruptly during the work season).[5] For example, the frequency of pregnancies peaks in September and October in the fishing village, and in December and January in the farming community. Similar, but more pronounced, patterns of seasonal variation are observed for marriages. According to 1974 KNFS data, about 57 percent of marriages for women aged 20-49 who grew up in rural areas are reported to have occurred during the three months from November to January; marriages during the four months from June through September account for only 5.7 percent. The corresponding figures for women who had grown up in the city are 39 percent and 14 percent, respectively.

These patterns have significant implications for family planning field services. Adequate delivery of these services is extremely difficult during the busy season. Field workers, who rotate regularly through each village, often cannot see any eligible women when they visit during the day because these women do not return home until late at night. Since the busy season extends to about six months a year, the rural work cycle should not be overlooked when family planning strategies are formulated.

## Other Ecological Factors

Han and others include geographical location, housing, and the perception of community health conditions among the major ecological factors. The research found that, although the national family planning program was implemented all over the country, accessibility still constitutes a main factor in the availability of family planning services and information. For example, it was reported that field workers visited the fishing village only once a year even though they were supposed to inspect each village at least once a month. Furthermore, because of a lack of convenient transportation, compounded by geographical location, the villagers rarely visited any family planning clinic in the nearby town. A similar problem, though much less acute, was found in the mountainous village. Although a lack of contact with family planning workers was also prevalent in the town community, women there could readily obtain information and services through numerous drug stores and clinics. Accessibility was also found to be closely related to the community's general reaction to certain types of family planning methods, including sterilization: suspicion of a method was greater when accessibility was limited.

Housing conditions were identified as one of the key factors explaining the relatively low level of fertility in the town community. In that area, about one third of the total households live in rented rooms, and the number of children has many immediate implications for everyday living: it is difficult for a large family to rent a room, and couples with many children are usually under psychological stress because they are afraid their children will disturb the landlord. This is more or less a common feature of life for the urban lower class; it is manifested in slightly higher fertility than that of the

urban middle and upper classes, but much lower fertility than that of rural villager. Whereas concern about children's education is a major force limiting family size among the middle class, housing-related problems appear to exert a major pressure for low fertility among the urban lower class.

According to the anthropological type of study discussed above, individuals' perceptions of health and mortality conditions seem to mirror more the community or collective experience than their own personal history. For instance, the lower- and middle-class town community members generally have very similar perceptions of surrounding health and mortality conditions. Perceptions of the lower-class town residents are also far brighter than those of the farming villagers, who are economically better off. Undoubtedly, these perceptions are one of the important determinants of desired family size, and thus are related to motivation to regulate family size, not only in the survey communities but also in Korea as a whole.

## Ecological Versus Sociocultural Factors

As discussed below in Chapter 5, various aspects of the Korean family system are closely associated with individual reproductive behavior, but the direction of these impacts is neither unidimensional nor unilinear. In the traditional family system, two mutually exclusive forces co-exist, one supporting high and the other low fertility. However, the significance of each force is not constant, but dependent upon the particular social milieu. A similar argument can be made about traditional cultural factors, though most of these are embedded in the family system. According to the findings of Han and others, observed differentials in both actual fertility and desired family size among the four communities are not substantially explained by sociocultural factors such as traditionalism, familism, and community solidarity. The ecological factors can have important implications for the community's fertility level, actual or desired. For example, the level of fertility in a community is influenced by whether the community is urban or rural and by the degree to which it is oriented toward industry, farming, or fishing. At the same time, within each community setting, sociocultural factors have behavioral implications at the individual or couple level.

Apart from the anthropological type of community study done by Han and others, most community-level analyses of fertility-related behavior have failed, as mentioned earlier, to produce any distinctive fertility differences by ecological or cultural factors. However, the persistent marked fertility differences between urban and rural areas and between large and small cities provide other indirect evidence of the importance of community and ecological factors. Confining analysis to agricultural communities, as is the case with most community-level studies done so far in Korea, seems very unlikely to lead to an accurate assessment of the ecological factors influencing fertility, since rural Korean farming villages display considerable homogeneity in their ecological and environmental characteristics, when contrasted with cities, fishing villages, mining communities, or farming villages undergoing rapid transition due to geographic proximity to expanding cities with industrial orientations. (Part of the lack of finding distinctive fertility differences by ecological or cultural factors in Korean studies, may be due to the choice of communities with little ecological distinctiveness.)

NOTES

1 Migrants moving from one rural area to another (rural-rural migrants) have fewer children than rural residents in general in all age groups, and migrants to Seoul from other cities have fewer children than residents of Seoul. Rural migrants to Seoul have even fewer children than Seoul residents below age 30, but not at older ages (Ro and Ahn, 1977).

2 The lack of a substantial effect of the community level variables in this study may be partly due to the limitations of the sampling design. The 53 villages included in the study are geographically adjacent to one another and are all in the same valley. Different results may have been obtained with a more dispersed and less well-integrated sample of villages.

3 Parts of the discussion below are extracted from Han and Kwon (1981); others are derived from the original, unpublished data source, if not stated otherwise.

4 Women's participation in rice farming has increased rapidly in the 1970s, due mainly to a severe shortage of male labor resulting from heavy rural-to-urban migration among the young.

5 Reliable reporting of the date of birth and the month of marriage according to the lunar calendar can easily be secured in Korea.

# CHAPTER 4

# MARRIAGE, THE FAMILY, AND FERTILITY

Demographic change in Korea cannot be fully understood unless it is placed in the context of marital institutions and the family system. The present chapter first examines the fertility implications of changing patterns of marital structure in Korea. The discussion then proceeds to the social norms regulating Korean marital behavior, and finally to the process of family building and organization.

## PROPORTIONS CURRENTLY MARRIED

Marriage influences the reproductive behavior of individuals and determines a society's fertility level in many ways. It determines what proportion of women ultimately engage in reproduction, when reproduction starts, and how long on average a woman is exposed to childbearing. Universality of marriage, age at marriage, widowhood, divorce practices, and remarriage patterns are the major direct determinants of the marital structure of a society; however, all of these converge into the proportion of currently married individuals.

The proportion of currently married women is significant in understanding the level and structure of fertility in Korea since most births occur within wedlock. In traditional Korea, illegitimate children[1] were rare due to the custom of extremely early marriage and social approval of concubinage (D.-H. Kim, 1980:607-608). In addition, profound social and legal sanctions are known to have been exercised against illegitimate children. Recently, fertility surveys have documented an increasing proportion of premarital pregnancies, but most of these were reported as ending in live births within marriage.

According to S.B. Lee et al. (1978a), premarital pregnancy accounted for 26 percent of the total first pregnancies for 1974-76, while the premarital birth rate among first births was 6.2 percent; the corresponding figures for 1960-61 are 10.1 percent and 2.1 percent, respectively. If the premarital birth rate is calculated as a proportion of total births, it drops to about 2 percent during the years 1974-76. It should be noted that these rates do not account for births to unwed mothers, though this number is thought to be negligible. One more important observation is that the date of marriage reported in the survey frequently disagrees with the actual time at which the couple entered into a stable union: sometimes the wedding ceremony is performed after the marital union has begun. It has also been widely observed recently in Korea that many premarital pregnancies take place after the engagement. In other cases, marriage is forced because of premarital pregnancy to secure the legitimacy of the birth; if this is not successful, an abortion tends to result. Based on these observations, it may be concluded that illegitimate or premarital births are of very limited demographic significance, and that even in contemporary Korea, marriage primarily conditions reproductive patterns and behavior.

Table 15 shows that the proportion of currently married women of reproductive age has declined substantially since 1960. As would be expected, the changing pattern differs greatly according to age: the proportion decreased in the age groups below 30 and increased at ages 30 and above. The proportional decrease at younger ages is mostly explained by the rising age at marriage, and the increase at older ages by the decreasing risk of mortality. Given the relatively high marital fertility in the younger age groups and the rapidly declining marital fertility in older groups due mainly to wider use of effective fertility control methods, this changing proportion of currently married women has far greater meaning for community fertility levels at younger ages than at later ages.

## NUPTIALITY AND FERTILITY[2]

As discussed in Chapter 2, a sharp downturn in fertility levels took place in the early 1960s. From 1925 to 1960, there was little variation in the TFR except during World

TABLE 15 Marital Status Distribution of Women by Age Group, 1935-75: Korea

| Age | 1935 | 1955 | 1960 | 1966 | 1970 | 1975 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Proportions Single | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | 37.4 | 85.2 | 92.8 | 96.1 | 97.1 | 97.4 |
| 20-24 | 3.2 | 20.8 | 33.6 | 51.6 | 57.2 | 62.5 |
| 25-29 | 0.4 | 3.0 | 2.9 | 7.7 | 9.7 | 11.8 |
| 30-34 | 0.2 | 0.7 | 0.4 | 1.0 | 1.4 | 2.1 |
| 35-39 | 0.1 | 0.3 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 0.7 | 0.7 |
| 40-44 | 0.1 | 0.3 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.3 |
| 45-49 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.2 |
| 15-49 | 8.1 | 23.2 | 25.7 | 29.3 | 31.5 | 36.0 |
| Proportions Currently Married | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | 61.6 | 14.3 | 7.0 | 3.8 | 2.8 | 2.6 |
| 20-24 | 94.7 | 75.1 | 65.0 | 47.7 | 42.3 | 37.2 |
| 25-29 | 96.6 | 89.7 | 93.3 | 89.8 | 88.4 | 86.8 |
| 30-34 | 95.1 | 89.8 | 91.9 | 93.9 | 94.6 | 94.4 |
| 35-39 | 91.9 | 87.0 | 88.4 | 89.2 | 92.0 | 93.2 |
| 40-44 | 86.3 | 81.4 | 82.4 | 82.7 | 84.8 | 88.2 |
| 45-49 | 78.6 | 73.6 | 76.3 | 75.2 | 76.8 | 79.1 |
| 15-49 | 85.6 | 67.8 | 67.4 | 64.2 | 62.9 | 59.5 |
| Proportions Currently Divorced | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | 0.7 | 0.3 | 0.1 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 |
| 20-24 | 1.0 | 2.1 | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.3 | 0.1 |
| 25-29 | 0.8 | 2.5 | 1.6 | 1.3 | 1.1 | 0.7 |
| 30-34 | 0.7 | 2.2 | 1.7 | 1.6 | 1.6 | 1.4 |
| 35-39 | 0.6 | 1.8 | 1.4 | 1.6 | 1.8 | 1.5 |
| 40-44 | 0.6 | 1.6 | 1.1 | 1.2 | 1.7 | 1.4 |
| 45-49 | 0.6 | 1.4 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 1.2 | 1.1 |
| 15-49 | 0.7 | 1.6 | 1.0 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 0.7 |
| Proportions Currently Widowed | | | | | | |
| 15-19 | 0.3 | 0.3 | 0.1 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 |
| 20-24 | 1.0 | 2.1 | 0.5 | 0.3 | 0.2 | 0.1 |
| 25-29 | 2.2 | 4.8 | 2.1 | 1.2 | 0.9 | 0.7 |
| 30-34 | 4.1 | 7.4 | 6.0 | 3.5 | 2.4 | 2.1 |
| 35-39 | 7.3 | 10.9 | 10.1 | 8.9 | 5.9 | 4.6 |
| 40-44 | 13.0 | 16.8 | 16.5 | 16.0 | 13.4 | 10.1 |
| 45-49 | 20.7 | 24.8 | 22.8 | 23.9 | 21.8 | 19.6 |
| 15-49 | 5.5 | 7.3 | 5.8 | 5.6 | 4.6 | 3.8 |

Note: Data for 1935 are for all Korea; data for subsequent years are for South Korea only.

Sources: Kwon (1977, Appendix Table C); Korean Institute for Family Planning (1978, Section F).

War II and the Korean War, when fertility was somewhat reduced. Since fertility is a function of both the proportion married and marital fertility, the following discussion examines the relationship between these two components of overall fertility during the last few decades.

Coale (1965) has developed three indices that succinctly express the relationship between overall fertility and its components: $I_f$, an index of overall fertility; $I_g$, an index of marital fertility; and $I_m$, an index of the proportion currently married. These indices are defined such that when the number of illegitimate births is negligible (as in Korea), $I_f = (I_m)(I_g)$. Each index is confined to the range from zero (no childbearing, or no one married) to one (maximal fertility rates, or all women aged 15-50 currently married).

Table 16 presents values of the three indices for various dates from 1925-75 and for the urban and rural populations. The absence of a large difference between overall fertility in 1930 and 1960 is the consequence of opposing trends in the proportion married among women of childbearing ages, on the one hand, and marital fertility, on the other: the proportion married ($I_m$) showed an uninterrupted decline after 1930; marital fertility ($I_g$) was substantially higher in 1960 than in 1930. The constant trend in overall fertility until 1960 was therefore the result of counterbalancing opposite trends in $I_m$ and $I_g$.

The trends in overall fertility and its two constituent components are shown graphically in Figure 7. Table 16 and Figure 7 demonstrate that $I_g$ increased by almost 25 percent from 1930 to 1960, but fell by 23 percent over the entire period from 1930 to 1975; $I_m$, on the other hand, fell by 33 percent during the same 45-year period. Therefore, the decrease in proportions married contributed substantially more to the decline in overall fertility than did the decrease in marital fertility. The decline in $I_m$ from 1930 to 1975 accounts for 60 percent of the decline in $I_f$. After 1960, however, $I_g$ fell by 39 percent and $I_m$ by 16 percent; hence 74 percent of the decline in $I_f$ is attributable to the decline in marital fertility.[3]

Both the proportion married and marital fertility were consistently lower in urban than in rural areas. The extent of the decline in $I_m$ was about the same in both areas. Urban $I_g$ increased slightly more from 1930 to

TABLE 16 Indices of Overall Fertilty ($I_f$), Marital Fertility ($I_g$), and Proportion Married ($I_m$), by Urban and Rural Area, 1925-75: Korea

| | Total | | | Urban | | | Rural | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Year | $I_m$ | $I_f$ | $I_g$ | $I_m$ | $I_f$ | $I_g$ | $I_m$ | $I_f$ | $I_g$ |
| 1925[a] | .879 | .488 | .556 | .789 | .390 | .496 | .883 | .501 | .568 |
| 1930[a] | .893 | .484 | .538 | .744 | .387 | .500 | .900 | .499 | .554 |
| 1935[a] | .883 | .488 | .540 | .754 | .381 | .505 | .893 | .506 | .567 |
| 1940[a] | .856 | .491 | .544 | -- | -- | -- | -- | -- | -- |
| 1955[b] | .715 | .427 | .598 | .650 | .371 | .571 | .738 | .448 | .606 |
| 1960 | .704 | .472 | .670 | .626 | .362 | .578 | .740 | .521 | .705 |
| 1966 | .658 | .369 | .561 | .576 | .258 | .448 | .710 | .440 | .620 |
| 1970 | .632 | .339 | .536 | .576 | .286 | .496 | .686 | .390 | .569 |
| 1975[c] | .594 | .245 | .412 | .555 | .215 | .387 | .645 | .284 | .440 |

[a]Figures for 1925-55 encompass all Korea; figures for subsequent years are for South Korea only. Trial calculations for that period show negligible differences in the indexes for the whole country and for the area currently within the Republic of Korea.

[b]Based on average number of births, 1954-56.

[c]Births for 1975 assume a correction factor for the population aged 0-1 in the 1975 census equal to the average correction factor for the 0-1 age group in the 1966 and 1970 censuses.

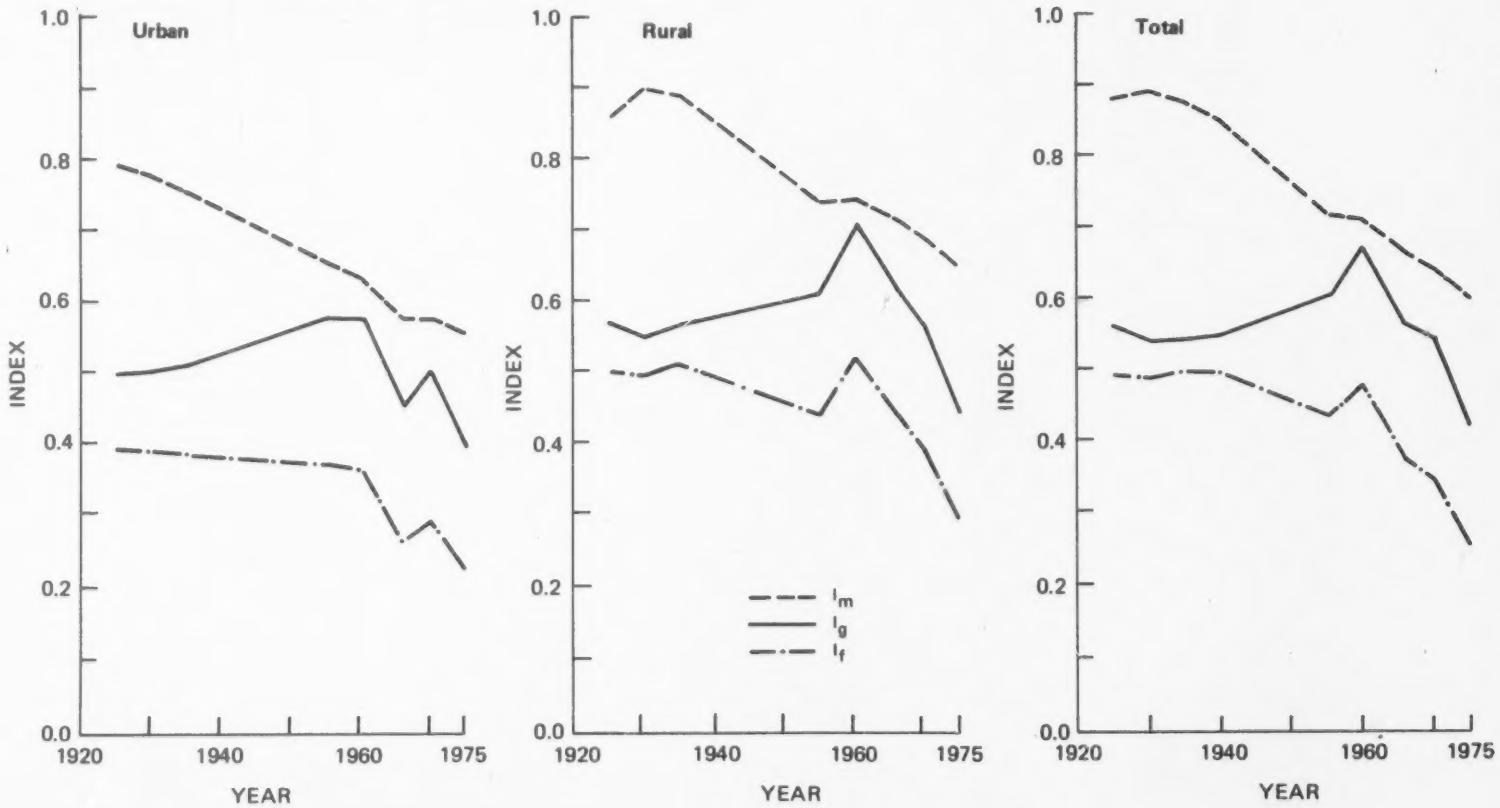
Source: Coale et al. (1979).

1955 than rural $I_g$, but between 1955 and 1960, urban $I_g$ remained almost constant, while rural $I_g$ increased by 16 percent. From 1960 to 1975, the proportionate decline in rural $I_g$ was greater than that in urban $I_g$; that is, the fertility decline among the rural population was catching up with that among the urban population. The proportionate reductions in $I_f$, $I_m$, and $I_g$ were greater for the total population than for either the rural or the urban population; this is partly due to heavy rural-urban migration in the 1960s and 1970s and resulting changes in the proportion of the population living in urban and rural areas.

## PROPORTIONS DIVORCED AND WIDOWED

According to a series of censuses up to 1975, the proportion of currently divorced women in Korea has consistently been very low (less than 2 percent) and manifests no sign of significant change in any age group. However, this cannot be interpreted as indicating little recent change in divorce practices, since the proportion currently divorced is a combined effect of the

FIGURE 7 Indices of Overall Fertility ($I_f$), Marital Fertility ($I_g$), and Proportion Married ($I_m$), by Urban and Rural Area, 1925-75



proportion ever divorced and the rate of remarriage among the divorced.

In Korea, at least during the last two decades, the idea has prevailed that the number of divorces is increasing year by year. However, no supporting evidence is available. On the contrary, a resurvey of a middle-sized town discloses that the proportion of ever-divorced women among the ever married declined slightly during the period between 1965 and 1974: the proportion for ages 20-44 is reported as 3.1 percent in 1965 and 2.6 percent in 1974 (H.-Y. Lee, 1965:2-3; PDSC, 1975:1-2). Though not convincing, this suggests that the traditional stability of the Korean family still remains almost intact. However, it is interesting to note, as discussed later in this chapter, that the pattern of divorce has undergone a significant change since about 1960.

Little information is available for the nation as a whole on the timing and age pattern of marriage dissolution due to divorce. The 1974 KNFS is probably the only source of such data.[4] According to these data, the proportion of women who ended their first marriage by divorce is highest in the age group 40-44 (about 5 percent), and divorce occurs most frequently in a relatively early stage of reproduction, at an average age of 25-27 in the case of women (see Tables 17 and 18).

In contrast to divorce trends, both the proportion of widows and the probability of being widowed have been reduced greatly since 1955 in response to the rapidly declining risk of mortality regardless of age. As a result, the stability of marriage has strengthened substantially: the 1974 KNFS reveals that 95 percent of the ever-married women in the age group 30-34 are in their first marriage; the corresponding figure is 90 percent for the entire reproductive span, age 15-49, and about 80 percent for women age 40-44.

## UNIVERSALITY OF MARRIAGE

As noted earlier, in traditional Korea, every man or woman was supposed to marry and set up a family. This universality of marriage was supported by the early age at marriage, and by the practice of completely arranged marriage; the strongest support, however, came from social custom and the family norm. Both legally and conventionally, there was a marked discrimination between

TABLE 17 Proportions of Ever-Married Women by Status of First Marriage, 1974: Republic of Korea

| | | | Dissolved by | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Age | Total | Continuing | Divorce | Widowhood | Separation |
| 15-19 | 100.0 | 100.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 |
| 20-24 | 100.0 | 99.1 | 0.5 | 0.2 | 0.2 |
| 25-29 | 100.0 | 98.1 | 0.9 | 0.5 | 0.5 |
| 30-34 | 100.0 | 94.7 | 3.0 | 1.7 | 0.6 |
| 35-39 | 100.0 | 89.5 | 4.3 | 5.5 | 0.7 |
| 40-44 | 100.0 | 80.7 | 5.0 | 13.5 | 0.8 |
| 45-49 | 100.0 | 70.5 | 4.9 | 22.2 | 2.4 |
| 15-49 | 100.0 | 89.7 | 3.1 | 6.4 | 0.8 |

Source: 1974 KNFS data tape.

married and single persons: the status of "adult" was often assigned to married persons only, regardless of their age; the style of hair was different according to marital status; in ordinary conversation, "elderly single men" were subject to severe ridicule; single girls beyond marriageable age were frequently treated as "helpless"; and the status of women was only determined by and within marriage (H.-Y. Lee, 1978:758-759). Such constraints, though weakened, still persist. Even today, permanent celibacy is rarely considered acceptable for ordinary people; single persons past marriageable age are derided by family members, friends, and colleagues.

The marital composition derived from a series of censuses reflects the intensity of this pressure to marry. In 1935, the proportion of single women was reported as 0.1 percent at ages 35-39. It has increased only slightly since then, reaching 0.2 percent at ages 45-49 in 1975 (see Table 15). The proportion of single (never married) women is expected to increase somewhat even in late reproductive ages in the years ahead because of a marriage squeeze resulting from the Korean War during 1950-53;[5] however, the ideas behind the universal marriage system are very unlikely to attenuate. In addition to this social atmosphere, institutional supports for the unmarried are not likely to evolve in the near future, given the apparent direction of the newly emerging social welfare development policy. The government has consistently emphasized the role of family and community in helping the needy, including the

TABLE 18 Mean Age of Women at Dissolution of First Marriage by Reason, 1974: Republic of Korea

| Age | Divorced | Widowed |
|---|---|---|
| 15-19 | -- | -- |
| 20-24 | -- | -- |
| 25-29 | 25.3* | -- |
| 30-34 | 25.1 | 27.4* |
| 35-39 | 26.7 | 30.2 |
| 40-44 | 25.4 | 31.1 |
| 45-49 | 26.9 | 32.7 |
| 15-49 | 26.0 | 32.5 |

--: Fewer than 10 cases.
*: Between 10 and 19 cases.

Source: Calculated from the 1974 KNFS data tape.

elderly, and government subsidies are directed mostly to the family rather than to individuals. Thus, marriage still provides lifetime security for Koreans, particularly for women whose opportunity for economic activity is greatly limited by social custom.

Also supporting the universality of marriage is the widespread concept of "adequate timing of marriage" (hon-ki), a social norm applied particularly to girls. Although this concept has changed considerably since the 1920s, it has consistently played an important role in regulating the marriage behavior of Koreans. The range of ideal timing is narrowly defined, and is much narrower for girls than for boys. One begins to feel the pressure for marriage upon reaching this ideal age, although this pressure may have eased slightly during recent years as a result of the continuous postponement of the age at marriage.

## TIMING OF MARRIAGE

Even though the traditional universal marriage system persists, the timing of marriage has changed substantially in Korea since the mid-1920s. According to a census estimate, the singulate mean age at first marriage was 21.1 for men and 16.6 for women in 1925, as is seen from Table 19. It rose to 27.4 and 23.7 for men and women respectively in 1975. The postponement of marriage has been an ongoing process during the last half century.

The prevalence of early marriage in traditional Korea is well documented. According to Kyung-kug tae-jun, a fifteenth-century Korean law book, the lower limit of the age at marriage was set at 15 for men and 14 for women; in exceptional cases, marriage could be allowed at age 12. The limit was raised to 20 for men and 16 for women in 1895. Interestingly enough, both laws state explicitly that the prevailing early marriage is a bad custom, and numerous historical documents condemn the early marriage custom as frequently impairing the health of the couple (D.-H. Kim, 1980:446-447; K.-K. Lee, 1977:229-231). In fertility terms, infecundity appears to have been caused often at early ages by early marriage, resulting in turn in a relatively low level of marital fertility in traditional Korea.

The initial rise in age at marriage in the mid-1920s coincided with the growing migration of Koreans to Japan and Manchuria, which was in turn a direct response to the rapidly deteriorating agricultural economy resulting from Japan's colonial policy of exploiting Korean agriculture to the maximum (Kwon, 1977:163-166). Single, male laborers were dominant in migration overseas during the colonial period (1910-45). The contribution of such a

TABLE 19 Singulate Mean Age at First Marriage by Sex, 1925-75: Korea

| Sex | 1925 | 1935 | 1940 | 1955 | 1960 | 1966 | 1970 | 1975 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Male | 21.1 | 21.4 | 21.8 | 24.7 | 25.4 | 26.6 | 27.2 | 27.4 |
| Female | 16.6 | 17.1 | 17.8 | 20.5 | 21.5 | 22.9 | 23.3 | 23.7 |

Notes: Calculation based on census data using Hajnal's method. Data for 1925-40 are for all Korea; data for subsequent years are for South Korea only.

Sources: Kwon et al. (1975); Lee and Han (1978).

population movement to marriage postponement for both men and women can easily be postulated.

The most drastic change in the timing of marriage is observed between 1940 and 1955, as is clear from Table 19. This period was marked by a large volume of migration in and out of Korea, and by social disturbance resulting from a series of political upheavals including World War II, the liberation of Korea from Japanese colonialism, the partitioning of Korea into two separate political entities, and the Korean War. These two factors, migration and social unrest, are regarded as largely responsible for the erosion in the custom of early marriage.

During the first decade of the post-liberation era, 1945-55, Korea experienced an unprecedentedly large influx of population into its territory. The number of persons who entered South Korea during 1945-49, consisting mostly of repatriates from overseas and refugees from North Korea, totaled 2.5 million, accounting for 69 percent of the total population growth during the period, or 12 percent of the total population at the 1949 census. During the Korean War years, 1950-53, about 650,000 North Koreans are estimated to have taken refuge in the South (Kwon, 1977). Most of the migrants at that time resettled where they did not have any solid base for living, largely in urban areas. Such circumstances would be incompatible with the practice of early marriage.

Traditional early marriage is only possible when a minimum amount of economic support from the family of orientation is secured. Otherwise marriage is likely to be postponed until the boy is old enough to participate fully in the labor force. During the late colonial years and the first decade of the post-liberation era, the economy deteriorated severely, and a majority of the population suffered from extreme poverty; in a word, economic conditions did not favor early marriage. Undoubtedly the sudden, unexpected start of the Korean War also caused a significant delay in marriage for persons of marriageable age at that time.

The rise in age at marriage has continued since the war, with the mean age at marriage reaching one of the world's highest levels in the 1970s. However, the pace of increase has slowed recently, and no further substantial postponement in the timing of marriage is expected. The most crucial determinants of change in age at marriage during the post-Korean War period are thought to be, as in the past, increasing economic constraints on

individuals, massive population movements from villages to cities, and the resultant rapid urbanization.

Rapid educational growth and expansion and compulsory military conscription of males for three years are also known to have played an important role in the postponement of marriage. Increased educational opportunities for females (Chang, 1980:88) have had both direct and indirect implications for age at marriage. In Korea, high school education usually ends at age 18 and college education at age 22. Marriage is rarely thought proper for students, even in college. As such, the growing proportion of women in higher education causes some postponement of marriage. Perhaps more important, however, is the indirect impact of education. As the proportion of women in tertiary education increased, marriage at a relatively late age became accepted as proper, and the ideal age at marriage moved up to 22 to 25, not only for college graduates, but for other women as well. High educational attainment is also observed to have motivated women to work for a few years before marriage.

The universal military conscription of men affects the age at marriage for both men and women because of the prevailing idea that the ideal age difference between husband and wife is three to five years. The census shows that the difference between men and women in singulate mean age at first marriage has been around four years since 1925. With the process of urbanization and modernization since the early 1960s, the patterns and conditions of mate selection have also undergone a change. Unlike in the past, a secure job or economic self-reliance has become the necessary condition for a man to get married in urban areas, and this is achieved in most cases some time after discharge from the military service.

Until recently, the movement of young, single individuals was the dominant pattern of rural-to-urban migration in Korea, and migration was heavy during the two decades 1960-80. Since migrants usually have problems adjusting to a new occupation, as well as to the urban environment and life style--though these are not as acute as in other countries (Green, 1977:268-300)--the massive migration since 1960 should have contributed greatly to the rising age at marriage for men and consequently for women.

The impact of age at marriage upon the level of fertility can be examined on two levels: the timing of marriage itself is the primary determinant of an individual's total reproductive period, and the change in age at

marriage may influence the general level of fecundity. In Korea, these two levels appear to have opposite fertility implications. The continuously rising age at marriage has contributed significantly to reducing the general fertility level by shortening the average reproductive span, as mentioned above. On the other hand, many studies have found that marital fertility in crucial reproductive ages increases with a rise in age at marriage. Based on the 1974 KNFS data, Moon (1980) observed that late marriage is associated with earlier births or shorter birth intervals in parities 1 to 3. Donaldson and Nichols's analysis (1978), based on a series of national fertility and family planning surveys of Korea, also shows that the tempo of family building has recently been much faster when the average age at marriage has been higher.

As noted above, historical documents suggest that traditional early marriage, frequently occurring at age 13 to 14, often meant that the bride was too young to be fecund. Therefore, the first child was not born for a few years in many cases. Evidently, the higher marital fertility of women in late marriage is also partly explained by the association between age at marriage and premarital pregnancy rates (S.B. Lee et al., 1978a). Even after allowing for such factors, the relationship between age at marriage and marital fertility is sustained to a significant degree. However, this impact on the level of births is felt far less than is the length of exposure to reproductive behavior (or marriage duration). In short, the postponement of marriage has persistently contributed to a net lowering of the societal fertility level. The 1974 KNFS shows a marked difference in the average number of children ever born between different marriage groups of the same birth cohort through all stages of reproduction. Also, multivariate analyses of fertility in Korea invariably disclose that age at marriage is a strong predictor of fertility (M.-I. Kim et al., 1974a; Shin et al., 1981). The explanatory power is greater at younger ages and largely vanishes in late reproductive ages (Kwon, 1982); this effect can be partly attributed to the faster tempo of family building among the later-married women, as discussed above.

Another important aspect of age at marriage, particularly in relation to fertility behavior, is its socioeconomic differentials. Late marriage is closely associated with high education, urban residence,

nonfarm/nonmanual occupations, and a modern value orientation (M.-I. Kim et al., 1974b; Y.-H. Lee, 1977). This pattern is almost identical to that of fertility, suggesting that the former is an important determinant of the latter, particularly in the earlier reproductive span, which is less affected by the deliberate attempt of individuals to control family size (M.-I. Kim, et al., 1974b; Shin et al., 1981).

## DIVORCE NORMS AND PRACTICES

Traditional divorce norms manifest a marked distinction between men and women in Korea. Women were not allowed by law and social custom to divorce (or desert) their husbands. However, men could divorce their wives by law if one of the following seven prescribed conditions were met: showing a lack of filial piety to parents-in-law, failing to produce a son, being unfaithful, being jealous, having a bad disease, being talkative, or having a thieving habit. At the same time, Yi dynasty law postulated three exceptional conditions: a woman should not be divorced or deserted if she had completed two years of mourning for the parents-in-law, if she had married in poverty and achieved prosperity, or if she had no place to go.

However, it is generally known that conditions for divorce were associated with much stronger normative social sanctions than the conditions for not being divorced. In practice, women, especially if middle- and lower-class, could be deserted at any time if the husband or his parents felt it necessary. Nevertheless, divorce or desertion was strongly suppressed by familism, kinship, and community organizations. The major mechanisms for this were emphasis on family solidarity, concern with the "face" (or "dignity") of the family, and care for the children's future reputation, particularly in arranging their marriages. Consequently, despite frequent and sometimes very intense conflicts between a wife and her husband or between a wife and her mother-in-law, these were usually taken for granted and treated as within-family affairs, and the dissolution of marriage was therefore generally avoided. The acceptance of concubinage by society is also seen as an important institutional norm preventing marriage dissolution by divorce or desertion. It may be more proper to consider traditional Korean norms on desertion of the wife not as a force facili-

tating marital instability, but as a social mechanism for maintaining family peace. Numerous historical Yi dynasty documents confirm the conjecture that the practice of divorce was very restricted, and that the strong stability of the family was therefore sustained throughout the society (D.-H. Kim, 1980; K.-K. Lee, 1977).

Some conceptual clarification is needed for an analysis of divorce trends. In the Yi dynasty, the legal concept of divorce existed; however, legal divorce was very rare and practiced only in the upper yangban (ruling) class. Among commoners, divorce took the form of desertion, or forced ejection of a wife from the husband's residence. Unlike the vital registration system, censuses and surveys in Korea have collected information on this customary form of divorce. In other words, trends in legal divorce are revealed by vital registration, while those in customary divorce (though also including legal divorce) are revealed by the census and fertility surveys. Data from vital registration show a growing rate of legal divorce since 1960, though still a low level (Korea, NBOS, 1980a); on the other hand, various survey data reveal no increasing trend in customary divorce. This suggests that the custom of deserting a wife and social support for this custom have waned significantly with the process of modernization since 1960.

## REMARRIAGE OF DIVORCED AND WIDOWED PERSONS

As is the case for divorce, the traditional norms on remarriage differed for men and women. The law, which incorporated the principles of neo-Confucianism, did not allow a woman to marry more than once in any circumstances, while divorced or widowed men were socially encouraged to remarry.

Though socially discouraged, remarriage of women was not uncommon in the past. It was often arranged even by the husband's family if a widow was very young and had no children at all. Various surveys around 1960 support this observation: a large majority of respondents (more than 90 percent) approved of the remarriage of women if there were no child, while the opposite was true if there were children (W.K. Koh et al., 1963:149-155; H.-J. Lee, 1959:59). Similar observations could be expected for more recent times. Concerning the prevalence of remarriage and its changing patterns over time, however, information is very limited. The 1974 KNFS, which may provide the

only useful information for the nation as a whole, shows the rate of remarriage for women aged 15-49 among women ever widowed or divorced to be 40 percent. However, as is seen from Table 20, the prevalence of remarriage differs greatly between women widowed and those divorced. The rate for the former is less than 30 percent, while the rate for the latter is nearly 75 percent in the entire reproductive age span. No equivalent national data on remarriage trends over time are available; however, two consecutive surveys in the same middle-sized town disclosed no increase in the rate of remarriage between 1965 and 1974 (H.-J. Lee, 1965; PDSC, 1975). The rate of remarriage for divorced women increases greatly with an increase in age, whereas for widowed women, there is a slightly declining tendency in the rate of remarriage at age 35 and above. This pattern simply reflects traditional remarriage norms. The customary law in traditional Korea prescribes that if a woman leaves the husband's family either for divorce or for remarriage, she has to give up every right in the family, including the claim for children. Accordingly, when a woman divorces or remarries, all ties, formal or informal, between the mother and children in the previous marriage are ordinarily severed. If there is no one in the family of the previous husband to take care of the children,

TABLE 20 Rate of Remarriage (in percent) by Reason, for Women Whose First Marriage was Dissolved, 1974: Republic of Korea

| Age | Divorced | Widowed | Separated | Total |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15-19 | -- | -- | -- | -- |
| 20-24 | -- | -- | -- | -- |
| 25-29 | 36.4* | -- | -- | 21.7 |
| 30-34 | 68.8 | 27.8* | -- | 50.0 |
| 35-39 | 70.5 | 30.4 | -- | 41.9 |
| 40-44 | 79.1 | 28.2 | -- | 40.7 |
| 45-49 | 87.9 | 27.5 | 18.8* | 36.9 |
| 15-49 | 73.5 | 27.7 | 16.3 | 40.5 |

--: Fewer than 10 cases in the denominator.
*: Between 10 and 19 cases in the denominator.

Source: 1974 KNFS data tape.

they are often adopted by the stepfather if the mother remarries; however, it is considered disgraceful for a child to change the surname due to remarriage of the mother.

Thus, divorce is discouraged when the couple has children, and is frequently related to having no offspring. Also, because divorce for women means a change of residence and the severing of ties with her children, remarriage is the only practical way to obtain social security for most divorced women. In contrast, a widowed woman is supposed to live with the previous husband's family, and if there are children, she is obliged to raise them. This fact partly explains why the rate of remarriage among widowed women drops in the later reproductive ages. In short, the existence of children has been the major consideration in the remarriage of women in Korea.

There is extensive social discrimination against remarried women in the Korean culture. As a result, remarriage generally results in a lowering of social status for women. Second husbands are almost invariably of a much lower social status and usually much older than first husbands. There is also discrimination against offspring from second or third marriages. For men, no change in social status results from remarriage. Even young single women are often willing to marry divorced men. If there are children, particularly sons, from a man's previous marriage, no children or very few are preferred in the second marriage.

It might be expected that these traditional remarriage norms, which still prevail widely, would have a fertility-lowering effect at the societal level. This effect could be assumed furthermore to have increased with the growing availability of fertility regulation since the early 1960s. However, the detailed implications of these norms for fertility are not simple to determine. The following is a list of coarsely postulated relationships between traditional remarriage patterns and fertility:

> Norms have discouraged the remarriage of divorcees and widows, and thus contributed to some reduction in the cohort of women exposed to reproduction.
>
> Social discrimination toward remarried women and their children constitutes a force motivating family-size limitation in subsequent marriages.

The strong discouragement of remarriage for women with children curtails reproductive behavior among women with high fertility for some time after the first marriage is dissolved.

## THE FAMILY AND FERTILITY

In Korea, human reproduction can only be properly understood in the context of family building. Accordingly, studies of fertility have rarely failed to mention the importance of the family in accounting for the fertility behavior of Koreans. However, little research has been carried out primarily from such a perspective. Although some studies examine the impact upon fertility levels of a few selected family-structure variables, these are so crudely organized, or so fragmentary, that no general conclusions can be drawn. Furthermore, no single ad hoc effort has been made in Korea to identify the linkage between the family and fertility.

Most of these analyses are confined to the relationship between cumulative fertility and the current family composition of individual women, fertility differences according to the order of a husband among his brothers, and the association between the actual family size of the couple's parents and the couple's own family size (e.g., Chung et al., 1972; H.-Y. Lee, 1971; Kwon, 1982). The underlying hypotheses are self-evident: (a) the ideal of a nuclear family promotes low fertility attitudes; (b) because of pressure from relatives to continue the family line, the only son and the first son would tend to have higher fertility; and (c) the fertility behavior of individuals is socialized in the family of orientation. It is immediately apparent that the testing of these hypotheses requires very refined and sophisticated analyses, and that fertility differentials by the couple's family background would have only marginal significance for the overall relationship between fertility and the family. Most studies have revealed little association between the family background of individuals and the level of fertility. This may be interpreted as indicating that the family has little to do with the fertility behavior of Koreans; alternatively, it might be regarded as pointing to the inadequacy of the research methods and assumptions. To understand the relationship between fertility and the family, a holistic approach seems to be essential. The overall family-

building process, rather than cumulative fertility at a certain point in time, must become the focal point of attention. Moreover, instead of treating family-related factors as independent of fertility behavior, the two should be viewed as interconnected.

Bearing this in mind, the discussion below will try to hypothesize how Korean family structure was associated with fertility behavior in the past, and how this association has changed during the demographic transition and modernization. Because of the extreme paucity of empirical studies from such a perspective, this discussion will rely largely on speculation and will therefore often be hypothetical.

## THE FAMILY SYSTEM

The family constitutes the most basic structure within Korean society. In traditional settings, the family was one of the major determinants of the social status of individuals, governed human interactions and relationships, provided a rationale for individual behavior, and thus shaped the basic value orientation of Koreans, which is termed "familism."

During the later half of the Yi dynasty, or the eighteenth through nineteenth centuries, the structure and ideals of the Korean family were organized strictly on the basis of male dominance; in short, the traditional Korean family was patriarchal, patrilineal, and patrilocal. This system naturally gave rise to male supremacy, not only in family life, but also in every aspect of social life, as well as to a preference for sons over daughters. Sex discrimination was so strong and pervasive that women were not allowed to mix with men on any occasion, private or public, and a wife was obliged to obey only the husband without any argument. All family property belonged absolutely to men. As noted above, divorce and remarriage norms were completely different for men and women. The family had a hierarchical rather than egalitarian structure: conjugal ties were neglected, and parent-child relationships occupied the pivotal position in the family and kinship network (J.-S. Choi, 1966:364-419); even among sons, there was discrimination according to birth order, as discussed below.

The ideal traditional Korean family was large and multi-generational in composition. However, such an extended family rarely dominated actual family life,

mostly because of poor economic conditions and high mortality (Lee and Kwon, 1968). Moreover, the principles of family building in traditional Korea did not strongly encourage the formation of, and living in, extended families. The extended family in Korea was organized as a "stem family", which was composed of parents and one of the sons' families of procreation, usually the first son's. Other sons were supposed to live with their parents for a couple of years after marriage, and then leave to build a separate household; if a son other than the first married after the death of the parents, particularly the father, he was compelled by custom to start a separate family from the beginning. In other words, the idea of a fraternal joint family was alien to Korean society. As a result, the dominant type of family actually implemented in traditional Korea was the nuclear family (Lee and Kwon, 1968).

One interesting question is whether the large family ideal is an inherent and indispensable component of the Korean family system. It is often argued that son preference, which constitutes the crucial part of the system, is responsible for the traditionally large family ideal, thus suggesting an essential connection between the family system and family-size values. However, various surveys on fertility and family planning in Korea disclose no congruence between shifts in son preference and desired family size. During the last two decades, a continuous rapid decline in desired family size has taken place, while son preference has waned little (Kwon and Lee, 1976; Kwon, 1976). This observation can be partly interpreted as indicating that the large family ideal is not primarily an outcome of the traditional family system; rather, that ideal seems to have been formed as a response to conditions of high mortality at the time, a necessity for the survival of both the family lineage and the society itself. If so, a greatly reduced mortality risk would result in a change in family size values without much normative constraint.

On the other hand, by examining the functions of children in the family, particularly those of sons, it may be seen that a large family is not a necessity, even in the traditional setting. The major obligations of children in the Korean family are the succession of the family name, ancestor worship, support of parents in old age, and the provision of labor. Among these, the first three are regarded as the responsibility of the first son. In short, one son is enough to fulfill most of the

functions of sons, and many are not required. In fact, mainly because of extremely poor economic conditions, many children were often thought to be a source of trouble, not pleasure. Again, compensating for such obligations, the eldest son was endowed with most of the family rights: he became head of the family in the father's absence and inherited the largest share of the family property, including residential quarters. In view of such meanings of children in the family, the traditional Korean family system cannot necessarily be thought to support a large family ideal and thus high fertility.

In traditional Korea, the meaning of the first son was almost absolute, and his status in the family was not comparable with that of any of his brothers and sisters. Accordingly, a preference scale among children can be hypothesized: the first son, other sons, and daughters. Most studies on gender preference and its implications for fertility in Korea have been based on the assumption that son preference would lead to higher fertility than is desired by the average family. However, as mentioned above, since strong son preference has persisted, despite the rapid tempo of fertility decline and the drastic decline in desired family size, this assumption is not supported. Kwon's research (1976) also demonstrates that son preference may not be a barrier to the decline of desired family size and thus to the reduction of actual fertility, and may well be compatible with a low-fertility ideal. Son preference undoubtedly influences the fertility behavior of individuals, but the direction of that influence is not unitary: for women who reach their desired family size without a son, it has a high-fertility implication; those who have enough sons but have not arrived at their desired family size may stop bearing children before reaching that desired number, so that son preference may have a low-fertility implication because of the relative unimportance of daughters. On an aggregate level, the counter forces may partially balance off. Consequently, there may be little impact of son preference on the level of fertility while the TFR is above a level of about three children; however, below this level it is likely that son preference will exert some influence, in part because the proportion of "no-son" outcomes increases as the average number of live births decreases, e.g., among couples with two live births, about one fourth will have two daughters. (For a fuller discussion of gender preference, see Chapter 5.)

Thus, the rapid decline in desired family size in the face of only a slight attenuation of son preference may well be explained by the strong first-son preference mentioned above.[6] This preference may be interpreted as indicating the limit of the decline in desired family size, that is, "at least one son." Because of the diminished importance of the second or third son, the diffusion of the one-or-two son ideal has encountered little resistance; in turn, given the preference of sons to daughters, there has apparently been a concomitant reduction in the desired number of daughters. Thus the drastic decline in family-size values in Korea during the last two decades (from 5 to 2.5 children on average) may be related, to a considerable extent, to the preference for first sons, as well as son preference in general. If this argument is accepted, it cannot be assumed that the traditional family system in Korea supports high fertility in all circumstances. Rather, that system can be postulated more properly as one factor--perhaps an important one--fostering a low-fertility attitude under conditions of low mortality, and inducing rapid fertility reductions when mortality declines. (These hypotheses about suggested fertility-trend relationships involving the strength and level of son preference deserve more research attention.)

## FAMILISM

One of the most distinctive Korean value orientations having profound implications for fertility is so-called "familism," often used in contrast to the "individualism" prevailing in the Western world (H.-Y. Lee, 1978: 778-779).[7] Familism in traditional Korea defines the meaning of individual behavior primarily within the broad context of the family.[8] For example, one's success in the world gives one's family and relatives pride and, in a sense, social respect. Accordingly, the entire family not infrequently sacrifices itself to promote the success or education of a son. In return, he incurs substantial obligations not only to his immediate family members but to his relatives, at least emotionally. Therefore, family involvement in important events in the life course such as marriage, childbearing, and family formation becomes inevitable.

During the last few decades, particularly since the early 1960s, profound changes have taken place in every

part of Korean society; these are often characterized as "modernization" or "Westernization." Mounting concern has been expressed over the apparent rise of individualism in connection with Westernization. More recently, an attempt to vitalize some important components of traditional familism was launched with strong support from the government. It is questionable, however, to what extent individualism has penetrated into Korean society. Various social surveys have indicated that familism is still cherished by most Koreans, even in urban areas and regardless of age (Oh and Lee, 1980).

There have been some arguments that individualism, together with conjugal family ideals, is favorable to (very) low fertility in a society (Goode, 1963; Davis, 1957). It has also been observed in Korea that an individualistic value orientation is stronger among those with more modern, or less traditional, attitudes, and that modern ideals are associated with lower fertility (e.g., Chung et al., 1972:141-164). The inference is that individualism should lead to low fertility, even in Korea. The connection between the two is generally explained by the differing values attached to children, and by different value orientations in regard to individual happiness. It is nevertheless doubtful that familism, or collectivism in a sense, always supports high fertility. In fact, in Korea, familism has been found to be the major force in reducing fertility in recent times. The main rationale for fertility control lies not in increasing career or self-realization opportunities for women, but in providing children with better care or education; this strong concern about the future of children is regarded as a characteristic feature of traditional familism in Korea.

Another important aspect of familism as a factor in the societal level of fertility is its strong emphasis upon blood ties among family members. Unlike other societies, such as Japan, with similar family systems, Korea has very little adoption; adoption only takes place, according to traditional norms, when there is no (legitimate[9]) son in the family of the eldest son, which bears all the prescribed responsibilities for the ancestors. In such a case, the eldest boy from one of his brothers' families that has two or more (legitimate) boys is usually chosen. Frequently, the question of adoption is raised after the death of the first son in the main family[10] who has married but produced no son. The necessity of having a legitimate son was a severe

constraint mostly in the upper, or yangban, class (D.-H. Kim, 1980:228-291). For the majority of the population, however, illegitimate sons could inherit the family lineage if there were no legitimate son. As a result, concubinage was widely recognized as a way to secure at least one son in traditional Korea. In the traditional setting, the strong emphasis upon blood tie (or purity of blood) was a major mechanism for ensuring family stability even after the dissolution of marriage due to the death of the husband. Since concubines had, on the average, a smaller number of children than married women, this mechanism is thought to have significantly reduced the overall fertility level.

## HUSBAND-WIFE RELATIONS

In the traditional Korean family, the suppression and regulation of sex were regarded as virtuous conduct for women, and frequent union of a couple was often considered obscene. As a regulation mechanism, strict segregation between men and women was imposed. For example, husbands and wives were not to face each other in private or in public, except in bed. Unfaithfulness of a wife to her husband was very severely punished. On the other hand, men's sexual impulses were channeled: their extramarital affairs with "women in the bar" (a kind of prostitute) were often encouraged as being "manly." Segregation between husbands and wives was so extensive that their spheres of interest were completely separate; the external world belonged to the husband and the "kitchen" to the wife, and each was supposed to be disinterested in the other's world. Though it was not expected that such norms would be observed strictly, they must have governed every aspect of Korean social life. If a woman lived in an extended family, her behavior was usually continuously surveyed by other members of the family, particularly the mother-in-law, who sometimes even regulated the couple's frequency of union. According to in-depth interviews on fertility behavior conducted in a middle-sized town,[11] many women could not feel love or affection for their husband until their mother-in-law died because of such intensive interference. These traditional marriage and family norms remain largely intact and are still taken for granted by most Korean families.

KINSHIP

In Yi dynasty Korea, kinship was organized by hierarchical principles and had the function of conferring social status on its members (M.-G. Lee, 1973:4-5). Thus, kinship background was sometimes a crucial determinant in the arrangement of marriage. The importance of kinship in traditional Korea can easily be demonstrated by the fact that most farming villages were, and are still, dominated by one or two kin groups bearing the same family name (M.-G. Lee, 1973). Strong emotional solidarity among kin members is noticed increasingly in rural areas (M.-G. Lee, 1973:345-350), reinforced by the extended family ideal discussed above. The major kinship obligations of individual members include observation of worship rituals for common ancestors, economic support to kin families in the case of such important family affairs as weddings and funerals, and aid to kin members in ordinary circumstances, as well as in emergencies. In other words, kinship ideology was the basis for social interaction and the major support for strong "familism" in traditional Korea, although, as noted above, familism is not necessarily related to large family-size desires, and thus probably did not significantly affect fertility levels even in the past.

Kinship ideals have become greatly attenuated in urban areas since the beginning of modernization and urbanization in the early 1960s; thus their influence on behavior generally, and on fertility levels in particular, is probably negligible. Even in rural Korea, kinship has been found to explain few of the community differences in fertility. For instance, two rural villages having similar socioeconomic characteristics except for their kinship systems (differing in the degree of kinship dominance, the closeness of the kinship network, and the degree of kinship involvement in everyday village life) show no meaningful differences in their fertility patterns.[12] The same study reveals larger family-size desires in a fishing village having little kinship solidarity than in the two rural (farming) villages. Hong's analysis based on data from 53 villages yields the same results (S. Hong, 1976).

NOTES

1 In this chapter, the term "illegitimacy" is used to refer to births occurring outside marriage in the customary sense. Traditionally, the concept was applied in Korea to denote children born to concubines.

2 For a more detailed discussion of the relationship between nuptiality and fertility, see Coale et al. (1979).

3 This finding was corroborated in Chapter 2 using a different approach.

4 The marital status of ever-married women from the 1974 KNFS closely matches that reported in the 1975 census, indicating the high reliability of the KNFS data.

5 According to the prevailing ideal age difference between husband and wife in Korea (3 to 5 years), women in the postwar baby boom generation are matched with men born during the war years. The sex ratio for these groups is less than 80.

6 According to J.-S. Choi (1966:642-644), among three societies in Asia, China, Japan, and Korea, which share much of a common cultural heritage, Japan shows the strongest first-son preference and China the least in power relations and property distribution among brothers. However, the first son is most important in Korea in the succession of the family lineage.

7 Familism in Korea has features in common with familism in China, as outlined in Levy (1955).

8 The concept of family was shared by close relatives in traditional Korea. The Korean term "jib," which stands for family, represents such a concept (J.-S. Choi, 1966:631-638).

9 Following the usage in traditional Korea, legitimacy is used here to denote the status obtained through legal marriage. The principle of monogamy was applied to define the legitimate couple.

10 The main family, called "bon-ga" in Korean, refers to the family succeeded by the eldest son consecutively.

11 The record, unpublished, contains details of in-depth interviews of about 100 selected women, conducted as part of the 1965 Ichon survey on fertility and the family.

12 This survey, conducted by Han and others, was discussed in more detail in Chapter 3.

# CHAPTER 5

# THE DEMAND FOR CHILDREN

The motivation to control fertility in a society depends on both the demand for children and the supply of children. Over the last quarter of a century, Korea has experienced both a rapid decline in fertility and a substantial transformation in the demand for children. This chapter examines in detail the components of the demand for children in Korea and how changes in that demand have influenced the course of Korean fertility. The first section reviews changes in ideal family size over time and differentials in family-size norms among different groups. The second section explores the values and disvalues that parents attach to children and the extent to which these have changed with modernization. The final section focuses on the continuing strength of son preference as an integral part of the Korean culture; the historical background of this preference is outlined, a number of independent measures are used to examine its current levels, and the continuing debate about how it will inhibit further fertility declines is discussed.

## FAMILY-SIZE DESIRES

Since the late 1950s, the number of children Korean couples consider ideal has changed considerably. Although there are questions about the quality of the available data and about the meaning of this concept generally, there are strong indications that the ideal family size in Korea has been cut almost in half over a period of slightly more than two decades. The evidence for this rapid decline is shown in Table 21. The pattern indicated is a slight decline in ideal family size prior to 1965, a possible brief plateau in the late 1960s, and

TABLE 21 Average Number of Children Considered Ideal: Republic of Korea

| Year | Ideal Number of Children | Survey | Source |
|---|---|---|---|
| Before 1960 | Approx. 5 | Several early surveys | Kwon and Lee (1976) |
| 1958 | 4.4 | Urban survey | Chung et al. (1974) |
| 1965 | 3.9 | KAP Survey | Moon et al. (1973) |
| 1966 | 4.3 | Special Demographic Survey | Choe and Park (1969) |
| 1967 | 3.9 | KAP Survey | Moon et al. (1973) |
| 1968 | 3.9 | 1968 Fertility Survey | Moon et al. (1973) |
| 1971 | 3.7 | 1971 Fertility Survey | Moon et al. (1973) |
| 1971 | 3.6 | KIRBS Survey | Chung et al. (1972) |
| 1973 | 3.1 | 1973 Survey | S. Hong (1978) |
| 1974 | 3.2 | Korean National Fertility Survey/ World Fertility Survey | Korea, NBOS and KIFP (1977) |
| 1974 | 3.0 | National Survey of Family Planning Information, Education and Communication | Cheong et al. (1979) |
| 1976 | 2.8 | National Fertility and Family Planning Evaluation Survey | Cheong et al. (1979) |
| 1976 | 2.7 | Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility | N. H. Cho et al. (1977) |
| 1976 | 2.6 | Value of Children Survey | Bulatao et al. (1978) |
| 1978 | 2.7 | Study of Family Planning Information, Education, and Communication | Cheong et al. (1979) |

an accelerated decline during the 1970s. Although these temporal changes should be interpreted cautiously because of differences in survey coverage and question wording,[1] the trend is obvious. It is interesting to note that changes in family-size norms roughly parallel declines in actual fertility during this period. It is difficult to disentangle the direction of causality between these two measures; however, declines in ideal and actual fertility seem to have reinforced one another.

The overall averages in the ideal number of children mask some interesting differences in the distributions. Up through 1971, available data show that virtually nobody considered less than two children an ideal family. More recent surveys are consistent with this pattern, although a few percent of respondents in some studies consider one child ideal. The two-child family, which the family planning program would like to establish as the norm, was similarly unpopular through 1971, with only 4 to 6 percent of respondents expressing this as their ideal (Korean Institute for Family Planning, 1973).

However, since that time, the two-child family has rapidly become a more acceptable ideal: in recent surveys, between one third and one half of Koreans say that their ideal number of children is two (Moon et al., 1973; S. Hong, 1978; Bulatao et al., 1978). The three-child family has similarly gained in popularity, with corresponding losses in the acceptability of large families (five or more children).

This development of two to three children as the most desirable family size is confirmed by data on the proportion of women at various parities who do not want any more children (Table 22). With each successive survey, more and more women at each parity say they prefer not to have any more children. Although the proportion of first-parity women who are content to stop bearing children has increased sharply from 7 percent in 1967 to 26 percent in 1979, the vast majority of women would still not be satisfied with one child. However, the trend at the second parity has been more dramatic: in 1967, only 15 percent of women with two children wanted to stop childbearing; just twelve years later, more than three fourths professed to be satisfied with two children. Once the level of three children has been reached, only a small percentage of women (7 percent) say they wish to have one or more additional children.

On the other hand, women will not necessarily be able to attain their ideal family size. A few will be unable to have families as large as they would like, for example because of fecundity impairments. Many more will exceed their ideal family size or have already done so; in fact, in the World Fertility Survey, 34 percent of currently married women already had a larger family than they desired, and 37 percent said they did not want their last live birth.

In addition to the evidence that the ideal number of children is dropping, there are some indications of a corresponding decrease in the ideal spacing of children. The ideal first birth interval dropped by one sixth (from 21.1 months to 17.6 months) between 1976 and 1978. The ideal spacing for subsequent births declined from 3.6 years in 1974 to 3.4 years in 1976, and further to 3.2 years in 1978 (Cheong et al., 1979:82). Moreover, in all three years, ideal birth intervals drop steadily as one moves from rural areas to large cities (Cheong et al., 1979:82; B.T. Park et al., 1979:54; C.H. Choi et al., 1975:24). Thus, it appears that the ideal life cycle for most people in Korea now includes a fairly small number

TABLE 22 Proportion of Women Who Want No More Children: Republic of Korea

| Number of Living Children | National Survey on Family Planning 1967 | Korean Fertility and Family Planning Survey 1968 | National Family Planning and Fertility Survey 1973 | Korean National Fertility Survey 1974 | National Fertility and Family Planning Evaluation Survey 1976 | Korea Contra-ceptive Prevalence Survey 1979 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 7 | 8 | 11 | 13 | 19 | 26 |
| 2 | 15 | 24 | 46 | 66 | 69 | 78 |
| 3 | 55 | 54 | 73 | 86 | 88 | 93 |
| 4 | 74 | 73 | 85 | 92 | 93 | 97 |

Note: The characteristics of women included in the calculation of the above figures may differ from one survey to the next. For example, the Korean National Fertility Survey figures for 1974 are based on currently married fecund women, whereas other surveys may be based on all currently married women. Using a similar definition across all surveys would apparently further heighten the increase over time in the proportion who want no more children.

Sources: B.T. Park et al. (1979:98); Korea, NBOS and KIFP (1977); K.S. Koh et al. (1980b).

of children, born within a relatively short space of time, leaving women with a smaller proportion of their adult lives devoted to childbearing and childrearing. Although the shifts in ideal spacing parallel actual declines in birth intervals at the lower parities, it is once again difficult to tell whether these shifts are leading or following actual changes (Rindfuss et al., 1982).

The ideal age for a woman to complete childbearing remained constant at 31 years over the 1974-78 period (Cheong et al., 1979:82). KNFS data on the proportion of currently married fecund women who want no more children support this observation. At age 25-29, 46 percent of women say they want to have additional children; by age 30-34, this figure is only 16 percent (Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977). Even though most women in the younger cohorts want to have more children, their ideal family size is relatively low (about one child lower than for those at the end of their childbearing years). In fact, women age 15-24 have a slightly lower ideal number of children than those in the same age group in Japan (B.T. Park et al., 1979:91). However, there is no way to know whether this ideal number will increase as they pass through their childbearing years.

The Korean National Fertility Survey has also revealed that better education and urban residence (in addition to younger ages) are associated with smaller family-size norms (Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977). Family-size norms have consistently been 17-19 percent higher in rural than in urban areas in nearly every survey over the last 15 years. In the most recent nationwide survey (Cheong et al., 1979), ideal family size rose from 2.5 in Seoul, to 2.6 in other cities, to 2.8 in eups (townships), to 3.0 in myuns (rural administrative units). Even within Seoul, there is evidence of different family-size norms in different sections of the city. For example, in a 1971 survey, Chung et al. (1972) found that women in the central or "lighted" areas of Seoul had an ideal family size of 2.88 children, while those in the marginal or "blighted" areas thought 3.33 children ideal.

These differences in family-size norms by urban-rural residence, education, and age are undoubtedly related to the varying roles that children can be expected to play in the lives of people in different circumstances. The next section examines the values that Korean parents attach to children, and how these values change for parents at different stages of the life cycle and in different circumstances.

## THE VALUE OF CHILDREN

Attitudes toward the values and disvalues of children appear to be one of the key factors determining family-size attitudes and fertility behavior in Korea. Some values are almost universally attached to children, others are salient to only certain groups, while others have essentially lost their importance or were never very prominent. As noted above, children are seen as performing different roles or functions for different people; moreover, attitudes toward children change throughout the life cycle of individuals and as modernization proceeds. The value of children changes from one parity to the next as parents add to their childbearing experience; it also depends, in large measure, on the sex of the child.[2]

Although very little was known about the value of children in Korea before the early 1970s, a considerable body of literature addressing this question has recently emerged. In 1957, Leibenstein developed a useful general framework that grouped the benefits of children into three broad categories: (a) their utility as productive agents, helping with the family farm or business, or earning family income; (b) their utility in providing security for parents in old age and in times of emergency; and (c) their psychic or "consumption" utility, i.e., the utility of children as a source of personal pleasure to the parents. The costs of children were divided into direct, out-of-pocket costs of raising children and opportunity costs. This framework is employed below to examine the values and disvalues of children in Korea.

### The Productive Utility of Children

Although there is a good deal of evidence showing that children provide help in family enterprises, it is not at all clear that this productive utility is a strong motivation for having children. The Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility found that over 60 percent of married women expected help from their children on the family farm and about 20 percent in the family business.[3] However, in the same study, this benefit was almost never mentioned as the most important reason for having children. This pattern is even more evident in the case of practical help around the house: the Value of Children (VOC) study found that over 80 percent of parents expected both daughters and sons to help around the

house, yet only a handful of respondents spontaneously mentioned this type of help as an advantage of having children (Bulatao, 1979). Moreover, the productive utility of children normally declines with the relative importance of agriculture and the need for family workers. It may be noted that large-scale migration from rural to urban areas in Korea may be producing a somewhat different pattern: migration to the cities has caused considerable rural labor shortages that may temporarily increase the value of children's work, especially for poorer rural families. However, in the long run, the productive utility of children will inevitably decline.

## The Security Utility of Children

Security has been cited as one of the most compelling factors in family-size decisions in countries in which social security programs are nonexistent, do not have widespread coverage, provide inadequate support, or are unreliable. In Korea, where there is no government old age security program, children are still viewed as an important source of old age support and a cushion in times of need. However, the security utility of children is declining substantially as family nucleation proceeds, as parents find they can rely more on their own income or savings, and as children are perceived as less willing to help their parents financially (Lee and Kim, 1979). Although children often figure prominently in plans for old age support, the degree of support may be relatively small. In the VOC study, over 80 percent of wives and husbands said they expected old age support from their sons and about 45 percent from their daughters. However, only about one respondent in five spontaneously mentioned help in old age as an advantage of having children (Bulatao, 1979); about the same proportion cited this as a very important reason for wanting another child (Lee and Kim, 1979). The commonly supplemental nature of children's security contributions is further seen in Table 23, which shows that a substantial proportion of women expect to be basically independent of their children after retirement. This emerging independence is further evident from data on household structure and living arrangements. For example, the Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility found that 48 percent of women in their childbearing years do not expect to live with their children at all, 22 percent expect to live with them for

TABLE 23 Expected Economic Support After Parents' Retirement: Republic of Korea

| | Sons (percent) | Daughters (percent) |
|---|---|---|
| Total Support | 39.3 | 1.0 |
| Moderate Support | 18.4 | 2.8 |
| Little Support | 25.6 | 22.5 |
| No Support | 16.7 | 73.7 |
| Total | 100.0 | 100.0 |

Source: N.H. Cho et al. (1977:76).

as long as possible, while 25 percent expect to live with them only when they are old.

Nevertheless, for substantial segments of Korean society, children are still seen as the primary source of security in old age. This is particularly true for older couples, those who live in rural areas, and individuals with low income and little education. The differentials by type of place of residence are quite striking. In the first phase of the VOC study, only 3 percent of urban, middle-class respondents rated help in old age as a very important reason for wanting another child, compared to 26 percent of urban, lower class respondents, and 43 percent of rural farmers (Lee and Kim, 1979). These differentials suggest that the security utility of children will continue to decline with increasing urbanization and development.

The security utility of children might also decrease if an old age security system were introduced. The Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility found that 68 percent of parents would stop at two children, even if they had no sons, if there were an old age security system in Korea. Although such hypothetical survey questions are always somewhat suspect, it is obvious that a large number of women do make the connection between old age security and family size in their minds.[4]

## The Consumption Utility of Children

In addition to the economic factors considered above, parents may derive a wide range of social-psychological benefits from children. Some of those values mentioned prominently in Korea are happiness, love, companionship, the personal development of the parents, and a whole host of childrearing satisfactions (Lee and Kim, 1979). There is also some evidence that this "consumption" utility is greater among young, better-educated women in urban areas (N.H. Cho et al., 1977). As will be seen below, these benefits of children are particularly associated with the first child. This does not mean that rural, less-educated couples and high-parity women do not derive personal pleasure from their children; rather, it indicates that economic factors and other considerations may take precedence for those individuals.

## Other Values of Children

The above categorization omits some additional values or considerations which relate more narrowly on the children themselves. Some of these are benefits that accrue to other children in the family rather than directly to the parents: children can provide companionship for each other, and older children can help their younger siblings with school expenses. The Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility reported that when asked about the disadvantages of a small family, 62 percent of women mentioned that the children may feel lonely, and this was by far the most common answer; companionship for children was found to be a particularly important value for couples with two to three children (Bulatao, 1979).

The number of siblings also has implications for the quality of children, their relationship to their parents, and even their personalities. Korean children from large families are seen as having an open and loving manner toward other people, being self-confident, and being popular with other children. Children from small families are thought to have high intellectual ability and a close relationship with their parents; they are also seen as being very happy, but rather spoiled (Lee and Kim, 1979:63). Although children from large and small families may not objectively possess these characteristics, the perception that they do may be a factor in fertility decision making.

Direct Costs of Children

The benefits of having children must be counter-balanced against the costs entailed in rearing them. In Korea, several studies have shown that parents are acutely aware of the high costs of children; the costs of raising children have consistently emerged as the most important perceived disadvantage of having children, of having a large family, and of having another child (Lee and Kim, 1979). Some would argue that survey respondents may simply mention costs as a convenient rationalization of what is in reality a very complex decision--not to have more children. This argument is partially supported by the results of hypothetical questions on what people would do if their income doubled. In one study, only 7 to 14 percent of respondents said they would have more children if their income doubled (Arnold et al., 1975:96). In the Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility, only 0.4 percent said they would use the extra money to have another child, while 43.6 percent would use it for the education of their other children. Thus, the money, if spent on children at all, would be used to increase the quality rather than the quantity of children. Lee and Kim (1979) found that 57 percent of men and women said the number of children they desired would be a heavy economic burden to them. Thus other factors must compel the majority of couples to have more children than they feel they can comfortably afford. Nevertheless, the prominence of cost considerations in every study to date cannot be ignored. Only a minority (about one in five) of Koreans feel that two children would be a heavy economic burden; this figure rises sharply to nearly two thirds for three children, and around 90 percent for four children (Lee and Kim, 1979). Since this is the range within which childbearing decisions will be most crucial over the next decade, perceptions of the costs of children should be carefully considered.

Measuring the actual costs of children, rather than perceptions of them, has proven a difficult task; thus there are virtually no reliable data to cite. A survey conducted late in 1972 (Lee and Kim, 1979:58) reported that urban middle-class couples estimated the average expenditure on their children during the previous 12 months at about $473 (or 21 percent of their total income). Urban lower-class couples figured they spent only about half that much ($243), but this level of expenditure ate up 29 percent of their total income.

Couples in the rural, agricultural sample estimated that they spent only 15 percent of their income ($133) on their children. This economic crunch seems to fall most heavily on lower-class couples in urban areas. This is in fact a common phenomenon resulting from a combination of the high cost of living in urban areas, low incomes, and relatively large numbers of children (Arnold et al., 1975).

A study by the Korean Educational Development Institute conducted somewhat later than the one just mentioned attempted to estimate the cost of rearing a child from birth to age 25 (Kim et al., 1976:65). The authors estimated the cost for a middle-class couple at about 15 million won (about U.S. $31,000) according to prices at the end of 1975. If these figures are even approximately correct, then costs must be a substantial factor in family-size decisions, at least for middle-class couples.

One of the principal components of the cost of children, and one of major concern, is the cost of education. Although the government covers most of these costs through junior high school, they can still be considerable for parents, who often pay for private schools, books, tuition, school clothes, and special lessons such as those in music or sports. One of the greatest expenses incurred in educating children has been that of private tutors. The government has recently made private tutoring illegal in an attempt to reduce this economic burden. However, while this law will undoubtedly make educational expenses easier to bear, it will by no means make children's education inexpensive. Educational aspirations in general are very high in Korea, and parents are willing to make considerable sacrifices to provide education for their children. Education is now compulsory through the sixth grade, and there are plans to extend compulsory education through junior high school soon; however, most parents want their children (or at least their sons) to finish college, while a large majority would like them to graduate from high school (Moon et al., 1973). The Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility found that education was the single most expensive aspect of raising children, followed by food and clothing. In the same study, three fourths of the parents interviewed said that the cost of educating their children would be a very heavy burden considering their income level and status. A substantial proportion of Korean couples state explicitly that the high cost of

education is a reason for not wanting another child (Lee and Kim, 1979), although the influence of this factor on actual childbearing decisions is still open to question.

## The Opportunity Costs of Children

The indirect or opportunity costs of children encompass a variety of restrictions on parents' alternate activities, but among these, perhaps the most important is the restriction on one's job. These costs are thought to affect women more than men since women usually bear the brunt of childrearing responsibilities. However, opportunity costs are often thought to be minimal in less-developed countries (particularly in rural areas), where many jobs for women are compatible with child-rearing (or where job opportunities for women are limited) and where easy alternatives exist for child care through the extended family or friends. In Korea, opportunity costs are not highly salient, but neither are they negligible, and they are gaining in importance. Restrictions on alternative activities are felt most strongly in urban areas, particularly among more educated women (Arnold et al., 1975; Lee and Kim, 1979). Although women do manage to combine working and childbearing successfully, the Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility found that 40 percent of working women felt childrearing interfered greatly with their work, while 30 percent said it interfered somewhat. As educational opportunities for women continue to improve in Korea, opportunity costs will undoubtedly increase as they have in more developed countries.

## Other Costs of Children

Other costs of children include both emotional and physical costs and costs to society. Two of the strongest reasons given for not wanting another child are emotional strain and potential problems between husbands and wives (Arnold et al., 1975). Although these emotional costs were not rated as highly as the financial costs, they were still quite important; the physical burden of caring for another child was among the least important reasons, except in rural areas. There was also a very strong concern that having another child would prevent the parents from giving sufficient attention to their other

children. It appears that these nonfinancial costs are not entirely anticipated prior to childbearing: R.-Y. Park (1980) found that the financial burden was of the greatest importance to couples before they had children, but the emotional and physical burdens were given most importance by couples who already had children.

As mentioned earlier, Korea has one of the highest population densities in the world, and Korean couples profess a good deal of concern about overpopulation. For example, in the VOC study, over 70 percent of wives and husbands said they felt that overpopulation was a reason for their having fewer children (Bulatao, 1979). Although these answers must be interpreted cautiously (particularly in light of the fact that answers about overpopulation rarely surface spontaneously), it is interesting to note that the figures for Korea were higher than those for any of the other countries included in the study. Korean couples seem to be acutely aware of crowded conditions and their attendant problems, particularly in the cities.

## Parity-Specific Values

The above discussion of values and disvalues generally treats all children as equal. Yet children of different birth orders, different sexes, different ages, and so on, are perceived differently by parents. A recent article by Bulatao (1981) focuses on differences in the value of children in successive childbearing decisions both in Korea and elsewhere. The relevant data for Korea, reproduced in Table 24, show quite pronounced differences by birth order in both the values and disvalues. On the positive side, the first child provides a number of social-psychological benefits, many of which are derived from interaction with the child; it is seen as bringing the spouses closer together, although it can also interfere with the marital relationship by restricting the amount of time that spouses can spend together. The first child is unique in that only one of the five values mentioned (incentive in work) is prominent for any other child. The importance of providing companionship for other siblings emerges for the second and third child and then disappears. Considerations of gender preference come to the fore with the third and fourth child, but do not seem important for subsequent births. Finally, it is not until the fifth child and beyond that economic benefits become a prominent concern.

TABLE 24 Values Attached to the Next Child: Republic of Korea

| | Values | Disvalues |
|---|---|---|
| 1st Child | Love and care for<br>Incentive in work<br>Fun around house<br>Bring spouse closer<br>Pleasure to watch grow | Child's sickness<br>We are too old<br>Hard to discipline<br>Less time with spouse |
| 2nd Child | Companion for siblings<br>Incentive in work | Harder to have job<br>Less free |
| 3rd Child | Wants a girl<br>Companion for siblings<br>Wants a boy<br>Incentive in work | Less time with spouse<br>Overpopulation |
| 4th Child | Wants a girl | Financial burden |
| 5th Child | Help around house<br>Economic help | Financial burden |
| 6th and Subsequent Children | Economic help<br>Help in old age<br>Help around house | Financial burden<br>Child's sickness<br>We are too old |

Source: Bulatao (1981:12, 18).

On the cost side, the differences are also striking. Opportunity costs become important in the case of the second child, and then fade. Overpopulation is an important consideration for the third child, as might be expected in light of the family planning slogan "Stop at two without sex distinction." After the third child, financial costs are paramount at every level.[5] The particular values that are important for each child have important policy implications. For example, if one wanted to encourage couples to stop at two or three children, policies designed to increase sexual equality and decrease gender preference would seem appropriate, although, as the next section will demonstrate, the influence of gender preference on fertility in Korea is not as clearcut as many believe.

## SON PREFERENCE

One of the most deeply ingrained values in Korea, both historically and at the present time, is a preference for male over female offspring; in fact, Korea exhibits one of the highest levels of son preference in the world, a topic that has received considerable attention in the literature (see, for example, Chung et al., 1974; Kwon and Lee, 1976; Kong and Cha, 1974). Although there are some signs that son preference is beginning to relinquish its strong hold in Korea, its continuing importance cannot be questioned. Korean society has indeed gone through a drastic transformation; however, satisfactory institutions have not yet emerged to take over the major functions of sons in the traditional Korean family (Kwon and Lee, 1976).

### Historical Supports for Son Preference

Son preference has a long history in Korea, but "it was not until after the establishment of the Yi dynasty (near the end of the fourteenth century) when boy preference received institutional support in the form of Confucianism that it took on aspects of a culture" (Chung et al., 1974:77). Under the Confucian system of the traditional patriarchal family, a male child was seen as crucial for carrying on the family name, for the rituals of ancestor worship, and for inheritance purposes. Having as many sons as possible was regarded as one of the five blessings (obok). In the Yi dynasty, the right to preside over the rituals of family ancestor worship (chesa) would pass down to "the eldest son, other sons, sons of concubines of decent origin, and sons of concubines of lowly origin in that order" (Chung et al., 1974:56).

Inheritance laws have often favored sons, particularly the eldest; however, even when the law entitled all children regardless of sex to equal shares in the family property (as was the case during the Yi dynasty), in practice, inheritances almost always excluded women (Chung et al., 1974). Current Korean law states that women in a family <u>may</u> inherit on an equal footing with men (United Nations Fund for Population Activities, n.d.), and a law is being considered that would make this mandatory. However, until 1978, Korean law entitled unmarried daughters to receive only half as much inherited property as sons and married daughters to receive only one fourth as much

(Chung et al., 1974). The Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility found that 76 percent of Koreans expected to bequeath the family farm to their first son, 19 percent would share the land among their sons, and only 3 percent would share the land among both their daughters and their sons. In a rural area of Korea, Yoon (1974) reported that in practice, the first son receives all of the family's land and goods because of poverty and a lack of land to be divided.

The low status of Korean women also contributed to the strong desire for male offspring. During the Yi dynasty, all formal educational institutions were open only to men. Young girls were told that women who know letters are short-lived and short on fortune (Chung et al., 1974:62). Women were also taught the womanly virtue of the three obediences: a woman was expected to obey her father when she was young, her husband after marriage, and her sons (particularly the eldest) after she became widowed.

The traditional importance of sons in Korean society is demonstrated by the lengths to which people have gone in order to have a son. Chung et al. (1974) outline a whole range of common practices such as son praying (including rock worship and wood worship), geomancy (selecting auspicious grave sites), studying the physiognomy of son-bearing women, navel cautery, and name-giving practices. Although some of these customs are no longer widespread, others are still often practiced. Son preference has also been supported by a whole host of Korean folk sayings, some of which still enjoy considerable currency; the following are examples (Kong and Cha, 1974; Chung et al., 1974; N.H. Cho et al., 1977):

> "Children are valuable, but especially sons, regardless of the number."
> "A daughter lets you down twice: when she is born and when she gets married."
> "If a man should die sonless, no one would ever offer him even a bowl of water."
> "If you have to marry someone you dislike, give him many daughters."
> "A new-born son should be laid on a bed, clad in fine clothes, and given precious stones to play with, while a girl at birth should be left on the floor with only a diaper on and given only pieces of roof-tile to play with."

> "Women not flogged for three days turn into foxes and climb mountains."

Although a number of current laws in Korea discriminate against women, much of the male bias that previously permeated Korean law has been eliminated (B.H. Park, 1973). These legal changes have been accompanied by increasing opportunities for women's economic and social participation and by changes in women's roles (H.-S. Park, 1979). Nevertheless, strong boy preference attitudes persist in Korea, as the next section will show.

## Measures of Son Preference

The existence of a strong preference for sons in Korea is one of the best documented facts in Korean population studies; it is supported by every measure of son preference that has been used (including the ideal number of sons and daughters, parity progression ratios, reported sex ratios of children, the Coombs sex preference scale, and the ideal sex of next births). An overriding desire to have at least one son (and often at least two) is nearly universal.

The evidence on changes in the level of son preference over time must be carefully analyzed. Some studies show that there has been little if any change, while others indicate a gradual downward shift. A review of ten surveys between 1958 and 1978 conducted for the present study showed virtually no change over time in the proportions of boys and girls in the ideal family; in fact, the average proportion of sons in the ideal family was precisely the same in the earlier five studies as it was in the five most recent studies. All but one of the studies indicated that the ideal ratio of boys to girls fell within the fairly narrow range of 1.42 to 1.59 despite the fact that the total number of ideal children wanted varied between 2.7 and 4.4. Moreover, there were no large or consistent differences between rural areas, small cities, and large cities. However, this lack of differentials should not be taken as proof that son preference has remained the same over time. Although few of the studies reviewed provide detailed information at the couple level, it may be speculated that the lack of change is due to two opposing forces: a decrease in total ideal family size and an increase in the proportion of couples who want an equal number of sons and daughters.

This statistical quirk occurs because most Korean couples want an equal number of sons and daughters or one more son. Mathematically, the ratio of boys to girls in an ideal family rises from 1.5 for couples who want three boys and two girls to 2.0 for couples who want two boys and one girl. Thus, it may be argued that the natural tendency for this proportion to rise as ideal family size decreases has undoubtedly been offset by a fall in the proportion of couples who want more boys than girls. In the 1976 VOC study, for example, 43 percent of all men and women said the number of boys in their ideal family would exceed the number of girls by one; however, half of all respondents wanted an equal number of boys and girls, and hence did not exhibit any sex preference according to this measure.

Because of the problems inherent in comparing sex preference at different levels of ideal family size, Coombs developed a sex preference measure, based on unfolding theory, that is independent of number preference (Coombs et al., 1975). The Coombs IS-scale ranges from 1, which indicates extreme girl preference, to 7, which indicates extreme boy preference, with the neutral value of 4 indicating the absence of any sex preference. In the VOC study, the mean IS-scale score was 5.31 for married men and 5.30 for married women, almost identical with the average score of 5.37 reported in the KNFS (Kim and Choi, 1981). Over 90 percent of both men and women had scores of 5 or more, indicating the presence of son preference. In contrast, only 2 percent of men and 4 percent of women exhibited any amount of daughter preference (Bulatao et al., 1978).

As in most countries, sex preference is particularly prominent in reference to the first birth. According to the KNFS, 60.3 percent of currently married, fecund, nonpregnant Korean women want a boy for their first child, compared to only 4.1 percent who want a girl. At all parities, 66 percent of women want a boy for their next child, while only 16 percent want a girl (Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977:112). Table 25 shows that virtually no one with an equal number of boys and girls (or more girls than boys) expressed a desire to have a daughter for their next child. Families with more sons than daughters show a preference for an additional daughter; however, this preference is only moderate, except for families with two sons and no daughters.

When faced with the dilemma of what they would do if they did not have a son, some couples would go to rather

TABLE 25 Desired Sex of Next Child Among Currently Married, Fecund, Nonpregnant Women Who Want a Future Birth, 1974: Republic of Korea

| Number of Living Daughters | Number of Living Sons | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| 0 | S= 60.3<br>D= 4.1 | S= 25.9<br>D= 38.6 | S= 1.8<br>D= 91.1 |
| 1 | S= 93.5<br>D= 0 | S= 80.0<br>D= 1.0 | S= 23.1<br>D= 30.8 |
| 2 | S=100.0<br>D= 0 | S=100.0<br>D= 0 | S= 71.4<br>D= 0 |

S = percent who want a son.
D = percent who want a daughter.

Source: Korea, NBOS and KIFP (1977:T353-T355).

extreme measures. In the 1971 study by the Korean Institute for Research in the Behavioral Sciences (Chung et al., 1972), 53 percent of respondents said they would just keep on having children no matter how many they had until they got a son (and this figure rose to 73 percent in rural areas). In more recent surveys, this percent has decreased considerably as ideal family size has declined, but a substantial proportion still say they would keep trying for a son. Another alternative would be to adopt a son into the family; this solution was preferred by the majority of household heads interviewed by Yoon (1974) in 1971. A more drastic solution would be for the husband to take a concubine to try to have a son. Concubinage was outlawed under Japanese rule in 1923 and is now rare; nevertheless, in three early studies, a substantial proportion of women (25 to 50 percent) said that if sonless, they would allow their husbands to take a concubine to have a son (Chung et al., 1972; H.-J. Lee, 1959; W.K. Koh et al., 1963). Although it is not likely that many women would actually do this, the large number who said they would underscores the importance of son preference at that time.

The majority of women still maintain that they must have a son (this figure has stayed constant at just over 60 percent for the last 10 years); however, the proportion of women who say they do not care whether they have a son or not increased from 16 percent in 1971 to about 30 percent in 1976 (Moon et al., 1973; B.T. Park et al., 1979). These data indicate that "the traditional preference for sons is still very much alive," although "that the traditional attitude has also undergone some erosion" (Cho et al., 1977:117).

Another indicator of son preference is the reported sex ratio of births and of children. Both the registration system and several surveys and censuses in Korea have found the reported sex ratio to be exceptionally high: the sex ratio of registered births was reported to be in the range of 106 to 116 in the colonial period and 105 to 125 since that time (Kwon, 1977); the censuses of 1955, 1960, and 1970 found the sex ratio of the enumerated population to be 105.5 to 107.2 at ages 0-4 and 107.6 to 109.1 at ages 5-9 (United Nations, ESCAP, 1975:39). However, there is evidence that the true sex ratio at birth does fall within the normal range; thus the above figures suggest an underenumeration of female children relative to male children and provide one more indication of the relative importance of males and females.

Even more revealing than the overall sex ratio of children is the breakdown of sex ratios by parity and birth order. For the KNFS, C.B. Park (1981) reported a sex ratio of 106.5 for all children, but the sex ratio in small families was considerably higher than that in large families. For example, it was reported to be 126 in two-child families and 130 in three-child families, but only 102 in five-child families and 94 in larger families. In addition, the sex ratio of the last child in families of any size (133) was markedly higher than that of previous children (101).

Because of Korea's high degree of son preference, the family planning program has spearheaded a campaign to modify sex preference attitudes by adopting the slogan "Stop at two, without sex distinction." This slogan has met with some resistance, however, as evidenced by the results of the most recent national family planning (IEC) (information, education, and communication) survey (Cheong et al., 1979). While three fourths of the men and women interviewed approved of the slogan "stop at two," only just over half approved of adding "without sex distinction." Moreover, there was about an equal difference in

acceptance of the two slogans in large cities, small cities, and rural areas, indicating that resistance is widespread rather than localized.

Whether son preference has begun to lose its firm hold on Korean society (as suggested by Cha, 1979, and Korea, NBOS and KIFP, 1977) or has waned very little during the last two decades (as suggested by Kwon and Lee, 1976, and Kwon, 1982), there is no doubt that the majority of Koreans maintain their traditional values on this subject. This is true in both urban and rural areas, among both young and old couples, and among both men and women, although several studies have found differentials by type of place of residence, degree of economic development, and age. It is still not clear whether the more modern sex preference attitudes adopted by some Koreans will diffuse rapidly through the population, as have modern family planning attitudes, or whether they will remain stubbornly resistant to change.

## The Value of Sons and Daughters

The earlier discussion of the value of children dealt primarily with children in general. However, Korean parents do attach different values to sons and daughters and have different expectations for them. Sons are seen as entailing more benefits and fewer costs. They are essential for carrying on the family name, as well as for providing old age and other support, and ancestor worship (Cheong et al., 1979; Lee and Kim, 1979; Kong and Cha, 1974; Chung et al., 1974; Yoon, 1974; Bulatao, 1979). Although the financial concerns are important, continuing the family name or the family lineage is always the paramount reason given for wanting sons.

Daughters, on the other hand, are valued primarily for companionship and other psychological satisfactions while they remain in the family (Lee and Kim, 1979). Once they get married, they invariabily leave their parents' household, and many of these advantages are lost, although they might still provide help in old age or emergencies. Not only are daughters seen as providing fewer benefits to their parents, but they are also seen as being more of a financial burden. Two recent studies have found that about twice as many parents think daughters cost more than sons as vice versa (N.H. Cho et al., 1977; Bulatao et al., 1978). Those who feel that daughters cost more say they need more expensive clothes, while those who

feel that sons cost more mention educational costs most often. Given these perceptions of costs and benefits, it is no wonder that son preference attitudes are slow to change.

## The Effect of Son Preference on Fertility and Family Planning

The prevalence of son preference has been said to constitute "a major obstacle to reducing fertility" and "one of the most important obstacles to the current efforts of reducing fertility to near replacement level in Korea" (S. Hong, 1978:85; Kwon and Lee, 1976:2). However, the evidence does not uniformly support this contention, and the general consensus on the impact of son preference on fertility has recently begun to lose ground.

Kong and Cha (1974), in their review of 20 empirical studies conducted before 1975, found several studies showing that the sex composition of children affects the rate of contraceptive practice. More recently, Rindfuss et al. (1982) and Nemeth (1981) have presented some preliminary evidence that Korean women without any sons intentionally curtail breastfeeding to speed up the birth of the next child. Some of the strongest evidence for the influence of son preference on fertility comes from parity progression ratios and other measures based on family composition. This effect often manifests itself most strongly at the second and third parity. Chung et al. (1974) found many more families with three boys and with two boys and one girl than would be expected from probability theory, and many fewer three-child families with more girls than boys. The VOC study reported that there were nearly twice as many two-child couples with two boys as with two girls (Bulatao et al., 1978), indicating that couples whose first two children are girls are at least twice as likely to have more children as those whose first two children are boys. Additional evidence comes from the stated intentions of those with various family compositions. Table 26 shows the percent of women who want no more children, broken down according to their current number of living daughters and sons. The most striking differences appear at the second and third parities, where more than twice as many women with all boys than with all girls want to stop childbearing.

TABLE 26 Percent of Currently Married, Fecund, Nonpregnant Women Who Want No More Children, by Number of Living Daughters and Sons, 1974: Republic of Korea

| Number of Living Daughters | Number of Living Sons | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5+ | All |
| 0 | 13 | 16 | 77 | 94 | (100) | (96) | 51 |
| 1 | 12 | 71 | 97 | 99 | 100 | (100) | 74 |
| 2 | 36 | 82 | 98 | 99 | (100) | * | 86 |
| 3 | 47 | 81 | 99 | 100 | (100) | * | 87 |
| 4 | (55) | 81 | 99 | (100) | * | * | 86 |
| 5+ | * | 93 | (100) | * | * | * | 88 |
| All | 23 | 64 | 94 | 98 | 100 | 99 | 74 |

(): Less than 50 cases.
*: Less than 20 cases.

Source: Korea, NBOS and KIFP (1977:112).

While these differences are indeed dramatic, the overall effect of gender preference is attenuated by the fact that by biological necessity, fewer women fall in the extremes of having all boys or all girls than fall in the middle where the differences are considerably smaller. There are also large numbers of women at parities 0, 1, and 4 or higher, where sex preference is less important.

To calculate the overall effect of gender preference, a new measure can be used which attempts to estimate fertility attitudes in the absence of any gender preference. This measure assumes that without any sex preference, all women at any given parity will be as satisfied with their family size as are those of the same parity who currently have the most favored combination of sons and daughters. In other words, it may be hypothesized that 16 percent of all women with one child will want no more children, 77 percent at parity two, 97 percent at parity three, and so on (see Table 26). This measure also allows for the presence of daughter preference or a preference for balance. Using this method and the KNFS data in Table 26, it may be estimated that 80.4 percent of Korean women would want no more children in the absence of any gender preference, compared to 74.3 percent who actually said they wanted no more children. The same method leads to a somewhat larger differential in the case of contraceptive use: 54.6 percent of women would use contraception in

the absence of any gender preference, compared to 45.7 percent who said they were actually using contraception at the time of the survey. These rough measures indicate that gender preference may play a considerable role in explaining fertility behavior in Korea. However, it is equally obvious that strong sex preference attitudes have not kept large numbers of women with an "undesirable" balance of daughters and sons from using family planning to curtail further childbearing.

Multiple regression analyses of the influence of sex preference on fertility and family planning yield mixed results. The Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility found that son preference exerted a strong influence on the number of children desired, but no significant influence on contraceptive use. Koo (1979) found that son preference was statistically significant in explaining fertility for older urban respondents only. Chung et al. (1974) concluded that boy preference was an important factor in family planning practice up to parity four (particularly at the intermediate parities, thereby paralleling the results based on family composition); however, the authors did not find any net effect of boy preference on the desire for more children among low-parity women. Overall, the multivariate analyses indicate that although son preference has an impact on fertility for women in some groups, its effect is decidedly less consequential than the purely descriptive data on son preference might lead one to believe.

Kwon (1982) attributes the relatively weak effect of son preference to countervailing forces. He speculates that son preference will cause some couples to have more children than they would otherwise desire, but others to have fewer children because girls are not considered an absolute necessity for Korean families; therefore, the net effect of son preference on the aggregate level is negligible.[6] Kwon et al. (1975) have also put forth the intriguing thesis that historically, son preference may have lowered the rate of population growth in Korea by generating relatively high mortality for adult women and female children through inadequate care and diet. The argument that gender preference does not necessarily retard fertility decline has also been developed in two recent studies outside of Korea. In a small empirical study in the United States, Widmer et al. (1981) showed that sex preference can lead to lower fertility for some couples and that the overall effect of sex preference is not necessarily an increase in fertility. Bulatao and

Fawcett (1981) suggest that fertility may be reduced by the existence of gender preference because of the risk that the next child may be of the "wrong" sex. In Korea, this possibility cannot be discounted.

An alternative hypothesis would suggest that son preference may become a more important element in the future course of Korean fertility. According to this argument, son preference has a negligible effect on fertility when the TFR is at a level of five or six children, but will gain in importance as the TFR approaches a level of two or three children. In this case, further substantial reductions in fertility would be unlikely without major changes in the social and cultural values that support son preference attitudes.

There are thus a number of opposing arguments and very little empirical research on the present and future effects of son preference on fertility. This topic must therefore remain a matter for speculation.

NOTES

1 In some surveys, respondents were asked the ideal number of children for women in Korea; in others, they were asked for their personal ideal or desires; and in others, the precise nature of the question was not clear.
2 A detailed discussion of gender preference for children is presented in the next section.
3 The results of the Survey of Economic Factors in Fertility cited here and in the remainder of this chapter are found in N.H. Cho et al. (1977).
4 It should be noted that women are particularly concerned with the issue of old age security (Lee and Kim, 1979) since they are generally younger than their husbands, and their life expectancy is considerably higher; therefore, they can expect to live for many years after their spouse's death.
5 Costs may be felt more acutely at higher parities because personal tax exemptions are limited to the first two children; however, this factor would only be important for couples who pay an income tax.
6 See Chapter 4 for a more detailed explanation of this thesis.

# CHAPTER 6

# FAMILY PLANNING AND ABORTION

## DEVELOPMENT OF THE NATIONAL FAMILY PLANNING PROGRAM

The major social changes in Korea that have been linked to the modernization process and industrialization brought about a transformation in the value of children. Individual couples began to appreciate the benefits of having small families and the government began to realize the need for a reduction in the rate of population growth. These perceptions prompted the development of a major national family planning program and led to its early success. This chapter begins with a review of the historical development of the national family planning program and past and present trends in contraceptive use. The chapter concludes with a discussion of the use of induced abortion and its impact on fertility rates.

As discussed in Chapter 1, the late 1950s were years of very high fertility. This period was preceded by a series of important political events: in April 1960, there were massive student protests that eventually led to the overthrow of the Rhee government and the establishment of an interim government. A new government, formed a few months later, undertook a major national development program. The so-called National Reconstruction Movement peaked in 1962-63, when over half of the roads to rural villages were improved and clubs were organized for women aged 19-45 in each of the 45,000 villages in the country. The new government also began to evince an interest in family planning. This interest was strengthened in early

---

This chapter is based on a number of reports describing the family planning program in Korea, especially the history by Kim et al. (1972).

1961 when it was announced that the gross national product had increased by only 2.6 percent the previous year, while the population growth rate (based on 1960 census results) was a whopping 2.9 percent, more than enough to cancel the small economic gain. Private-sector family planning efforts also helped stimulate the interest of both the government and civic leaders.

The Planned Parenthood Federation of Korea (PPFK) was founded in the spring of 1961 following contacts with the International Planned Parenthood Federation (IPPF) at international meetings, through IPPF's publications, and through visits of IPPF personnel. The head of the National Reconstruction Movement became president of PPFK. Since its formation, PPFK has worked closely with and has been subsidized by the Korean government, coping with politically sensitive family planning issues and occasionally shielding the government from criticism. It has also played an important international role in population and family planning.

PPFK was also instrumental in the establishment of Korea's national family planning program in 1962. When this program began, the local health infrastructure was quite weak, and there was no established health network below the gun (county) level. The government did not complete its goal of establishing one health center in every shi (city) and gun until 1963. When myun (township) family planning workers were finally hired in 1964, they were put under the myun chief in the regular government office rather than under the health administration. This system had the unexpected advantage of making the myun chief responsible for the success of the family planning program, but it had the disadvantage that the family planning worker's role was usually diluted with other work in the myun office. Nevertheless, efforts were made to minimize the size of the central organization, and most of the money for the program was distributed at the local level.

When the family planning program was first established, it offered only traditional contraceptive methods and vasectomy. A major expansion was facilitated by the inclusion of family planning expenditures in the investment section of the national budget in 1963. At the end of the same year, the program was extended to provide a family planning worker for each of the country's 1,473 myun, and a mass IUD program was announced. On this basis, the government set a target of reducing the population growth rate from 2.8 to 2.0 percent annually

by 1970. In a single year, the number of family planning field workers increased from 366 to 2,970, and the annual number of loop insertions increased from 2,000 to 107,000; by 1967 the program had inserted its millionth loop (Cho and Perry, 1979:103). The number of physicians who completed the basic training course in family planning each year rose from 45 in 1962 to 1,154 in 1964, then gradually tapered off (Korean Institute for Family Planning, 1978:367).

By 1964, 18 percent of the government's total health budget was allocated for family planning. This rose to 30 percent in 1966 before it began to decline, reaching a level of only 13 percent by 1970. In the first six years of the program, foreign assistance accounted for 18 percent of total family planning expenditures by the government and by PPFK. Most of the local funds were spent for organizational activities and contraceptive supplies; most of the foreign funds were spent on demonstration projects, equipment, research, evaluation, training, and information and education.

The largest foreign donors during the 1960s were IPPF and the Population Council. After 1967, the United States Agency for International Development (USAID) began to provide large-scale support to Korea's family-planning programs. In addition, the Swedish International Development Agency (SIDA) contributed substantial funds to build the Korean Institute for Family Planning's modern training and research facilities. As a consequence, mainly of USAID and SIDA funding, the foreign share of total family planning rose to about 40 percent around 1970.

The Ministry of Health and Social Affairs (MOHSA), which administers the family planning program, gave PPFK responsibility for the national information and education campaign during the 1960s; it gave KIFP the task of training family planning personnel, and conducting research and experiments. In 1963, 125,000 posters and 2.3 million calendars were distributed in rural areas. The following year, posters and calendars were supplemented by about 1.5 million leaflets on contraceptive methods and 400,000 counter cards for restaurants. Flip charts and pelvic models were also distributed for use as educational aids. In 1965, even more innovative items such as fans for family planning acceptors and mirrors with loop messages for beauty shops were introduced. The thrust of the program began to change in 1966 with the introduction of mobile teams consisting of a health educator and a family planning worker. These teams

conducted group meetings and showed informational films in villages, in addition to providing clinical services. Both group meetings and media messages have been invaluable for spreading family planning information and motivating acceptors. In 1968, the monthly magazine Happy Home was started for the members of 17,000 Mothers Clubs that were set up that year (see the next section for a fuller discussion of these clubs). Since the beginning of the family planning program, both government and private radio stations have carried a substantial amount of family planning material. Discussion sessions have been broadcast, and the availability of contraceptive methods has been publicized through spot announcements. At the present time, there continue to be spot announcements every other day, plus special programs from time to time.

Although PPFK and MOHSA have been most active in the family planning program over the years, other agencies have also played important roles. The Ministry of Home Affairs, through the local government organizations and later the New Village Movement (Saemaul Undong), mobilized support for family planning; the Ministry of Culture and Public Information contributed to the success of media campaigns; and the Ministry of Education was instrumental in the introduction and expansion of population education activities. Finally, the army has provided family planning education to large numbers of military personnel.

## MOTHERS CLUBS

In 1968, the Planned Parenthood Federation decided to establish "Mothers Clubs" in rural areas, basically to overcome traditional resistance to both smaller-size families and modern contraceptive practice. From the beginning, these clubs were planned only for rural areas, principally because of (1) the socially cohesive informal networks that have traditionally bound families and individuals in the villages; and (2) social institutions, based on traditional values, that have resisted radical social change in these areas. The idea was to promote family planning in the conservative rural sector by making use of the existing informal networks of married women. Urban areas generally had much greater access to contraceptives through both commercial channels and city health centers; moreover, urban women, having lower fertility levels and better education, were already more

highly motivated to accept family planning. Furthermore, the informal networks existing in the villages did not exist in urban areas.

The stated objectives of the Mothers Clubs were to motivate village women to accept and practice family planning, to facilitate family planning communication, and to mobilize support for the government's population policy. For tactical reasons, they also engaged in such related activities as health education for better sanitation, small-scale banking functions, and neighborhood assistance projects.

At the time the clubs were formed, there were roughly 16,800 legal villages in Korea, with one legal village usually consisting of several natural villages. In 1973, there were some 22,500 clubs; during the peak of Mothers Clubs activity, they were operated by about half of the natural villages. The clubs ranged in size from 12 to over 40 members; as they became more active, they gradually grew larger, with the average club size increasing from 23 in 1968 to 31 in 1972. The clubs met about once a month, and according to a 1974 survey, had an overall attendance of about 76 percent (H.J. Park et al., 1974:177-182). The survey also showed that 10 percent of the clubs were very active, 38 percent active, 37 percent were moderately active, and 15 percent inactive; in other words, about one half were functioning productively.

It is extremely difficult to evaluate quantitatively the contribution of these clubs to the success of the family planning program and to actual fertility reduction in Korea, although such attempts have been made. For example, Park and Chung estimated that roughly 33 percent of couples practicing family planning in 1974 did so on the advice of the Mothers Clubs (H.J. Park et al. 1974:191). Where they were actively functioning, the clubs effectively recruited new acceptors, provided valuable assistance in introducing and winning acceptance of new contraceptive methods, and contributed to continued use by serving frequently as convenient, additional distributors of such contraceptives as pills and condoms. They also provided important channels for information and education about family planning. At the community level, club leaders encouraged village leaders to participate in family planning activities.

In the initial stages of the family planning program, field workers in the rural communities played a fairly effective role; in subsequent years, however, they tended

to be younger and unmarried and to show high turnover. The Mothers Clubs, composed of older, married women, provided social and psychological support to these workers and to family planning acceptors. The clubs also helped eliminate taboos against discussing sex and family planning, and contributed indirectly to improving women's status giving them more active community roles and leadership.

The Mothers Clubs existed and operated for 10 years beginning in 1968, after which they were integrated into the nationwide "Saemaul," or new Village Movement. This movement, still actively operating, is a comprehensive effort toward developing and modernizing the rural sector of the country (for further discussion, see M.-G. Lee, 1980). By 1978, a major decline in fertility had been achieved, as discussed in Chapter 2. Whether or not the Korean family planning program would have achieved the high level of contraceptive practice without the Mothers Clubs is a moot question. Certainly, the clubs were an important factor in the success of the Korean family planning program, and consequently in the reduction of marital fertility.

## TRENDS IN CONTRACEPTIVE PRACTICE

The expansion of the government's family planning program was followed by a major increase in contraceptive practice. Table 27 shows contraceptive practice rates by women's age and residence for 1966, 1971, 1976, and 1979. The last column of the table indicates that the practice rate increased 2.7 times in 13 years, from 20 to 54 percent of currently married women age 15-44. The urban practice rate was four to eight percentage points higher than the rural practice rate between 1966 and 1976, but only one percentage point higher in 1979, indicating a rapid urban-rural convergence between 1976 and 1979. Table 27 and Figure 8 also show that practice rates increased substantially at all ages, but especially at ages 30 and above. For the country as a whole in 1979, the practice rate ranged from 18 percent at ages 20-24 to 72 percent at ages 35-39. The practice rate at ages 40-44 was lower than that at ages 35-39, perhaps partly because some women feel they are not able to have more children at this age and hence do not use contraception.

TABLE 27 Contraceptive Practice Rates by Woman's Age and Residence, 1966-79 (percent of currently married women): Republic of Korea

| Residence and Date | Age 20-24 | 25-29 | 30-34 | 35-39 | 40-44 | Total |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Whole Country | | | | | | |
| 1966 | 3 | 13 | 29 | 32 | 14 | 20 |
| 1971 | 7 | 15 | 28 | 38 | 27 | 25 |
| 1976 | 15 | 32 | 56 | 62 | 45 | 44 |
| 1979 | 18 | 41 | 68 | 72 | 53 | 54 |
| Urban | | | | | | |
| 1966 | 5 | 19 | 36 | 33 | 13 | 26 |
| 1971 | 7 | 17 | 32 | 45 | 29 | 27 |
| 1976 | 18 | 37 | 60 | 66 | 48 | 48 |
| 1979 | 19 | 43 | 69 | 72 | 55 | 55 |
| Rural | | | | | | |
| 1966 | 3 | 10 | 25 | 30 | 15 | 18 |
| 1971 | 5 | 14 | 24 | 34 | 25 | 23 |
| 1976 | 12 | 25 | 50 | 57 | 44 | 40 |
| 1979 | 16 | 36 | 67 | 72 | 51 | 54 |

Note: The last column refers to currently married women aged 15-44. For 1971, 1976, and 1979, the 20-24 age group includes currently married women aged 15-19.

Sources: Korean Institute for Family Planning (1978:313); K.S. Koh et al. (1980b:106).

Table 28 presents contraceptive practice rates by women's education and residence. It is noteworthy that by 1966, college-educated women were already modern in their contraceptive behavior. Indeed, their practice rate of 46 percent in 1976 was slightly lower than it was in 1966. This decline occurred because of the increase in the proportion of college-educated women who lived in rural areas and had lower practice rates than their urban counterparts; practice rates for urban college-educated women increased slightly over the decade. In 1966, practice rates increased steeply and monotonically with education, but from 1971, a contraction of educational differentials began to take place. In 1976, practice rates were very similar from one educational group to the next, although those with a high school or college education still tended to have higher rates than those

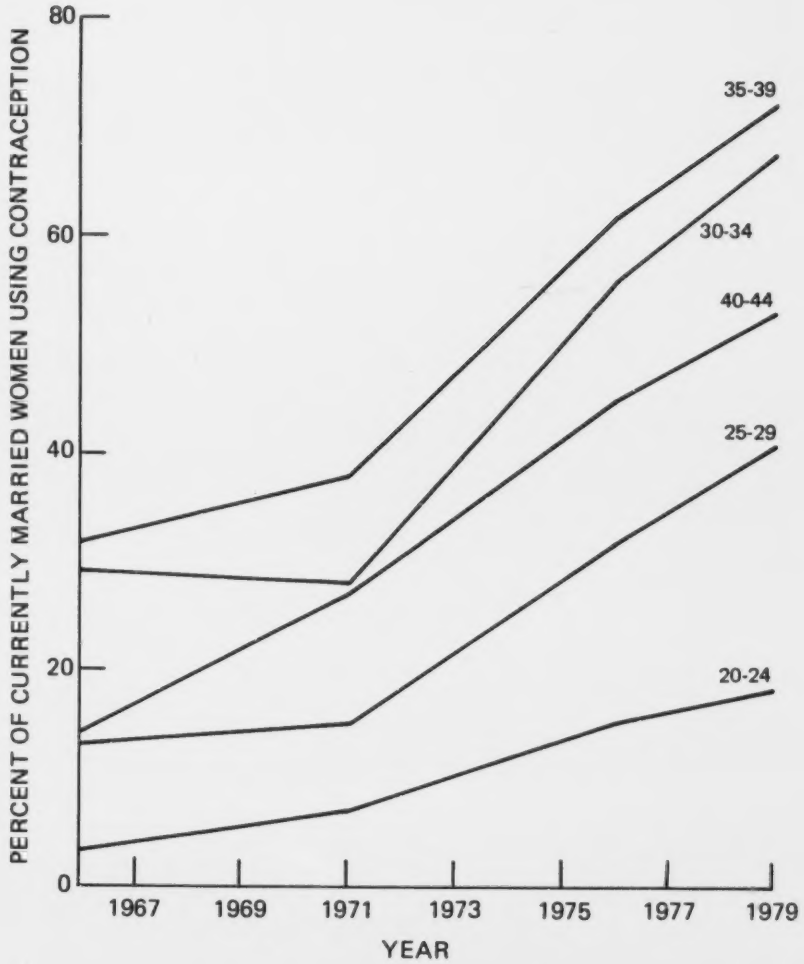



FIGURE 8 Contraceptive Practice Rates by Woman's Age: Republic of Korea

with less education. The patterns of urban-rural differences in practice rates within educational categories did not change much over the 13-year period; the gradual disappearance over time of educational differentials was taking place both in urban and rural areas.

The almost complete disappearance of rural-urban differentials in contraceptive practice by 1980 can be credited to the wisdom of the early program leaders and administrators in focusing their efforts on the traditionally high-fertility rural areas. Program

TABLE 28 Contraceptive Practice Rates by Women's Education and Residence (percent of currently married women aged 15-44) 1966-79: Republic of Korea

| Residence and Date | Education | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | None | Primary | Junior High | High School | College |
| Whole Country | | | | | |
| 1966 | 16 | 20 | 32 | 40 | 49 |
| 1971 | 21 | 25 | 25 | 32 | 38 |
| 1976 | 38 | 41 | 41 | 46 | 46 |
| 1979 | 51 | 54 | 53 | 58 | 61 |
| Urban | | | | | |
| 1966 | 14 | 23 | 36 | 40 | 51 |
| 1971 | 19 | 27 | 24 | 35 | 36 |
| 1976 | 41 | 46 | 47 | 54 | 53 |
| 1979 | 52 | 54 | 53 | 59 | 61 |
| Rural | | | | | |
| 1966 | 16 | 18 | 26 | 43 | -- |
| 1971 | 21 | 23 | 25 | 21 | 44 |
| 1976 | 39 | 41 | 38 | 40 | 44 |
| 1979 | 51 | 55 | 53 | 52 | 62 |

Sources: Korean Institute for Family Planning (1978:315). The values of 16, 14, and 16 for 1966 in the first column are approximate values obtained by averaging practice rates for "illiterate" and "read Korean" in Korea, Ministry of Health and Social Affairs (1966:163) (the figures in the KIFP source are erroneous).

administrators argued that contraceptive needs in urban areas would be met by the private sector. Changing patterns in contraceptive sources in rural and urban areas support this argument. The proportion of users obtaining contraception from the government program has gradually declined: in 1966, 80 percent of current users obtained contraceptives from the government program, while in 1976, this figure was only 50 percent (Korean Institute for Family Planning, 1978:313). The expansion of nongovernment services has occurred principally in urban areas, largely because drug store contraceptive purchases involve no filling out of forms or lengthy waits and usually no prescription; rising incomes, making contraceptive costs less burdensome, together with the rather small price differences between government and nongovernment contraceptives, have also contributed to

the increased use of the latter. Since 1976, the proportion obtaining contraceptives from the government may have risen somewhat because of the increased subsidy of sterilization, which will be discussed later.

## USE OF DIFFERENT CONTRACEPTIVE METHODS

Table 29 shows contraceptive practice rates by method. In 1966, the most popular method was the IUD, followed by the condom; however, virtually all of the increases in practice between 1966 and 1976 are accounted for by other methods--the pill, sterilization, and "other" (e.g., diaphragm, spermacides, douche, rhythm, withdrawal). The

TABLE 29 Contraceptive Practice Rates by Method of Contraception and Residence (percent of currently married women aged 15-44), 1966-79: Republic of Korea

| Residence and Date | Method | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | IUD | Pill | Condom | Sterilization | Other |
| Whole Country | | | | | |
| 1966 | 9 | 1 | 6 | 2 | 2 |
| 1971 | 7 | 7 | 3 | 4 | 4 |
| 1976 | 11 | 8 | 6 | 8 | 11 |
| 1979 | 10 | 7 | 5 | 20 | 12 |
| Urban | | | | | |
| 1966 | 9 | 1 | 9 | 3 | 4 |
| 1971 | 5 | 7 | 4 | 4 | 7 |
| 1976 | 8 | 8 | 8 | 11 | 13 |
| 1979 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 24 | 13 |
| Rural | | | | | |
| 1966 | 9 | 0 | 5 | 2 | 1 |
| 1971 | 8 | 7 | 2 | 3 | 3 |
| 1976 | 13 | 8 | 4 | 6 | 9 |
| 1979 | 15 | 8 | 4 | 16 | 11 |

Note: Sterilization figures include male as well as female sterilizations. Method-specific rates in this table add, to within small rounding errors, to overall practice rates in the last column of Table 6.1.

Source: Korean Institute for Family Planning (1978:316).

IUD practice rate actually declined in urban areas, although it increased in rural areas and remained approximately constant in the country as a whole.

As noted above, the IUD was greatly emphasized from the beginning of the national family planning program; it was the only effective method known to the program administrators and leaders. The major push for IUD acceptance was in rural areas, as is reflected in Table 29. The argument behind this emphasis on IUD acceptance was that the level of education among eligible women in rural areas was low, and the method was rather simple to administer: it did not require the services of medical doctors, and individual acceptance and practice were easily achieved without much educational effort.

In the early stages of the family planning program in 1963-64, IUDs were introduced on a large scale and were rather favorably accepted. Nevertheless, there was some cultural resistance. In his study of fertility in a rural community in 1964, Cho (1966) found that not all the villages in the area accepted IUDs. Villages with effective leaders who were younger and had a modern outlook were more accepting, but villages under conservative leadership resisted. Eventually, of course, all rural areas came to adopt IUDs as a principal contraceptive method. Acceptance of the IUD also meant a serious decision by the individual to control births. The IUD drop-out rate was very high during the 1970s, reaching 51 percent by the end of the first year (Moon and Han, 1973). However, IUDs played the important role of initiating contraceptive behavior in addition to preventing births; IUD drop-out was usually followed by either abortion or adoption of other contraceptive methods.

The government program did not introduce birth control pills on a large scale until 1968; by then, IUD drop-outs were increasing, and couples were searching for an alternative method other than abortion. As shown in Table 29, use of the pill increased at approximately the same rate in both rural and urban areas. Another noticeable change in the trend of contraceptive practice since 1976 is the rapid increase in the use of other methods, such as withdrawal and rhythm, in both rural and urban areas.

It is not apparent in the table, but the upsurge in sterilization, which was particularly marked in urban areas, occurred only after 1972. Before that date, sterilizations were limited mainly to vasectomies, and the number of female sterilizations was negligible. A dramatic surge in the latter occurred in the two-year

period 1975-77, with the rate rising from 11 to 53 tubal ligations per 1,000 ever-married women age 20-39. This increase has been attributed to the introduction of laparoscopy (a simplified outpatient procedure) into the government program in 1976 and the tripling of government payments in 1977 from 5,000 to 15,000 won (U.S. $10 to U.S. $30) to physicians performing the procedure. Prior to 1977, the government subsidy covered only one third of the fee, leaving the patient to pay the other two thirds. In 1976, the proportion of couples sterilized in the private sector exceeded the proportion sterilized in the government sector; by 1978, this differential had been reversed (Westoff et al., 1980:130-137).

The female sterilization rate increased substantially in both rural and urban areas at every age and marital duration and at every parity and educational level. Perhaps because of the increases in the government subsidy, however, the greatest surge in female sterilization occurred at lower educational (and, presumably, income) levels; the sterilization rate did not increase much for college-educated women (Westoff et al., 1980:137). The surge was also notable among those who had never previously used contraception: in 1977, female sterilization accounted for 22 percent of all new acceptors in the government program (Korean Institute for Family Planning, 1978:291). Since 1977, two-child families with a wife under 40 who has undergone contraceptive sterilization are given preference for new government housing (Nortman and Hofstatter, 1980:23), although the import of this policy has yet to be evaluated.

Among currently married fecund women who want no more births (the group that is most likely to elect sterilization), 26 percent were sterilized as of 1978. Another 29 percent were using other efficient methods (pill, IUD, condom, diaphragm, spermicides). The remaining 45 percent were either using inefficient methods (rhythm, withdrawal, douche, and folk methods) or were not using contraception at all (Westoff et al., 1980:137). Many of these women used abortion, which will be discussed later in this chapter. Because of the widespread use of abortion, the substantial increase in sterilization after 1976 averted only a moderate number of births. In 1977-78, sterilization averted 0.84 pregnancies per woman, of which 0.30 would have resulted in births and 0.54 in induced abortions. The sterilization program has thus had a major impact in reducing the number of abortions (Westoff et al., 1980).

Direct computation of births averted indicates that the national family planning program accounted for about 37 percent of the decline in the birth rate for women aged 15-44 between 1963 and 1973. The effect of the program was largest (in the neighborhood of 54 to 60 percent) at ages 25-44; at ages below 25, rising age at marriage accounted for most of the fertility change (Khoo and Park, 1978:70). This estimate of impact is approximate, since it depends somewhat on educated guesses about potential fertility and substitution rates. Regarding the latter, it was assumed that 20 percent of acceptors in the government program would have obtained contraception in the private sector had the government program not been available.

Multivariate areal analyses also indicate that the national family planning program contributed to fertility decline. Standardized regression coefficients indicate that both the program and socioeconomic changes have contributed; however, results from such studies depend a great deal on which variables are included in the analysis. Cho and Perry (1979:110) found that the availability of pharmacies strongly influenced total marital fertility in 1970, more so than did the IUD acceptance rate. K.S. Koh et al. (1980a:21) found that availability of doctors and family planning workers (variables not included in Cho and Perry's analysis) substantially influenced the TFR in 1975.

In spite of Korea's lowered fertility rates, the absolute number of births could increase as women born during the "baby boom" of the late 1950s enter the high-fertility age group. To forestall this, the government established a Population Policy Deliberation Committee in 1976, chaired by the Deputy Premier and Economic Planning Minister. Beginning in 1977, a revision of the income tax law limited tax exemptions to two rather than three children per family. Operationally, the family planning program has increased field workers' salaries, and plans are underway to increase services to special groups such as industrial workers and the very poor (Nortman and Hofstatter, 1980:23).

The new government under President Chun decided to continue to push the family planning program, and recently legislated an incentive scheme to discourage large families. According to this new scheme, to be implemented from 1982, families with three or more children will have to pay a higher residence tax and higher fees for medical insurance. Other benefits for

small families include priority in public housing, maternal leave for public-sector employees, and maternal medical service benefits. Also, as noted above, to counter the persistent preference for sons, new legislation has been proposed to attempt to correct those aspects of the inheritance system that are unfavorable to women.

The target in the Fourth Five-Year Plan was to reach an annual growth rate of 1.6 percent by the end of 1981. However, results from the 1980 census show that the average annual growth rate between 1975 and 1980 was 1.5 percent (see Table 1), and the target was thus already achieved by 1980. So far, moreover, the resurgence of births has failed to materialize.

The Fifth Five-Year Plan calls for continued family planning efforts and further reduction in the population growth rate. Because the proportion of women of childbearing age will substantially increase in the years to come, the Plan sets a fairly realistic target of a 1.5 percent growth rate for 1986. If this is to be achieved, the family planning practice rate must increase to 56 percent by 1982 and 67 percent by 1986.

## INDUCED ABORTION

In recent years, populations with a so-called Chinese cultural background have been successful in reducing their fertility levels, usually at a more rapid rate than European populations. These frequently cited "family planning success stories" occurred first in Japan and then in other East Asian nations, and in the Chinese populations of Singapore and Malaysia. All these populations have historically been under the influence of the Chinese culture, for which induced abortion and infanticide were traditional practices. In the absence of modern contraceptives, it is considered quite natural for a woman to resort to abortion to terminate an unwanted pregnancy. This happened on a massive scale in Japan after World War II. As modern contraceptive methods are introduced, the use of abortion as a method of birth control becomes less prevalent, but it never completely disappears. Abortion in these populations still serves as the ultimate means of birth control when other, more convenient methods fail, and this is particularly true in Korea. Asian cultures which sanction induced abortion or infanticide will probably complete the fertility transition more quickly than those which do not; consequently,

among the former, abortion tends to play a major role in the initial stage of the fertility transition (Cho, 1977).

## THE PREVALENCE OF INDUCED ABORTION

Although detailed statistical information on abortion is scarce and tends to be incomplete, it can be said that induced abortion has been an important means of family-size control and thus a major intermediate determinant of Korean fertility levels, at least since 1960. Before the initiation of the national family planning program in 1962, it was the only effective method of fertility control. However, induced abortion is known to have been very rare during the period of Japanese colonialism. A small black market in abortions arose immediately following the liberation of Korea in 1945, and an increasing number of "backyard" abortions were performed during and after the Korean War (1950-53). Abortions occurred mainly in the cities, especially the large ones, on a very limited but growing scale (Caldwell, 1969). The major motivation for abortion at that time was to terminate illegitimate pregnancies resulting from forced or unavoidable situations during the period of war and extreme social unrest; because of such incidents, abortion became socially acceptable, though it remained illegal.

Various studies clearly indicate that induced abortion for family limitation started in the late 1950s and was rapidly diffused to a significant proportion of the urban population beginning around 1960. An early abortion survey in Seoul discloses that one abortion took place for every two births in 1963, and that more than 90 percent of abortions in the early 1960s were induced for the purpose of family limitation (S.B. Hong, 1971:20 and 47). According to an estimate by Han (1973:71-78), based on the 1971 National Fertility-Abortion Survey, the ratio of the total abortion rate to the TFR (approximately equivalent to the ratio of the total number of abortions to the total number of births) was 22 percent in Seoul, 18 percent in other urban areas, and 3 percent in rural areas.

Although self-reported data on abortions are known to be unreliable, there is considerable evidence that induced abortion has become more prevalent since 1960, except in the years around 1970. The proportion of ever-married women who had experienced an abortion was

TABLE 30 Percent of Ever-Married Women Who Have Experienced an Induced Abortion: Republic of Korea

| Region | 1966 | 1971 | 1976 |
|---|---|---|---|
| Whole Country | 13 | 26 | 39 |
| Seoul | 25 | 40 | 50 |
| Other Urban | 23 | 34 | 41 |
| Rural | 10 | 19 | 29 |

Sources: Han (1973:73); B.T. Park et al. (1979:147).

reported to be 13 percent for the whole country in 1966 and 39 percent in 1976, while the total abortion rate has been estimated at 550 per 1,000 ever-married women for 1960, 1,347 for 1966, and 2,310 for 1976 (see Tables 30 and 31). Such a drastic change in the prevalence of abortion has been accompanied by a concomitant change in attitudes: according to a survey in a middle-sized town, the proportion of women who disapproved of abortion was 54 percent in 1965 (Lee, 1965:20); national surveys of fertility and family planning show the rate of disapproval to be 45 percent for 1971 and only 8.5 percent for 1976 (B.T. Park et al., 1979:254).

Although abortion was illegal in Korea except for medical or maternal health reasons until 1973, legal action against abortion has rarely been taken, and a majority of the population has treated abortion, along with contraception, as a proper means of family limitation. One important factor contributing to this situation and thus to the high prevalence of abortion is a lack of opposition to illegal abortion among medical personnel and lawyers (Ham and Jon, 1965). More than 90 percent of abortions were reported to have been performed in authorized medical clinics even before legalization in 1973, at a cost so small that it did not constitute an economic strain even for the poor (Hong and Watson, 1976:95-96). In fact, the average cost for an abortion in 1971 was reported as U.S. $7.50, which was equivalent to three days' wages for unskilled laborers; the 1968 abortion survey in Seoul reported similar costs (S.-B. Hong, 1971:45-46).

TABLE 31 Total Induced Abortion Rates (per 1,000) by Type of Area, 1960-76: Republic of Korea

| Year | Whole Country | Seoul | Other Urban | Rural |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1960 | 550 | 1,184 | 1,001 | 249 |
| 1961 | 610 | 1,658 | 848 | 264 |
| 1962 | 748 | 1,562 | 906 | 468 |
| 1963 | 935 | 2,146 | 1,223 | 522 |
| 1964 | 992 | 1,878 | 1,342 | 632 |
| 1965 | 1,326 | 2,964 | 1,623 | 753 |
| 1966 | 1,347 | 2,764 | 1,653 | 830 |
| 1967 | 1,413 | 2,452 | 2,086 | 855 |
| 1968 | 1,430 | 2,430 | 2,087 | 899 |
| 1969 | 1,755 | 2,424 | 2,794 | 1,142 |
| 1970 | 1,652 | 2,004 | 2,446 | 1,200 |
| 1971 | 1,590 | 2,114 | 2,100 | 1,170 |
| 1976 | 2,310 | 2,720 | 2,430 | 1,890 |

Sources: Han (1973:73); B.T. Park et al. (1979:147).

In addition to a growing desire for family limitation and a low level of economic and social constraints, the rapid dissemination of abortion in the 1960s seems to have been partly due to the frequent failure of contraceptive methods and a widely prevailing distrust of both contraceptives and sterilization. Many studies on abortion reveal a close association between family planning practices and abortion (Hong and Watson, 1976:120-23; S.-U. Kim, 1980). For example, the proportion of contraceptive users among women with abortion experience was 76 percent in 1971, while that among women with no abortion experience was 33 percent. In a pregnancy-interval analysis based on the 1974 KNFS data, Choe (1980) demonstrates that women with abortion experience were generally "bad" contraceptive users as compared to women who relied on contraceptives only. It was found from various in-depth interviews (in the 1965 and 1974 Ichon surveys and in an anthropological survey of population processes in Korea by S.B. Han and others) that a considerable number of women preferred induced abortion to contraceptives or sterilization for family planning and had had multiple abortions, even though 95 percent of women still consider abortion to be hazarous to one's health (B.T. Park, et al., 1979:161). The proportion of ever-married women who had experienced

abortion more than once is reported to have been 7 percent for the entire nation in 1966, 13 percent in 1971, and 22 percent in 1976 (B.T. Park et al., 1979:147; Korean Institute for Family Planning, 1978:330). According to the 1976 National Fertility and Family Planning Evaluation Survey, the majority of women would abort a birth if it resulted from the failure of contraceptives or if it were unwanted (B.T. Park et al., 1979:159-60).

Table 31 shows that the abortion rate reached a plateau around 1970 and resurged in the mid-1970s. The plateau may be explained by the increasing availability of effective family planning methods after 1965, while the resurgence may be explained by the legalization of abortion for family limitation in May 1973, since which time the government has vigorously promoted abortion as an important component of the national family planning program.

## PATTERNS AND DIFFERENTIALS OF ABORTION

As stated above, abortion became popular first in big cities, then in small cities, and finally in rural areas. The rate of abortion peaked in 1965-66 in Seoul and in 1969-70 in other cities, thereafter fluctuating with a tendency to decline, in the early 1970s (see Table 31). The rate for urban areas, including Seoul, rose again in the mid-1970s, although it had not quite reached its former peak levels by 1976.

A nearly incessant increase in the rate of abortion has been observed in rural areas since the early 1960s. As a result, the urban-rural gap in the prevalence of abortion was reduced gradually during the first half of the 1960s and rapidly after 1965. The rate of abortion in rural areas was estimated at about 20 percent of the urban rate in 1960 and 70 percent in 1976. The marked regional gap in the early years is largely accounted for by a scarcity of doctors and a relatively small abortion market; moreover, although various surveys found rural women more favorable to abortion than urban residents, the former apparently felt more anti-abortion pressure within the more intimate rural community. With the growing abortion market and increasing population pressure, rural women became increasingly exposed to abortion. The legalization of abortion in 1973 was particularly important in expanding rural abortion practices since the national family planning program was concentrated in these areas.

With the growing prevalence of abortion and the rapid decline of fertility, the first incidence of abortion for an individual woman started to take place at an increasingly early age and parity. For instance, the proportion of pregnancies that terminated in induced abortion in the third parity was 1 percent in 1960, 9 percent in 1965, and 11 percent in 1970 (Han, 1973:8). Overall, abortion is concentrated among women aged 30-39, with the degree of prevalence dropping toward both ends of the reproductive span, according to either the age-specific abortion rate or the ratio of abortions to live births (Korean Institute for Family Planning, 1978:334; Park, Choi & Kwon, 1979:152). The rising incidence of abortion in the early reproductive ages is usually interpreted as indicating the recent increased use of abortion for spacing between children.

According to a series of abortion surveys in Seoul, the relationship of an individual's socioeconomic background to abortion use changed significantly during the 1960s. In 1964, abortion was much more commonly practiced among women of higher socioeconomic status; there was a strong positive association between abortion and women's educational, occupational, and economic status. This pattern shifted partially in 1970: abortion became most extensive among middle-status women and decreased slightly in the upper-status group (S.-B. Hong, 1971:26-42); similar observations can be made based on national abortion data from a variety of sources compared in sequence (see Han, 1973:13-26; S.-U. Kim, 1980; B.T. Park et al., 1979:145-50).

Religious background has little association with abortion use; even Catholics have about the same level of use as women in other religious groups or those with no religion. Based on the 1974 KNFS data, S.-U. Kim observed that an extended family composition tends to be associated with somewhat less frequent abortion use, indicating the parental anti-abortion pressure due mainly to a difference between parents and children in desired family size. Lack of privacy may also act to discourage abortion.

From various surveys, very consistent differentials in attitudes toward abortion are observed by women's age, current residence, and other major socioeconomic background characteristics. However, these patterns are generally opposite to those observed for actual abortion behavior, and there is no significant statistical relationship evident between abortion behavior and attitudes (S.-U. Kim, 1980; Han, 1973:58). This

suggests that actual use largely depends on the couple's motivation to control family size and satisfaction with available family planning methods, rather than on their attitudes.

## ABORTION AND THE PRACTICE OF FAMILY PLANNING

As mentioned above, abortion has been considered an important means of fertility control in Korean society since the late 1950s; it is also clear from the above discussion that abortion trends have been very positively correlated with family planning practices, indicating that abortion is not simply an alternative to contraceptives. Hong and Watson (1976:120-139) observed the following relationships between abortion and contraceptive use based on the 1971 National Fertility-Abortion Survey:

> The proportion of contraceptive users is much greater among women with abortion experience than among those without.
>
> Contraceptive use after abortion is more frequent than that prior to abortion, and abortion is more common among previous contraceptive users than among non-users. In general, the use of contraception and abortion stimulate each other.
>
> Sterilization and abortion are largely mutually exclusive. The proportion of women sterilized after abortion is very minor (12%), compared to the women who previously adopted contraceptives (27%).
>
> A considerable portion (42%) of women remain unprotected from another pregnancy after abortion.

Using the same data, S.-H. Han made the following additional observations (1973:31-47):

> The distribution of women with abortion experience is much wider compared to contraceptive users. In other words, the proportion of abortion users is relatively high both in young and late reproductive ages.

Contraception is usually started after the second birth, but induced abortion frequently occurs at the first or second parity of pregnancy.

Selectivity in abortion utilization in terms of the socioeconomic background, particularly the level of educational attainment of women, occupation of the husband, and number of modern objects owned, is far greater than that in contraceptive use.

Although there has been no systematic effort to examine the relationship between abortion and contraceptive use based on more recent data, it is apparent from various survey reports that the above observations are largely applicable to later years.

## EFFECTS OF ABORTION ON FERTILITY

Since the 1960s, postponement of marriage, induced abortion, and family planning have been the major components of fertility change in Korea. Several attempts at decomposing the fertility decline by these three components have shown that they are more or less equally important in explaining the fertility change during the 1960s (Kwon, 1980; Repetto et al., 1981: Chapter 2; Koh and Smith, 1970:37, 56-57). It has also been observed that, in the early 1960s, the decline of fertility due to abortion was much more salient than that due to adoption of family planning methods, though this pattern was reversed in the 1970s. According to an estimate by Han (1973:69-71), the proportion of fertility curbed by induced abortion was equivalent to 3 percent of actual total fertility in 1960, 14 percent in 1965, and 18 percent in 1970; the most pronounced effect of abortion according to Han's estimates was almost 50 percent of actual total fertility in Seoul in 1965.

Estimation of the effect of abortion depends primarily on the method used to calculate the number of births averted per induced abortion. The above estimation, using the renewal process model of Keyfitz (1971), discloses that one induced abortion has the effect of averting 0.52 births. However, other studies show a considerably smaller effect: based on the same 1971 survey data, Hong and Watson (1972) roughly estimated that one abortion is equivalent to averting approximately

0.35 births, while Choe (1980) calculated the corresponding figure at 0.40 using 1974 KNFS data on pregnancy intervals and a life table method. It is also highly probable that the impact of abortion on the fertility levels (as measured by the number of births averted per induced abortion) has changed significantly during the last two decades with profound changes in reproductive behavior, lactation practices, and fecundity levels; however, there is apparently no information available that would permit an assessment of such changes.

## REFERENCES


Arnold, F., R. A. Bulatao, C. Buripakdi, B. J. Chung, J. T. Fawcett, T. Iritani, S. J. Lee, and T.-S. Wu (1975) The Value of Children: A Cross-National Study, Vol. 1, Introduction and Comparative Analysis. Honolulu: East-West Population Institute.

Bongaarts, J. (1978) A framework for analyzing the proximate determinants of fertility. Population and Development Review 4(1):105-132.

Bulatao, R. A. (1979) On the Nature of the Transition in the Value of Children. No. 60-A. Honolulu: East-West Population Institute.

Bulatao, R. A. (1981) Values and disvalues of children in successive childbearing decisions. Demography 18(1):1-25.

Bulatao, R. A., and J. T. Fawcett (1981) Dynamic perspectives in the study of fertility decision-making: Successive decisions within a fertility career. Pp. 433-449 in International Population Conference, Manila, Vol. 1. Liege, Belgium: International Union for the Scientific Study of Population.

Bulatao, R. A., J. Tom, and C. E. Angeles (1978) Marginals by Country and Sex, Value of Children Project. Technical Note No. 3. East-West Population Institute, Honolulu.

Caldwell, J. C. (1969) Family Planning in Korea (unpublished manuscript).

Cha, J.-H. (1979) Old and new values of children in Korea. Korea Journal (Seoul) October:19-31.

Chang, Y. (1966) Population in Early Modernization: Korea. Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Princeton University.

Chang, Y. (1980) Educational expansion. In Y. Chang, ed., Korea: A Decade of Development. Seoul: Seoul National University Press.

Cheong, C. K., K. C. Ahn, J. S. Park, M. H. Suh, and H. K. Lee (1979) Study on Family Planning Information, Education, and Communication. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Cho, L.-J. (1966) Fertility in a rural community. Korean Sociology 2:143-148.

Cho, L.-J. (1971) Preliminary Estimates of Fertility and Mortality in Korea. Seoul: National Bureau of Statistics, Economic Planning Board.

Cho, L.-J. (1973) The Demographic Situation in the Republic of Korea. No. 29. Honolulu: East-West Population Institute.

Cho, L.-J. (1977) Effects of abortion in fertility transition in East Asia. Pp. 251-263 in International Population Conference, Mexico, Vol. 3. Liege, Belgium: International Union for the Scientific Study of Population.

Cho, L.-J., and G. Feeney (1976) The Mortality Transition in Korea. Paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, Montreal.

Cho, L.-J., and G. Feeney (1978) Fertility Estimation by the Own-Children Method: A Methodological Elabortion. Reprint Series No. 20. Chapel Hill, N.C.: International Program of Laboratories for Population Statistics.

Cho., L.-J., and P. E. Perry (1979) Areal analysis of recent fertility and family planning in the Republic of Korea. Pp. 97-116 in L.-J. Cho and K. Kobayashi, eds., Fertility Transition of the East Asian Population. English Language Series No. 13. Honolulu: University Press of Hawaii.

Cho, L.-J., and R. D. Retherford (1978) Own-children fertility estimates by duration since first marriage: Preliminary results for Cheju Province, Republic of Korea. Asian and Pacific Census Forum 4(1):6-10.

Cho, L.-J., and R. D. Retherford (1981) Fertility Transition in the Republic of Korea. East-West Population Institute, Honolulu.

Cho, L.-J., W. H. Grabill, and D. J. Bogue, with the assistance of E. Bogue and M. Davidson (1970) Differential Current Fertility in the United States. Chicago: Community and Family Study Center, University of Chicago.

Cho, N. H., K. S. Lee, S. Y. Hong, and S. H. Kim (1977) Effects of Economic Factors on Fertility Behavior. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Choe, E.-H. (1967) Problems and Adequacy of Vital Statistics in Korea. Seoul: Population and Development Studies Center, Seoul National University.

Choe, E.-H. (1980) Inkong Imsin Jungjoli Chulsanryoke Michin Yonghyang (Impact of Induced Abortion on Fertility). Paper presented to the In-Country Seminar on KNFS/WFS Findings. Korean Institute for Family Planning, Seoul.

Choe, E.-H., and J. S. Park (1969) Some Findings from the Special Demographic Survey. Publication Series No. 3. Seoul: Population and Development Studies Center, Seoul National University.

Choi, C. H., D. S. Han, and K. K. Chung (1975) A National Survey of Family Planning Information, Education, and Communication. Seoul: Planned Parenthood Federation of Korea.

Choi, J.-S. (1966) Hankuk Kajok Yonku (A Study of Korean Family). Seoul: Minjung Sukwan.

Chun, K.-S. (1977a) Jindo Hasanriui Uire Saenghwal (Ritual Life in a Korean Village). Ilryuhak Nonjip (Anthropological Study), Vol. 3, Seoul.

Chun, K.-S. (1977b) Nodong Jukiwa Chulsanryokui Sangkwan Kwanke (A model for relationship of work-cycle and fertility: An ecological comparison of fishing and farming villages). Hankuk Munhwa Ilyuhak (Korean Cultural Anthropology) 9:155-162.

Chung, B. M., J. A. Palmore, S. J. Lee, and S. J. Lee (1972) Psychological Perspectives: Family Planning in Korea. Seoul: Korean Institute for Research in the Behavioral Sciences.

Chung, B. M., J. H. Cha, and S. J. Lee (1974) Boy Preference and Family Planning in Korea. Seoul: Korean Institute for Research in the Behavioral Sciences.

Coale, A. J. (1955) The population of the United States in 1950, classified by age, sex, and color--a revision of census figures. Journal of the American Statistical Association 50:16-54.

Coale, A. J. (1965) Factors Associated with the Development of Low Fertility: A Historical Summary, Vol. II. New York: United Nations.

Coale, A. J., and M. Zelnick (1963) New Estimates of Fertility and Population in the United States. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press.

Coale, A. J., N. Goldman, and L.-J. Cho (1979) Nuptiality and Fertility in the Republic of Korea. Paper presented at the seminar on Nuptiality and Fertility sponsored by the Committee on Comparative Analysis of Fertility, International Union for the Scientific Study of Population, Interuniversity Program in Demography, and the Department of Demography, Catholic University of Louvain, Bruges.

Coale, A. J., L.-J. Cho, and N. Goldman (1980) Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in the Republic of Korea. Washington, D.C.: National Academy of Sciences.

Cochrane, S. H. (1979) Fertility and Education: What Do We Really Know? Baltimore, Md.: The Johns Hopkins University Press.

Coombs, C. H., L. C. Coombs, and G. H. McClelland (1975) Preference scales for number and sex of children. Population Studies 29:273-298.

Davis, K. (1957) Institutional patterns favoring high fertility in underdeveloped areas. In L. W. Shannon, ed., Underdeveloped Areas: A Book of Readings and Research. New York: Harper and Brothers.

Donaldson, P. J., and D. J. Nichols (1978) The changing tempo of fertility in Korea. Population Studies 32(2):231-249.

Eisuke, Y. (1925) Population Study of Korea. Seoul: Chosen Printing Company.

Goode, W. J. (1963) Industrialization and family change. In B. F. Hoselitz and W. E. Moore, eds., Industrialization and Society. Paris: UNESCO-MOUTON.

Green, S. C. (1977) Dimensions of Migrant Adjustment in Seoul, Korea. Ph.D. dissertation, Brown University.

Ham, B.-C., and B.-J. Jon (1965) The criminality of abortion in Korea. The Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science 56(1):18-26.

Han, S.-B., and T. H. Kwon (1981) Anthropological approach in fertility and family planning research in Korea. Bulletin of the Population and Development Studies Center X:41-55. Seoul National University.

Han, S.-H. (1973) Inkong Imsim Chungjul'e Kwanhan Yonku (The Study of Induced Abortion). Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Hanley, S. B. (1979) The Japanese fertility decline in historical perspective. Pp. 24-48 in L.-J. Cho and K. Kobayashi, eds., Fertility Transition of the East-Asian Population. English Language Series No. 13. Honolulu: University Press of Hawaii.

Hong, S. (1976) Fertility and Fertility Limitation in Korean Villages: Community and Individual Level Effects. Ph.D. dissertation, University of Hawaii.

Hong, S., in collaboration with S. Choi, N. I. Kim, and R. Y. Park (1978) Population Status Report: Korea. Seoul: Korea Development Institute.

Hong, S. (1979) Community Development and Human Reproductive Behavior. Seoul: Korea Development Institute.

Hong, S.-B. (1971) Changing Patterns of Induced Abortion in Seoul. Korea, Seoul [s.n.].

Hong, S.-B. (1973) Jonkuk Inkong Yusan Siltae (Korea's Induced Abortion Status). Seoul: Choesin Uihaksa.

Hong, S.-B., and W. B. Watson (1972) The Role of Induced Abortion in Fertility Control in Korea. Proceedings of the First Southeast Asia and Oceania Regional Medical Science Congress, International Planned Parenthood Federation.

Hong, S.-B., and W. B. Watson (1976) The Increasing Utilization of Induced Abortion in Korea. Seoul: Korea University Press.

Keyfitz, N. (1971) How birth control affects births. Social Biology 18(2):109-121.

Khoo, S.-E., and C. B. Park (1978) The effect of family planning programs on fertility decline in four Asian countries. International Family Planning Perspectives and Digest 4:67-73.

Kim, D.-H. (1980) Hankuk Kajok Jedo Yonku (Study of Korean Family Institution). Seoul: Seoul National University Press.

Kim, M.-I., R. V. Rider, P. A. Harper, and J.-M. Yang (1974a) Age at marriage, family planning practices, and other variables as correlates of fertility in Korea. Demography 11(4):641-656.

Kim, M.-I., R. V. Rider, P. A. Harper, and J.-M. Yang (1974b) Changing age at marriage and the influence of social, demographic, and attitudinal variables. Pp. 451-461 in Population and Family Planning in the Republic of Korea, Vol. II. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Kim, N. I., and B. M. Choi (1981) Preferences for number and sex of children and contraceptive use in the Republic of Korea. Pp. 30-60 in Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific. Asian Population Studies Series No. 49. Bangkok: UNESCAP.

Kim, S., W. Y. Ryoo, and R.-Y. Park (1976) Population Change and Economic Development. Seoul: Korean Educational Development Institute.

Kim, S.-U. (1980) Hankuk Kihon Buinui Inkong Yusanui Kyoljong Yoin (Determinants of Induced Abortion of Korean Women). Paper presented to the In-Country Seminar on KNFS/WFS Findings. Korean Institute for Family Planning, Seoul.

Kim, T. I., J. A. Ross, and G. C. Worth (1972) The Korean National Family Planning Program. New York: The Population Council.

Kim, Y. (1966) The Population of Korea. Ph.D. dissertation, Australian National University.

Koh, K. S., and D. P. Smith (1970) The Korean 1968 Fertility and Family Planning Survey. Seoul: The National Family Planning Center.

Koh, K. S., H.-Y. Lee, and K. G. Foreit (1980a) Impact of the National Family Planning Program on Fertility Levels in Korea. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Koh, K. S., H. S. Hahn, and J. H. Byun (1980b) 1979 Korea Contraceptive Prevalence Survey Report. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning and Westinghouse Health Systems.

Koh, W. K., M.-G. Lee, H.-J. Lee, and H.-Y. Lee (1963) Hankuk Nongchon Kajokui Yonku (A Study on Korean Rural Family). Seoul: Seoul National University Press.

Kong, C.-J., and J.-H. Cha (1974) Boy preference in Korea: A review of empirical studies related to boy preference. Psychological Studies in Population/ Family Planning 1(8).

Koo, S. Y. (1979) The fertility and labor force participation of married women in Korea. Pp. 33-65 in Summer Seminar in Population (Korea: A Case Study) Seoul: Korea Institute for Family Planning.

Korea, Economic Planning Board (1980) Handbook of the Korean Economy. Seoul: Economic Planning Board.

Korea, Ministry of Health and Social Affairs (1966) The Findings of the National Survey on Family Planning, 1966. Seoul: Ministry of Health and Social Affairs.

Korea, National Bureau of Statistics (NBOS), Economic Planning Board, (1980a) Report on Vital Registration. Seoul: National Bureau of Statistics.

Korea, National Bureau of Statistics (NBOS), Economic Planning Board (1980b) The 1978-79 Life Tables of the Korean Population. Seoul: National Bureau of Statistics.

Korea, National Bureau of Statistics (NBOS), Economic Planning Board, and Korean Institute for Family Planning (KIFP). The 1974 Korean National Fertility Survey Tapes (unpublished).

Korea, National Bureau of Statistics (NBOS) and Korean Institute for Family Planning (KIFP) (1977) The Korean National Fertility Survey, World Fertility Survey, First Country Report. Seoul: Economic Planning Board.

Korean Institute for Family Planning (KIFP) (1973) Report on 1971 Fertility-Abortion Study. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Korean Institute for Family Planning (KIFP) (1978) Statistics on Population and Family Planning in Korea. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Kwon, T. H. (1976) Attitudes toward number and sex of children in Korean communities. In L. T. Ruzicka, ed., The Economic and Social Supports for High Fertility. Department of Demography and Development Studies Center. Canberra: Australian National University.

Kwon, T. H. (1977) Demography of Korea: Population Change and Its Components 1925-66. Seoul: Seoul National University Press.

Kwon, T. H. (1980) Population change. In Y. Chang, ed., Korea: A Decade of Development. Seoul: Seoul National University Press.

Kwon, T. H. (1982) Differentials in Korean fertility. In Y. Chang, T. H. Kwon, and P. J. Donaldson, eds., Society in Transition: With Special Reference to Korea. Seoul: Seoul National University Press.

Kwon, T. H., and H.-Y. Lee (1976) Preference for number and sex of children in a Korean town. Bulletin of the Population and Development Studies Center V:1-12. Seoul National University.

Kwon, T. H., H.-Y. Lee, Y. Chang, and E.-Y. Yu (1975) The Population of Korea. Seoul: Population and Development Studies Center, Seoul National University.

Lee, B. S., S. C. Farber, A. M. M. Jamal, and M. v.E. Rulison (1981) The Influence of Rural-Urban Migration on the Fertility of Migrants in Developing Countries: Analysis of Korean Data - Final Report. Prepared for the Agency for International Development, Washington, D.C.

Lee, H.-J. (1959) A sociological study of the family in Seoul. Journal of Research Institute of Korean Culture, I, Seoul.

Lee, H.-T., and D.-W. Han (1978) Chohon Yonryongkwa Chulsanryok Kanui Sangkwan Kwankye's Kwanhan Yonku (Age at First Marriage and Fertility). Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Lee, H.-Y. (1965) Differential Fertility In a Korean Middle Town: Marginal Tabulations. Seoul: Population and Development Studies Center, Seoul National University.

Lee, H.-Y. (1971) Differential fertility of a Korean middle town, Ichon Eup. In M. Tachi and M. Muramatsu, eds., Population Problems in the Pacific. Tokyo.

Lee, H.-Y. (1978) Kajok (The Family). In H.-Y. Lee and T. H. Kwon, eds., Hankuk Sahoe (Korean Society). Seoul: Population and Development Studies Center, Seoul National University.

Lee, H.-Y., and T. H. Kwon (1968) Hankuk Kajok Hyongtaeui Han Yonku (A study on Korean family type). Dong-A Munwha (Journal of the Institute of Asian Studies) 30(2):1-34.

Lee, K.-K. (1977) Hankuk Kajokui Sajok Yonku (Historical Study of Korean Family). Seoul: Il-jo-kak.

Lee, M.-G. (1973) Hankuk Nongchon Sahoeui Kujowa Byonhwa (The Social Structure of a Korean Village and Its Change). Seoul: Seoul National University Press.

Lee, M.-G. (1980) Toward a New Community Life, A Report of the International Research Seminar on the Saemaul Movement. Seoul: Seoul National University Press.

Lee, S. B., B. T. Park, and S. Choi (1978a) Honjon Imsin Buinui Chulsanryok Sujun Kochal (An analysis of fertility for premaritally pregnant women). Kajok Kyehoek Nonjip (Journal of Family Planning Studies) 5:7-28. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Lee, S. B., S. Choi, and H. S. Kim (1978b) Jiyok Sahoe Tuksong'i Kajok Kyehoekmit Chulsan Haeingwi'e Michinun Yonghyang'e Kwanhan Yonku (Impact of Community-Level Variables on Family Planning Behavior). Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Lee, S. J., and J.-O. Kim (1979) The Value of Children: A Cross National Study, Vol. 7. Korea. A joint publication of the East-West Population Institute, East-West Center, and the Korean Institute for Research in the Behavioral Sciences. Honolulu: East-West Population Institute.

Lee, Y.-H. (1977) Urinara Buinui Kyolhon Yonryong Byondongkwa Chulsanryok (Age of women at marriage and fertility in Korea). Kajok Kyehoek Nonjip (Journal of Family Planning Studies) 4:71-92. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Leibenstein, H. (1957) Economic Backwardness and Economic Growth. New York: John Wiley.

Levy, M., Jr. (1955) Contrasting factors in the modernization of China and Japan. In S. Kuznets, W. E. Moore, and J. J. Spengler, eds., Economic Growth: Brazil, India, Japan. Durham, N.C.: Duke University Press.

Mason, A., and M. Phananiramai (1981) Aggregate Fertility Change in Thailand and Korea: Predicting from Micro Data. Paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, Washington, D.C.

Moon, H. S. (1972) A Study on Differential Fertility in Korea: Based on 1968 Nation-Wide Fertility Survey Data. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Moon, H.-S. (1980) Chulsan Kankyokui Bunsok (Analysis of Birth Intervals). Paper presented at the In-Country Seminar on KNFS/WFS Findings. Korean Institute for Family Planning, Seoul.

Moon, H.-S., and S.-H. Hanl(1973) Use-Effectiveness, Extended Use Effectiveness and Demographic Effectiveness of IUD and Oral Pill. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Moon, H.-S., S.-H. Han, and S. Choi (1973) Fertility and Family Planning: An Interim Report on 1971 Fertility-Abortion Survey. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Nag, M. (1980) How modernization can also increase fertility. Current Anthropology 21(5):571-587.

Nemeth, R. J. (1981) Son Preference and Its Effect on Korean Lactation Practices: A Social Epidemiological Study. Paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, Washington, D.C.

Nortman, D. L., and E. Hofstatter (1980) Population and Family Planning Programs: A Compendium of Data through 1978. A Population Council Factbook. New York: The Population Council.

Oh, K.-H., and H.-Y. Lee (1980) Urbanism in Korea: A way of life? In Y. Chang, ed., Korea: A Decade of Development. Seoul: Seoul National University Press.

Park, B. H. (1973) Boy Preference and Its Relation to Family Planning: The Legal Background of Boy Preference. Seoul: Korean Institute for Research in the Behavioral Sciences (in Korean).

Park, B. T., B. M. Choi, and H. Y. Kwon (1979) The 1976 National Fertility and Family Planning Evaluation Survey. Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Park, C. B. (1978) The fourth Korean child: The effect of son preference on subsequent fertility. Journal of Biosocial Science 10:95-106.

Park, C. B. (1981) Preference for Sons, Family Size and Sex Ratio: An Empirical Study in Korea. University of Hawaii School of Public Health and East-West Population Institute, Honolulu, Hawaii.

Park, C. B., S. H. Han, and M. K. Choe (1979) The effect of infant death on subsequent fertility in Korea and the role of family planning. American Journal of Public Health 69(2):557-565.

Park, C. B., L.-J. Cho, and J. A. Palmore (1980) Making Family Planning Services Available: Field Work of the Korean Population Policy and Program Evaluation Study. Paper presented at the Population Policy Conference, East-West Population Institute, Honolulu.

Park, H. J., K. K. Chung, D. S. Han, and S. B. Lee (1974) Mothers Clubs and Family Planning in Korea. Seoul: School of Public Health, Seoul National University.

Park, H.-S. (1979) Sex-Role Modernization and Family Planning Practice: A Case in Korea. Pp. 91-119 in Summer Seminar in Population (Korea: A Case Study). Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Park, R.-Y. (1980) Economic Value of Children and Fertility Behavior in Korea. Seoul: Hong-Ik University.

Population and Development Studies Center (PDSC) (1975) Ichon Resurvey Table I. Seoul National University.

Repetto, R., T. H. Kwon, S.-U. Kim, D.-Y. Kim, and P. J. Donaldson (1981) Economic Development, Population Policy and Demographic Transition in the Republic of Korea. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.

Retherford, R. D. (1981) Modeling Sudden and Rapid Fertility Decline. Paper presented at the annual meeting of the Population Association of America, Washington, D.C. EWPI Working Paper No. 1. East-West Population Institute, Honolulu.

Retherford, R. D., and L.-J. Cho (1981) Decomposition of the change in the total fertility rate in the Republic of Korea, 1960-75. Asian and Pacific Census Forum 7(3):5-9.

Retherford, R. D., and N. Ogawa (1978) Decomposition of the change in the total fertility rate in the Republic of Korea, 1966-1970. Social Biology 25:115-127.

Retherford, R. D., L.-J. Cho, and N.-I. Kim (1982) Census-Derived Estimates of Fertility by Duration Since First Marriage in the Republic of Korea. EWPI Working Paper. East-West Population Institute, Honolulu.

Rindfuss, R. R., L. L. Bumpass, J. A. Palmore, and D. W. Han (1982) The transformation of Korean childspacing practices. Population Studies 36(1):87-104.

Ro, K. K. (1979) Economic analysis of fertility in Korea. Pp. 37-59 in Summer Seminar in Population (Korea: A Case Study). Seoul: Korean Institute for Family Planning.

Ro, K. K., and K. C. Ahn (1977) Migration and fertility in Korea. Journal of Family Planning Studies 4:93-141.

Shin, E. H., T. H. Kwon, and H. Y. Lee (1981) Determinants of fertility differentials in Korea. Sociology and Social Research 65(2):211-255.

Stoeckel, J. (1975) Differentials in fertility, family planning practice, and family size values in South Korea, 1965-1971. Studies in Family Planning 6(11):378-401.

United Nations, Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific (ESCAP) (1975) Population of the Republic of Korea. ESCAP Country Monograph Series, No. 2. Bangkok: UNESCAP.

United Nations, Food and Agricultural Organization (1975) Population Yearbook, Vol. 31. Rome: UNFAO.

United Nations Fund for Population Activities (n.d.) Annual Review of Population Law, 1978. New York: UNFPA.

Westoff, C. F., N. Goldman, S.-E. Khoo, and M. K. Choe (1980) The recent demographic history of sterilization in Korea. International Family Planning Perspectives 6:136-145.

Widmer, K. R., G. H. McClelland, and C. A. Nikerson (1981) Determining the impact of sex preferences on fertility: A demonstration study. Demography 18(1):27-37.

Wirth, L. (1957) Urbanism as a way of life. Pp. 46-53 in P. K. Hatt and A. J. Reiss, Jr., eds., Cities and Society: The Revised Reader in Urban Sociology. New York: Free Press of Glenco.

Yang, J. M., S. Bang, M. H. Kim, and M.-G. Lee (1965) Fertility and family planning in rural Korea. Population Studies 18(3):237-250.

Yoon, J.-J. (1974) A Study on Rural Population. Seoul: Seoul Woman's College.

## Reports of the Committee on Population and Demography

| | |
|---|---|
| Report No. 1 | *Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in the Republic of Korea* (1980) |
| Report No. 2 | *Fertility and Mortality Changes in Thailand, 1950–1975* (1980) |
| Report No. 3 | *Fertility and Mortality Changes in Honduras, 1950–1974* (1980) |
| Report No. 4 | *Age Misreporting and Age-Selective Underenumeration: Sources, Patterns, and Consequences for Demographic Analysis* (1981) |
| Report No. 5 | *Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Bangladesh* (1981) |
| Report No. 6 | *Collecting Data for the Estimation of Fertility and Mortality* (1981) |
| Report No. 7 | *Data Collection: A Statement for Administrators* (1981) |
| Report No. 8 | *Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Turkey, 1935–1975* (1982) |
| Report No. 9 | *The Estimation of Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Egypt* (1982) |
| Report No. 10 | *Indirect Techniques for Demographic Estimation* (1981)* |
| Report No. 11 | *Computer Programs for Demographic Estimation: A User's Guide* (1981) |
| Report No. 12 | *Levels and Recent Trends in Fertility and Mortality in Colombia* (1982) |
| Report No. 13 | *Fertility in Thailand: Trends, Differentials, and Proximate Determinants* |
| Report No. 14 | *The Determinants of Fertility in the Republic of Korea* |

## Other Publications of the Committee on Population and Demography

*Research on the Population of China: Proceedings of a Workshop* (1981)

*Being published as Manual X in the series of manuals of demographic analysis of the Population Division, Department of International Economic and Social Affairs. United Nations (1982).

5-12

COMMITTEE ON
POPULATION AND DEMOGRAPHY

Report No. 20

# Fertility Decline in Indonesia

## Analysis and Interpretation

Geoffrey McNicoll
Masri Singarimbun

Panel on Fertility Determinants
Committee on Population and Demography
Commission on Behavioral and Social Sciences and Education
National Research Council

NATIONAL ACADEMY PRESS
Washington, D.C. 1983

NOTICE: The project that is the subject of this report was approved by the Governing Board of the National Research Council, whose members are drawn from the councils of the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the Institute of Medicine. The members of the committee responsible for the report were chosen for their special competences and with regard for appropriate balance.

This report has been reviewed by a group other than the authors according to procedures approved by a Report Review Committee consisting of members of the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the Institute of Medicine.

The National Research Council was established by the National Academy of Sciences in 1916 to associate the broad community of science and technology with the Academy's purposes of furthering knowledge and of advising the federal government. The Council operates in accordance with general policies determined by the Academy under the authority of its congressional charter of 1863, which establishes the Academy as a private, nonprofit, self-governing membership corporation. The Council has become the principal operating agency of both the National Academy of Sciences and the National Academy of Engineering in the conduct of their services to the government, the public, and the scientific and engineering communities. It is administered jointly by both Academies and the Institute of Medicine. The National Academy of Engineering and the Institute of Medicine were established in 1964 and 1970, respectively, under the charter of the National Academy of Sciences.

Available from

NATIONAL ACADEMY PRESS
2101 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, D.C. 20418

Printed in the United States of America

PANEL ON FERTILITY DETERMINANTS

W. PARKER MAULDIN (Chair), The Rockefeller Foundation, New York
ELZA BERQUO, Centro Brasileiro de Analise e Planejamento, Sao Paulo, Brazil
WILLIAM BRASS, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine
DAVID R. BRILLINGER, Department of Statistics, University of California, Berkeley
V.C. CHIDAMBARAM, World Fertility Survey, London
JULIE DAVANZO, Rand Corporation, Santa Monica
RICHARD A. EASTERLIN, Department of Economics, University of Southern California, Los Angeles
JAMES T. FAWCETT, East-West Population Institute, East-West Center, Honolulu
RONALD FREEDMAN, Population Studies Center, University of Michigan
DAVID GOLDBERG, Population Studies Center, University of Michigan
RONALD GRAY, School of Hygiene and Public Health, The Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore
PAULA E. HOLLERBACH, Center for Policy Studies, The Population Council, New York
RONALD LEE, Graduate Group in Demography, University of California, Berkeley
ROBERT A. LEVINE, Graduate School of Education, Harvard University
SUSAN C.M. SCRIMSHAW, School of Public Health, University of California, Los Angeles
ROBERT WILLIS, Department of Economics, State University of New York, Stony Brook

ROBERT J. LAPHAM, Study Director

COMMITTEE ON POPULATION AND DEMOGRAPHY

ANSLEY J. COALE (Chair), Office of Population Research, Princeton University
WILLIAM BRASS, Centre for Population Studies, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine
LEE-JAY CHO, East-West Population Institute, East-West Center, Honolulu
RONALD FREEDMAN, Population Studies Center, University of Michigan
NATHAN KEYFITZ, Department of Sociology, Harvard University
LESLIE KISH, Institute for Social Research, University of Michigan
W. PARKER MAULDIN, Population Division, The Rockefeller Foundation, New York
JANE MENKEN, Office of Population Research, Princeton University
SAMUEL PRESTON, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania
WILLIAM SELTZER, Statistical Office, United Nations
CONRAD TAEUBER, Kennedy Institute, Center for Population Research, Georgetown University
ETIENNE VAN DE WALLE, Population Studies Center, University of Pennsylvania

ROBERT J. LAPHAM, Study Director

NOTE: Members of the Committee and its panels and working groups participated in this project in their individual capacities; the listing of their organizational affiliation is for identification purposes only, and the views and designations used in this report are not necessarily those of the organizations mentioned.